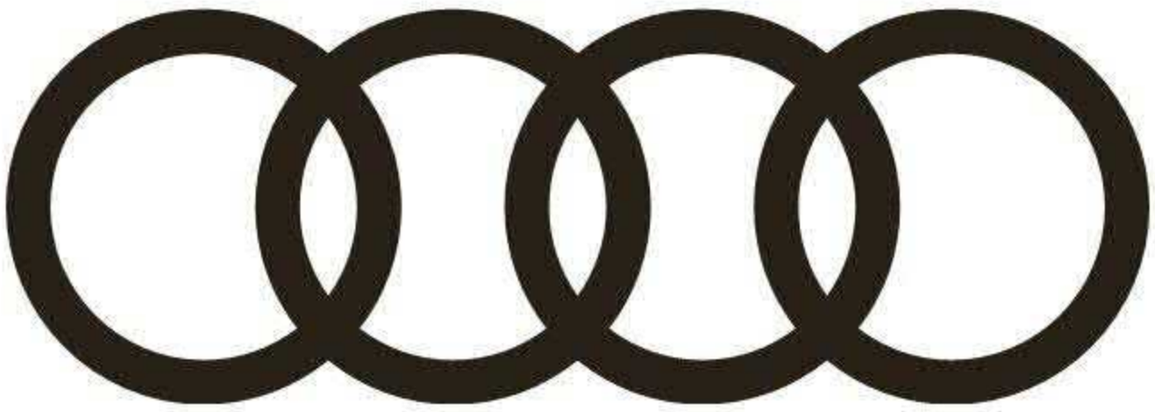


Owner's Manual

2020 A4

Audi Vorsprung durch Technik

Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi – we value your trust in us.

Your new Audi will allow you to experience the best in groundbreaking technology and premium quality equipment that a vehicle has to offer. We recommend that you read your Owner's Manual thoroughly so that you quickly become acquainted with your Audi and make use of all of its features.

In addition to explaining how the different features work, we provide many useful tips and information concerning your safety, how to care for your vehicle, and how to maintain your vehicle's value. We also give you useful tips and information on how to drive your vehicle more efficiently and in an environmentally-friendly manner.

We hope you enjoy driving your Audi and we wish you safe and pleasant motoring.

AUDI AG

WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

8W1012721BB

Table of contents

About this Owner's Manual 5

Summary 6

Quick access 6

Cockpit 6

Indicator lights overview 7

Display and operation 11

Instrument cluster 11

Instrument cluster overview 11

Operating 12

Adjusting the display 12

Coolant temperature display 13

Tachometer 13

Odometer 14

Outside temperature display 14

Engine oil temperature indicator 14

Boost indicator 14

Vehicle functions 15

Touch display 16

General touch display operation 16

Multi Media Interface 18

Head-up display 23

Description 23

Voice recognition system 24

General information 24

Operating 24

External voice operation 25

Global functions 26

Additional function buttons 26

Starting and driving 27

Personalization 27

Users 27

Opening and closing 30

Central locking 30

Keys 34

Luggage compartment lid 36

Child safety lock 41

Power windows 42

Sliding/tilting sunroof 43

Panoramic glass roof 44

Valet parking 44

Garage door opener 45

Lights and Vision 48

Exterior lighting 48

Interior lighting 51

Vision 52

Windshield wipers 55

Digital compass 57

Sitting correctly and safely 59

Correct passenger seating position 59

Front seats 59

Steering wheel 62

Head restraints 63

Safety belts 64

Memory function 67

Airbag system 67

Child safety seats 72

Stowing and using 78

Power sources 78

Cup holders 78

Storage areas and compartments 78

Luggage compartment 79

Roof rack 86

Warm and cold 87

Climate control system 87

3-zone deluxe automatic climate control . 88

Steering wheel heating 90

Fluids in the A/C system 91

Driving 92

Starting the vehicle 92

When driving 93

Drive system 98

Start/Stop system 99

Brakes 101

Electromechanical parking brake 102

Special driving situations 104

Driving dynamic 106

Audi drive select 106

Suspension 106

Steering 107

All wheel drive (quattro) 108
Electronic Stabilization Control 109

Trailer towing 112
Driving with a trailer 112

Assist systems 114
Assist systems 114
General information 114
Surrounding area detection 115

Driving information 118
Speed warning system 118
Camera-based traffic sign recognition . . . 118
Traffic light information 120
Lap timer 121

Driver assistance 123
Cruise control system 123
Efficiency assist 124
Audi adaptive cruise control 127
Traffic jam assist 134
Distance warning 136
Audi active lane assist 137
Audi pre sense 139
Side assist 143
Exit warning 145

Parking and maneuvering 147
Introduction 147
Parking aid plus 147
Rearview camera and peripheral cameras . 149
Rear cross-traffic assist 152
Assisted parking 153
Park assist 155

Infotainment system 158
Telephone 158
Introduction 158
Setup 158
Using the Audi phone box 160
Using the telephone 162
Settings 165
Messages 166
Troubleshooting 167

Audi connect 169
General information 169
Audi connect Infotainment 169
Using a Wi-Fi hotspot 170
Audi connect Infotainment services 170
Functions on demand 171
Audi connect vehicle control services 171
Settings 172
Troubleshooting 173

Emergency call 174
Overview 174
Emergency call 174
Online roadside assistance 175

Navigation 176
Opening navigation 176
myAudi navigation 176
Entering a destination 177
Stopping route guidance 180
Map 180
Alternative routes 182
Additional functions 183
Satellite map 183
Map update 184
Traffic information 185
Settings 186

Radio 188
General information 188
Radio functions 189
Online radio 191
Options and settings 193
Troubleshooting 194

Media 195
General information 195
Bluetooth audio player 195
Multimedia connections 196
Playing media 197
Options and settings 201
Supported media and file formats 201
Troubleshooting 203

8W1012721BB

Audi smartphone interface 204
Setup 204
Troubleshooting 205

Additional settings 206
System settings 206
Software update 207
Connected devices 207
Legal information 208

Maintenance and Care 210

Checking and Filling 210
Fuel 210
Refueling 211
Emissions control system 213
Engine compartment 214
Engine oil 216
Cooling system 220
Brake fluid 222
Electrical system 222
Battery 223
Windshield washer system 225
Service interval display 226

Wheels 227
Wheels and Tires 227
Tire pressure monitoring system 244

Care and cleaning 247
General information 247
Car washes 247
Cleaning and care information 248
Taking your vehicle out of service 252

Do It Yourself 253

Emergency assistance 253
General information 253
Equipment 253
Tire mobility kit 253
Changing a tire 255
Space-saving spare tire 258
Collapsible spare tire 259
Jump starting 260
Towing 261

Fuses and bulbs 264
Fuses 264
Bulbs 268

Customer information 269

Data privacy 269
Image recording 269
Data memories 269
Transmitted information 270

Accessories and technical changes 272
Warranty 272
Audi Literature Shop 272
Driving in other countries 272
Maintenance, repairs, and technical modifications 272
Accessories and parts 274
Reporting Safety Defects 274
Declaration of compliance for telecommunications equipment and electronic systems 275

Technical data 277
Identification data 277
Vehicle data 277

Index 279

This Owner's Manual applies to all versions of this model. It contains important information, tips, suggestions, and warnings for using your vehicle.

KEEP THIS GUIDE

Keep this manual and any other applicable documents in your vehicle at all times. This is especially important if you loan your vehicle to others or sell it.

This owner's manual describes the **equipment range** specified for this model at the time of printing. Individual equipment options described may only be available at a later date or may only be offered in certain countries.

Some sections in this manual do not apply to all vehicles. When this is the case, the beginning of the section indicates the **validity**, for example “Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system”. Optional or vehicle-specific equipment is also identified with an asterisk “*”.

The **illustrations** in this manual are a guide. Some of the details in your vehicle may differ from the illustration.

All **directions**, such as “left”, “right”, “front” and “rear”, are based on the vehicle's direction of travel.

* Optional equipment or vehicle-specific equipment

▶ The section continues on the next page.

⇨ ⚠ Cross reference to a “WARNING” within a section. If a page number is indicated, the WARNING is located outside of the section.

WARNING

Text with this symbol contains information about safety and how to reduce the risk of serious personal injury or death.

Note

Text with this symbol contains information about reducing the risk of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Text with this symbol contains information on protecting the environment.

Tips

Text with this symbol contains additional useful information.

8W1012721BB

Quick access

Cockpit

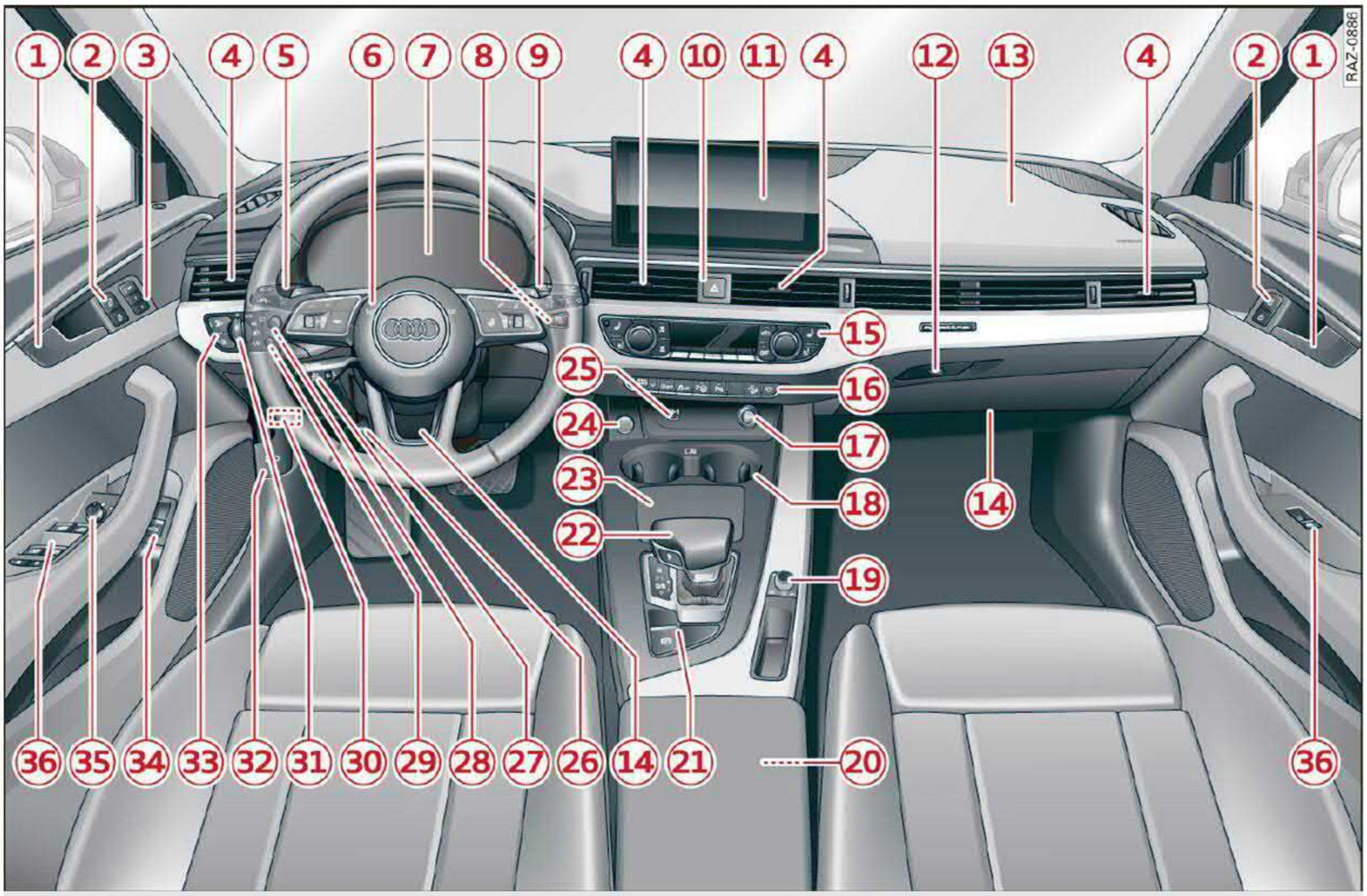


Fig. 1 Cockpit

① Door handle
② Central locking switch 32
③ Memory function buttons 67
④ Vent
⑤ Lever for:
– Turn signals and high beams 49
– High beam assistant 49
– Audi active lane assist 137
– Traffic jam assist 134
⑥ Multifunction steering wheel with:
– Horn
– Driver's airbag 67
– Operating buttons 12, 26
– Shift paddles 96
⑦ Instrument cluster 11
⑧ Resetting the trip odometer 14
⑨ Windshield washer system lever . . 55
⑩ Emergency flashers 50
⑪ Center display 18
⑫ Lockable glove compartment with:
– Valet Parking function 44
⑬ Front passenger's airbag 67
⑭ Knee airbag 67
⑮ Climate control system 87
⑯ Depending on equipment, buttons for:
– drive select 106
– Start/Stop system 99
– Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 110
– Park assist 155
– Parking aid 147
– Hill descent assist 105
– Center display 18
⑰ Socket 78
⑱ Cup holders 78
⑲ MMI On/Off button . . . . . 18, 26 ▶

⑳ Center armrest with storage compartment. Depending on vehicle equipment, it may have:
– Audi music interface 196
– Audi phone box 160
– Starting the engine when there is a malfunction 92

㉑ Electromechanical parking brake button 102

㉒ Selector lever (automatic transmission) 94

㉓ Storage compartment 78

㉔ START ENGINE STOP button 92

㉕ Audi music interface 196

㉖ Steering wheel adjustment 62

㉗ Lever for:
– Cruise control system 123
– Audi adaptive cruise control 127

㉘ Button for switching the head-up display on/off, adjusting the height . 23

㉙ Instrument illumination 52

㉚ Connection port for the On Board Diagnostic System (OBD) 269

㉛ Light switch 48

㉜ Hood release 215

㉝ Buttons for:
– All-weather lights 48
– Rear fog lights 48

㉞ Luggage compartment lid button . 36

㉟ Exterior mirror adjustment 52

㊱ Buttons for:
– Power windows 42
– Child safety lock 41

Tips

Some the equipment listed here is only installed in certain models or is available as an option.

Indicator lights overview

Description

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster blink or turn on. They indicate functions or malfunctions. Some warning and indicator lights turn on when you switch the ignition on and must turn off when the engine is running or while driving.

With some indicator lights, messages may appear and warning signals may sound. The indicator lights and messages may be covered by other displays. To show them again, select the second tab for messages with the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 12*.

Some indicator lights in the display can display in several colors.

⚠ Central indicator light

If the ⚠ or ⚠ indicator light turns on, check the message in the instrument cluster.

Overview

The following indicator lights may be available, depending on the vehicle equipment:

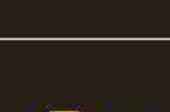
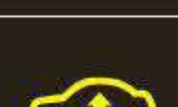
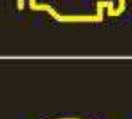
Red indicator lights	
⚠	Central indicator light ⇨ *page 7*, Audi pre sense ⇨ *page 139*, Instrument cluster ⇨ *page 11*
	Safety belt ⇨ *page 66*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 97*
	Drive system ⇨ *page 97*
PARK	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 103*
(P)	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 103*
(!)	Brake system ⇨ *page 102*, ⇨ *page 103*, ⇨ *page 222*
BRAKE	Brake system ⇨ *page 102*, ⇨ *page 103*, ⇨ *page 222* ▶

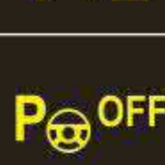
8W1012721BB

	Steering ⇨ *page 107*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 107*
	Air suspension ⇨ *page 107*
	Electrical system ⇨ *page 222*
	Engine oil level (MIN) ⇨ *page 217*
	Engine oil pressure ⇨ *page 217*
	Cooling system ⇨ *page 220*
	Hood ⇨ *page 215*
	Distance warning ⇨ *page 136*
	Safe start monitor ⇨ *page 132*, Driver intervention request ⇨ *page 133*
	Active lane assist ⇨ *page 137*
	Steering intervention request ⇨ *page 135*
	Audi pre sense ⇨ *page 140*

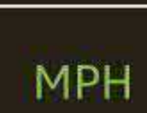
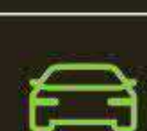
Yellow indicator lights

	Central indicator light ⇨ *page 7*
	Safety systems ⇨ *page 68*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 97*
	Drive system ⇨ *page 99*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 93*
	Keys ⇨ *page 93*

	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 103*
	Brake system ⇨ *page 102*
	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ⇨ *page 109*
	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ⇨ *page 109*
	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ⇨ *page 110*
	Anti-lock braking system (ABS) ⇨ *page 110*
	Anti-lock braking system (ABS) ⇨ *page 110*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 107*
	All wheel drive ⇨ *page 108*
	Suspension control ⇨ *page 107*
	Air suspension ⇨ *page 107*
	Engine speed limitation ⇨ *page 13*
	Tank system ⇨ *page 211*
	Electrical system ⇨ *page 222*
	Engine oil level (MIN) ⇨ *page 217*
	Engine oil level (MAX) ⇨ *page 217*
	Engine oil sensor ⇨ *page 217*
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) ⇨ *page 213*
	Washer fluid level ⇨ *page 226*
	Engine warm-up request ⇨ *page 217* ▶

	Windshield wipers ⇨ *page 57*
	Parking aid plus ⇨ *page 148*
	Park assist ⇨ *page 157*
	Rear cross-traffic assist ⇨ *page 152*
	Tire pressure ⇨ *page 245*
	Tire pressure ⇨ *page 245*
	Bulb failure indicator ⇨ *page 50*
	Adaptive light ⇨ *page 50*
	Light/rain sensor ⇨ *page 50*, ⇨ *page 57*
	Door lock ⇨ *page 32*
	Battery in vehicle key ⇨ *page 36*
	Distance warning ⇨ *page 136*
	Side assist ⇨ *page 145*; Exit warning ⇨ *page 145*
	Audi adaptive cruise control ⇨ *page 134*, Traffic jam assist ⇨ *page 134*
	Steering intervention request ⇨ *page 135*, ⇨ *page 138*
	Audi active lane assist ⇨ *page 139*
	Audi pre sense ⇨ *page 143*
	Emergency call function ⇨ *page 175*

Other indicator lights

	Start/Stop system ⇨ *page 99*
	Turn signals ⇨ *page 49*
	Low beam headlight ⇨ *page 48*
	Parking light ⇨ *page 48*
	Cruise control system ⇨ *page 123*
	Cruise control system ⇨ *page 123*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 124*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 124*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 124*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 124*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 124*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 124*
	Audi adaptive cruise control ⇨ *page 128*
	Audi adaptive cruise control ⇨ *page 128*
	Audi adaptive cruise control ⇨ *page 128*
	Audi adaptive cruise control ⇨ *page 128*
	Audi adaptive cruise control ⇨ *page 128*
	Traffic jam assist ⇨ *page 134*
	High beams ⇨ *page 49*
	High beam assistant ⇨ *page 49*

	Transmission ⇨ *page 97*
	Start/Stop system ⇨ *page 99*
	Convenience key ⇨ *page 93*
PARK BRAKE	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 103*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 103*
	Steering ⇨ *page 107*
	Air suspension ⇨ *page 107*
	Parking aid plus ⇨ *page 148*
P OFF	Park assist ⇨ *page 157*
	High beam assistant ⇨ *page 49*
	Door lock ⇨ *page 32*
	Child safety lock ⇨ *page 41*
	Child safety lock ⇨ *page 41*
	Camera-based traffic sign recognition ⇨ *page 119*
MPH	Speed warning system ⇨ *page 118*
Km/h	Speed warning system ⇨ *page 118*
CRUISE	Cruise control system ⇨ *page 123*
	Cruise control system ⇨ *page 123*
	Distance warning ⇨ *page 136*

	Side assist ⇨ *page 145*
	Rear cross-traffic assist ⇨ *page 152*
	Audi adaptive cruise control ⇨ *page 134*, Traffic jam assist ⇨ *page 134*, Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 124*
	Audi adaptive cruise control ⇨ *page 131*
	Traffic jam assist ⇨ *page 134*
	Audi active lane assist ⇨ *page 137*
	Audi pre sense ⇨ *page 143*

Instrument cluster

Instrument cluster overview



Fig. 2 Instrument cluster overview (Audi virtual cockpit)

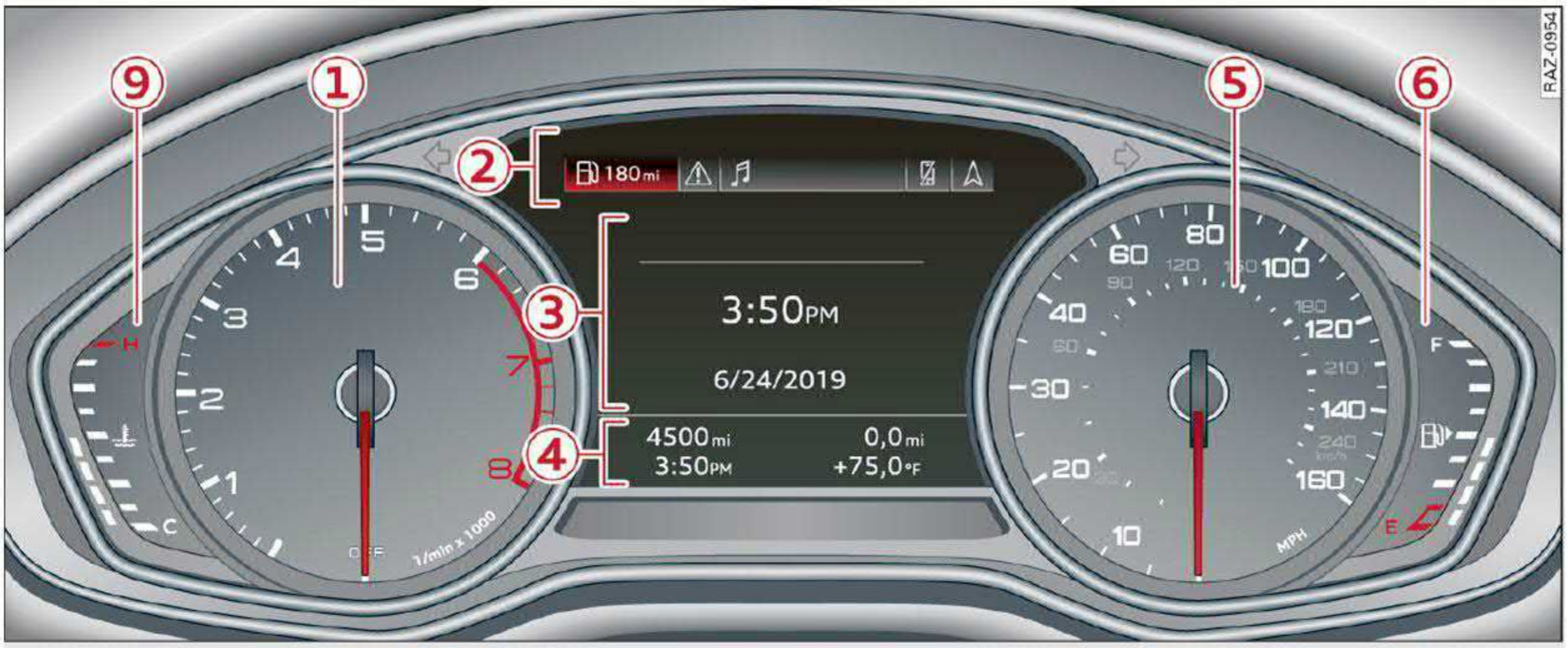


Fig. 3 Instrument cluster overview (analog)

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following items may appear in the instrument cluster:

① Left dial
- – Tachometer 13

② Tab area 12

③ Central area 12

④ Status line (one or two lines)

⑤ Right dial
- – Convenience display
- – Gear 94
- – Audi drive select mode 106

⑥ Fuel level 211

⑦ Right additional display with speedometer

⑧ Left additional display with:

⑨ Display
- – Engine coolant temperature . . 13

WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

If there is a severe malfunction in the instrument cluster, the display may turn off. The indicator light may also turn on. Stop the vehicle safely. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance. ▶

8W1012721BB

Tips

- The following pages primarily show illustrations of the Audi virtual cockpit*. The display or location of the items that are shown may vary on the different versions of the instrument cluster.
- You can select the units used for temperature, speed, and other measurements ⇨ *page 206*.
- Speeds are displayed in mph (miles per hour) or km/h (kilometers per hour).
- If there is a malfunction in the instrument cluster, **DEF** will appear in the trip odometer display. Have the malfunction corrected as soon as possible.
- Certain instrument cluster content can also be displayed in the head-up display* ⇨ *page 23*.
- Applies to: Audi virtual cockpit: Certain settings are automatically stored and assigned to the active user.

Operating

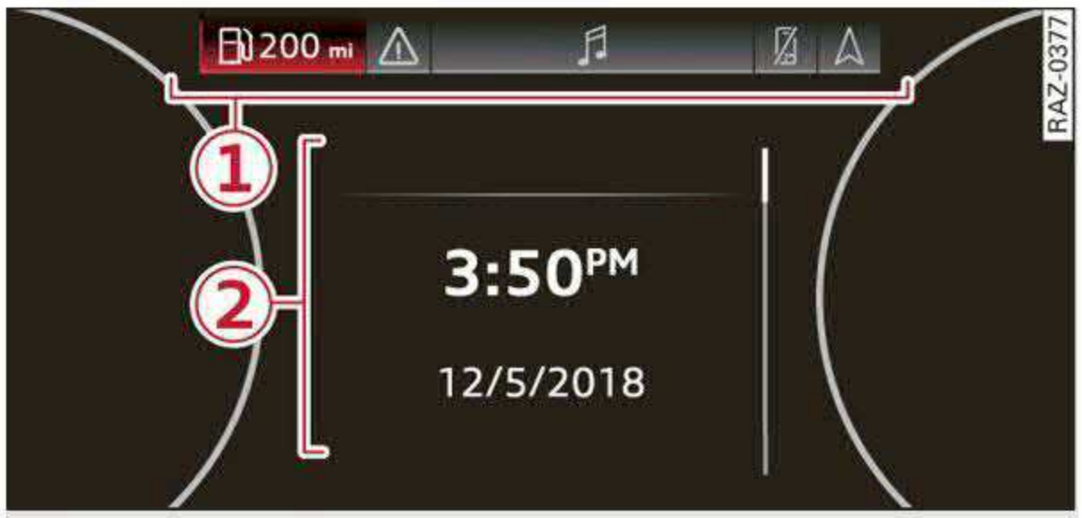


Fig. 4 Driver information system display

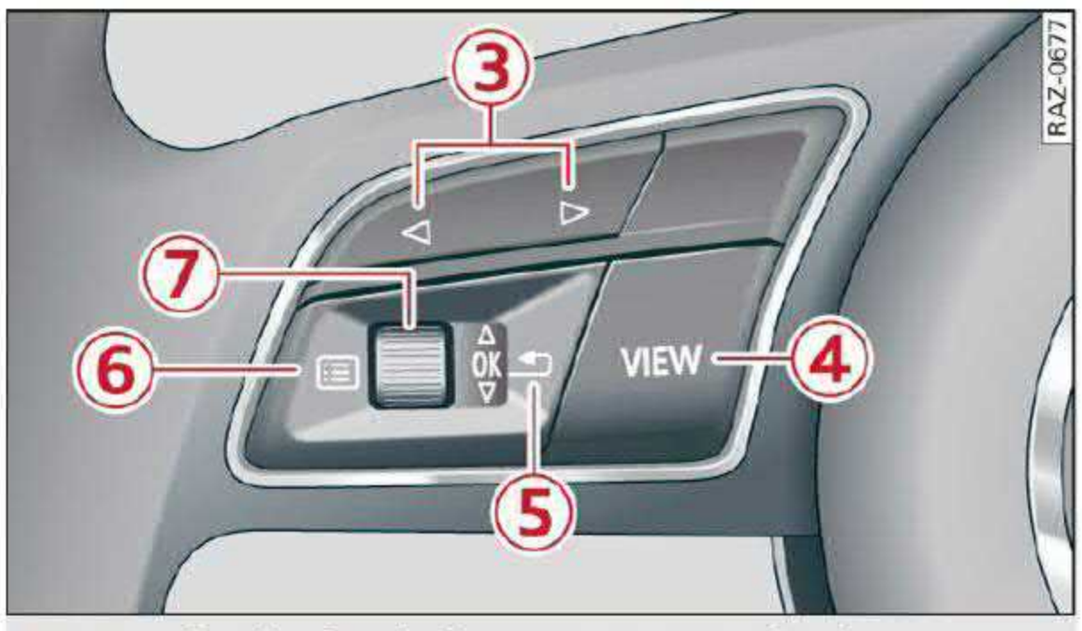


Fig. 5 Left side of multifunction steering wheel

Information is organized within various tabs ① in the instrument cluster. The tab contents are displayed in the central area ②.

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

Selecting a tab

▸ Press the ◁ / ▷ button ③ repeatedly until the desired tab is selected.

Returning to functions at higher levels

▸ Press the ⮌ button ⑤.

Opening and closing the menu

▸ Press the ☰ button ⑥.

Selecting and confirming a function

Requirement: a menu or list must be displayed.

▸ To select a function, turn the left thumbwheel ⑦ to the desired function.
▸ To confirm a selection, press the left thumbwheel ⑦.

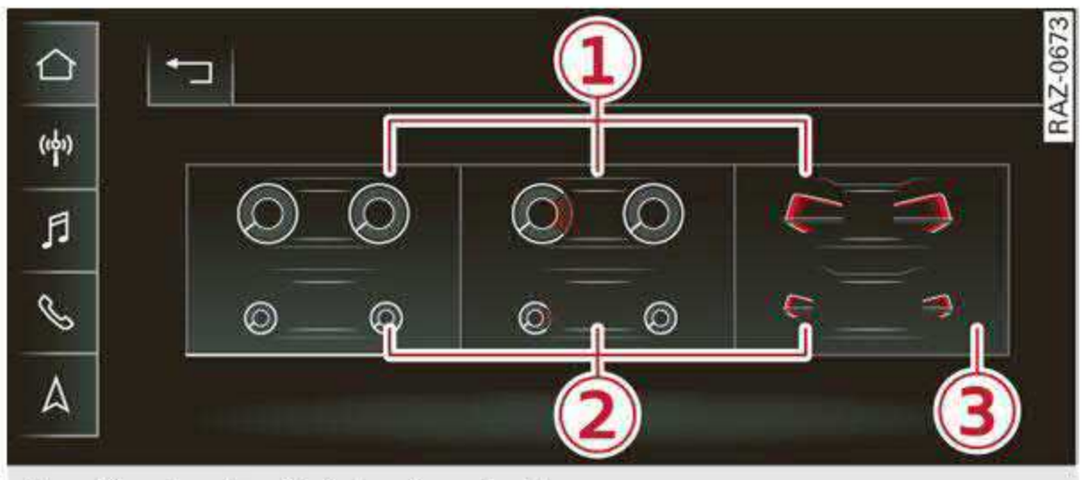
Switching the view

▸ Press the VIEW button ④ ⇨ *page 12*.

The following tabs may be available, depending on vehicle equipment:

First tab	Vehicle functions ⇨ *page 15*
Second tab	Driver messages (this is only displayed if at least one indicator light/message is being displayed)
Third tab	Radio ⇨ *page 188*
	Media ⇨ *page 197*
Fourth tab	Telephone ⇨ *page 162*
Fifth tab	Navigation ⇨ *page 176*

Adjusting the display



Applies to: Audi virtual cockpit

Fig. 6 Center display: adjusting the display

Switching the view

Applies to: Audi virtual cockpit

- Press the VIEW button to switch between the default view (1) and the enhanced view (2).

Adjusting the layout

Applies to: Audi virtual cockpit

Depending on the vehicle equipment, various layouts may be available.

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **Virtual cockpit**.
- To adjust the desired layout, press (3).

Adjusting the additional display

Applies to: Audi virtual cockpit

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the additional displays that can be selected may vary.

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **Virtual cockpit** > **Configure**.
- Select the desired additional display.

Reducing the display

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can hide the central area in the instrument cluster.

- Select on the instrument cluster: vehicle functions tab > ☰ button > **Reduced display**, or
- Press the VIEW button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Coolant temperature display

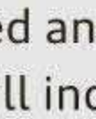
Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster

The coolant temperature display (9) ⇨ *page 11* only functions when the ignition is switched on. To reduce the risk of engine damage, please observe the following notes about the temperature ranges.

Cold range

If only the LEDs at the bottom of the gauge turn on, the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration, and heavy engine loads.

Normal range

The engine has reached its operating temperature once the LEDs up to the center of the gauge turn on. If the  indicator light in the instrument cluster display turns on, the coolant temperature is too high ⇨ *page 220*.

Note

– Auxiliary headlights and other accessories in front of the air intake impair the cooling effect of the coolant. This increases the risk of the engine overheating during high outside temperatures and heavy engine load.
– The front spoiler also helps to distribute cooling air correctly while driving. If the spoiler is damaged, the cooling effect will be impaired and the risk of the engine overheating will increase. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tachometer

The tachometer (1) ⇨ *page 11* displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (RPM). The beginning of the red zone in the tachometer indicates the maximum permissible engine speed for all gears once the engine has been broken in. Before reaching the red zone, you should shift into the next higher gear, select the "D" or "S" selector lever position, or remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

Engine speed limitation

If the  indicator light turns on, the engine will be automatically limited to the RPM displayed in the instrument cluster. This will protect the engine components, for example during a cold start or from overheating.

The engine speed limitation will be deactivated once the engine has reached its normal operating temperature and you have released the accelerator pedal.

If the engine speed limitation was activated by an engine control malfunction, the  indicator light also turns on. Make sure the engine speed does not go above the speed displayed, for ▶

example when downshifting. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Note

The needle in the tachometer may only be in the red area of the gauge for a short period of time before there is a risk of damaging the engine. The location where the red zone begins varies depending on the engine.

Odometer

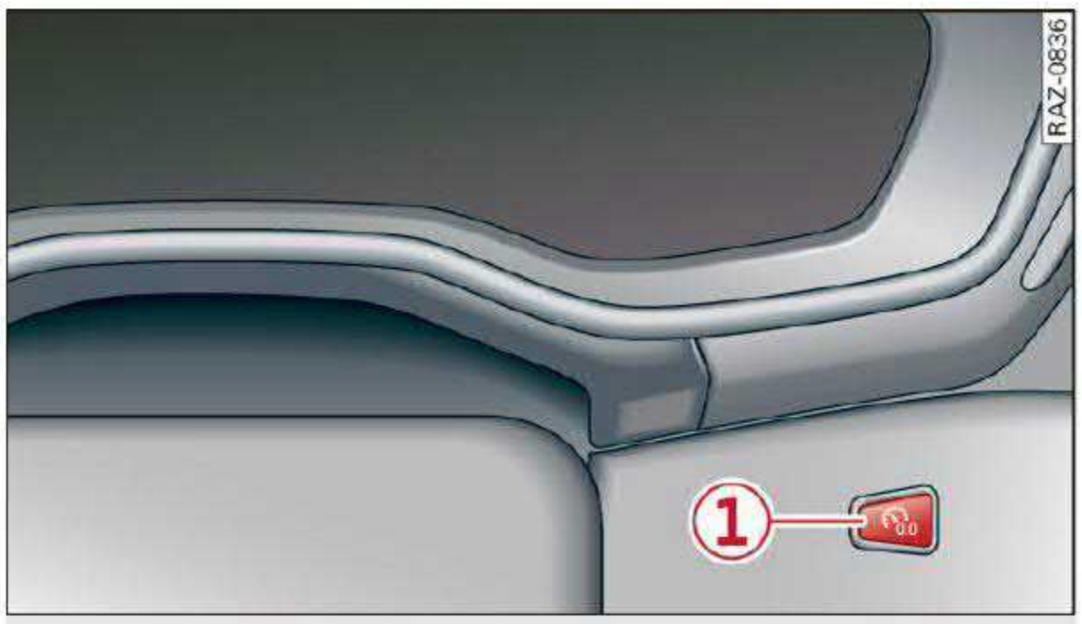


Fig. 7 Instrument cluster: reset button

The trip odometer and odometer are displayed in the status bar ④ ⇨ *page 11*.

The trip odometer shows the distance driven since it was last reset. It can be used to measure short distances. The odometer shows the total distance that the vehicle has been driven.

Resetting the trip odometer

- To reset the trip odometer to zero, press the reset button ①.

Tips

Distances are displayed in mi (miles) or km (kilometers).

Outside temperature display

The outside temperature is displayed in the status bar ④ ⇨ *page 11*.

If your vehicle is stationary or if you are driving at very low speeds, the temperature displayed in the instrument cluster may be slightly higher than the actual temperature outside due to heat radiating from the motor.

At temperatures below 41 °F (+5 °C), a snowflake symbol appears in front of the temperature display ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

Do not assume the roads are free of ice based on the outside temperature display. Be aware that there may be ice on roads even when the outside temperature is around 41 °F (+5 °C) and that ice can increase the risk of accidents.

Engine oil temperature indicator

Applies to: vehicles with engine oil temperature indicator

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the engine oil temperature may be indicated by a bar in the instrument cluster.

- Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit: Open the vehicle functions tab and switch to the desired view ⇨ *page 12*.
- Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster: Open the lap timer ⇨ *page 121*.

When engine oil temperatures are low, the display --- °F (--- °C) appears in the instrument cluster. The engine has reached its operating temperature when the engine oil temperature is between 176 °F (80 °C) and 248 °F (120 °C) under normal driving conditions. The engine oil temperature may be higher if there is heavy engine load and high temperatures outside. This is not a cause for concern as long as the ⇨ *page 217* or ⇨ *page 217* indicator lights do not turn on.

Boost indicator

Applies to: vehicles with boost indicator

Depending on vehicle equipment, the current engine load (meaning the current boost pressure) may be indicated by a bar in the instrument cluster.

- Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit: Open the vehicle functions tab and switch to the desired view ⇨ *page 12*. ▶

▸ Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster: Open the lap timer ⇨ *page 121*.

Vehicle functions

Overview

The trip computer is displayed in the first tab of the driver information system. Additional vehicle functions can be accessed depending on the vehicle equipment.

▸ Press the ☰ button on the multifunction steering wheel.

– On-board computer ⇨ *page 15*
– Lap times ⇨ *page 121*
– Lap statistics ⇨ *page 121*
– Reduced display ⇨ *page 13*

On-board computer

Resetting values to zero

Requirement: the **Consumption**, **Short-term memory**, or **Long-term memory** display must be selected.

▸ To reset the values in the respective memory to zero, press and hold the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel for one second.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can call up the following displays in the on-board computer one at a time by turning the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel:

– Time and date ⇨ *page 206*
– Level
– Digital speedometer
– Average consumption ⇨ *page 15*
– Range
– Short-term memory overview
– Long-term memory overview
– Energy consumers ⇨ *page 15*
– Driver assistance
– Traffic sign recognition and traffic light information

Short-term memory and long-term memory

The short-term memory collects driving information from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If you continue driving within two hours after switching the ignition off, the new values will be included when calculating the current trip information.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not erased automatically. You can select the time period for evaluating trip information yourself.

Average consumption

The current consumption can be shown using a bar graph. The average consumption stored in the short-term memory is also displayed. If the bar is green, your vehicle is saving fuel (for example, using recuperation).

Energy consumers

The **Energy consumers** view lists other equipment that is currently affecting fuel consumption. The display shows up to three equipment items. The equipment using the most power is listed first. If more than three items using power are switched on, the equipment that is currently using the most power is displayed. A gauge also shows the current total consumption of all other equipment.

Tips

The date, time of day, and time and date format can be set ⇨ *page 206*.

8W1012721BB

Touch display

General touch display operation

General information

Applies to: touch display

The center display is a touchscreen. Operation is very similar to operating a smartphone.

Tips

Certain gestures are not available in every menu.

Pressing

Applies to: touch display

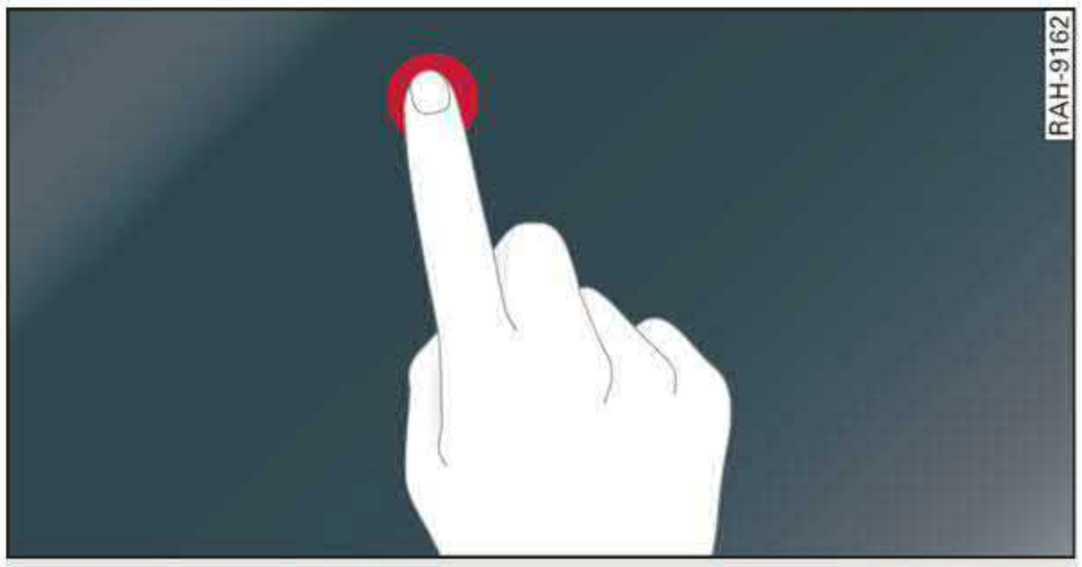


Fig. 8 Touch display: pressing

Selecting a function or button

► Press the desired function or button.

Pressing and holding

Applies to: touch display



Fig. 9 Touch display: pressing and holding

Accessing options

For some items, you can access additional options that are not directly visible.

► Press and hold an item until the associated options are displayed.

Pressing and pulling

Applies to: touch display

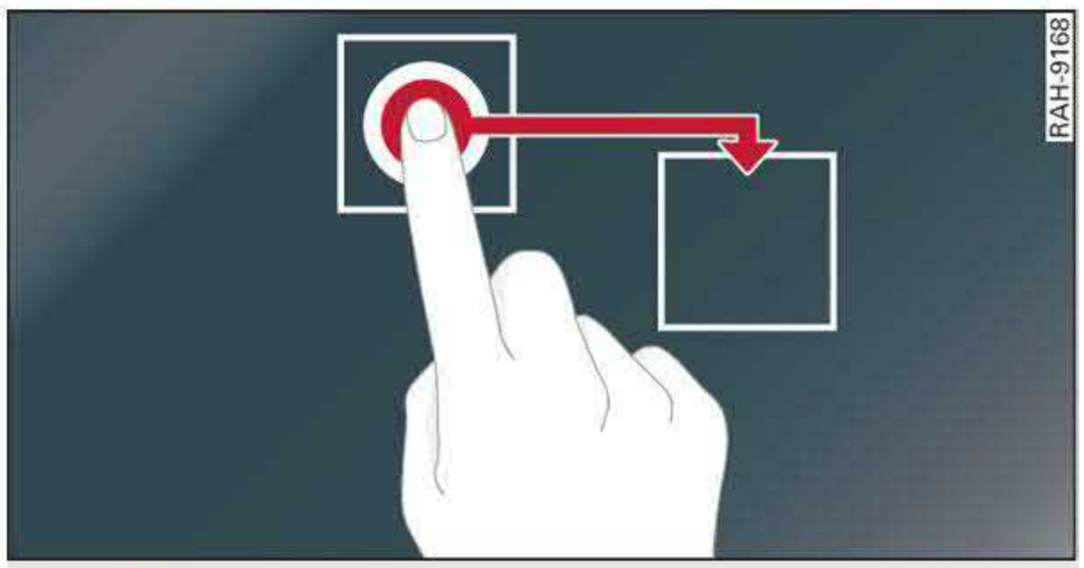


Fig. 10 Touch display: pressing and pulling

Moving an item

You can position some items at any location on the screen.

► Press and hold an item, and then use your finger to pull it to the desired location.

Pinching fingers together and pulling apart

Applies to: touch display

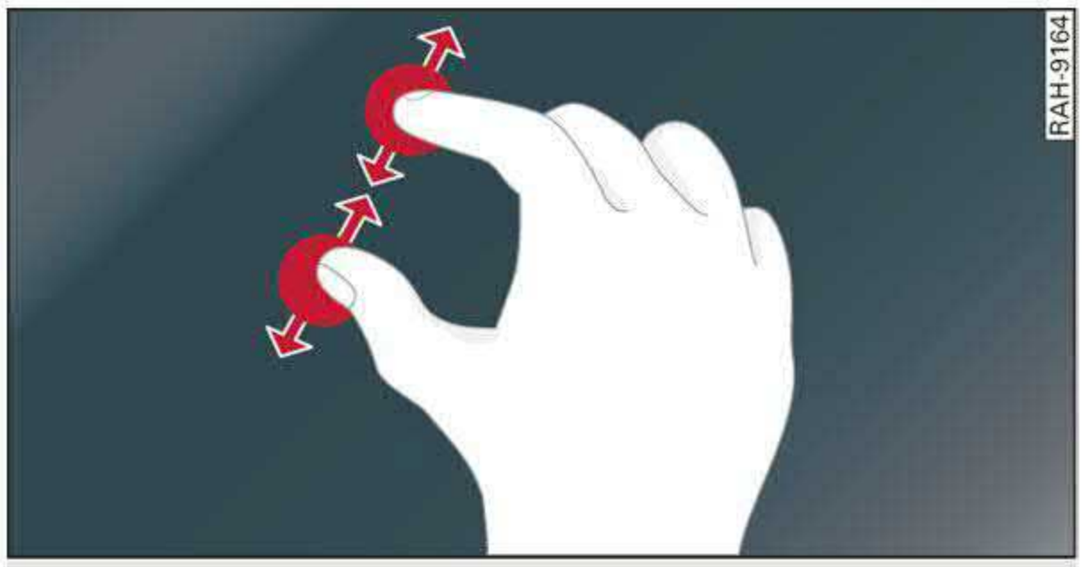


Fig. 11 Touch display: pinching fingers together and pulling them apart

Zooming in and out on an item

► To increase the size of an item, touch it with two fingers and pull your fingers apart.
► To decrease the size of an item, touch it with two fingers and pull your fingers together.

Rotating

Applies to: touch display

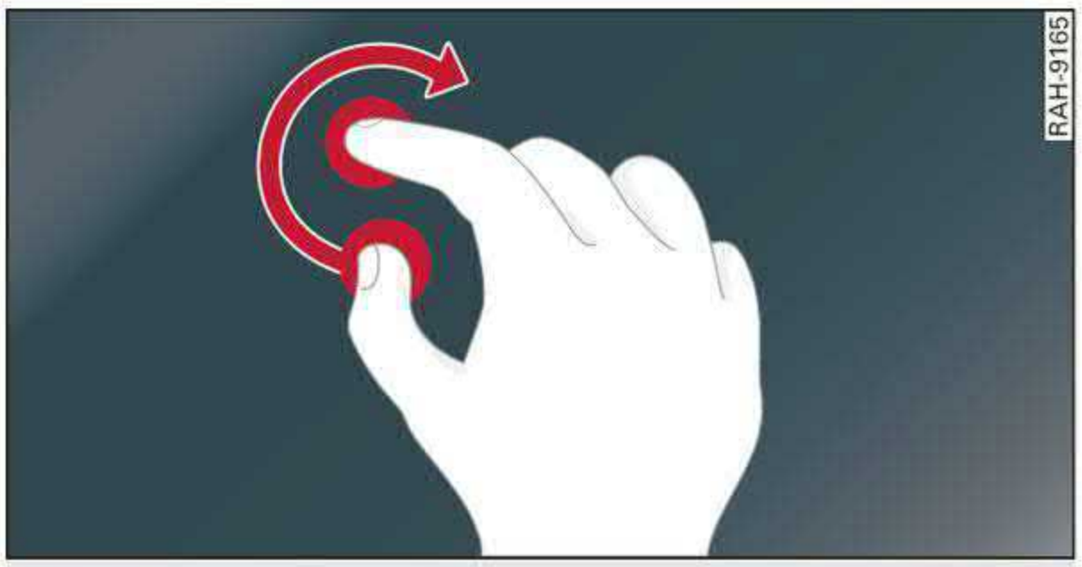


Fig. 12 Touch display: rotating

Rotating the view or perspective

- Rotate the item using two fingers.

Dragging

Applies to: touch display

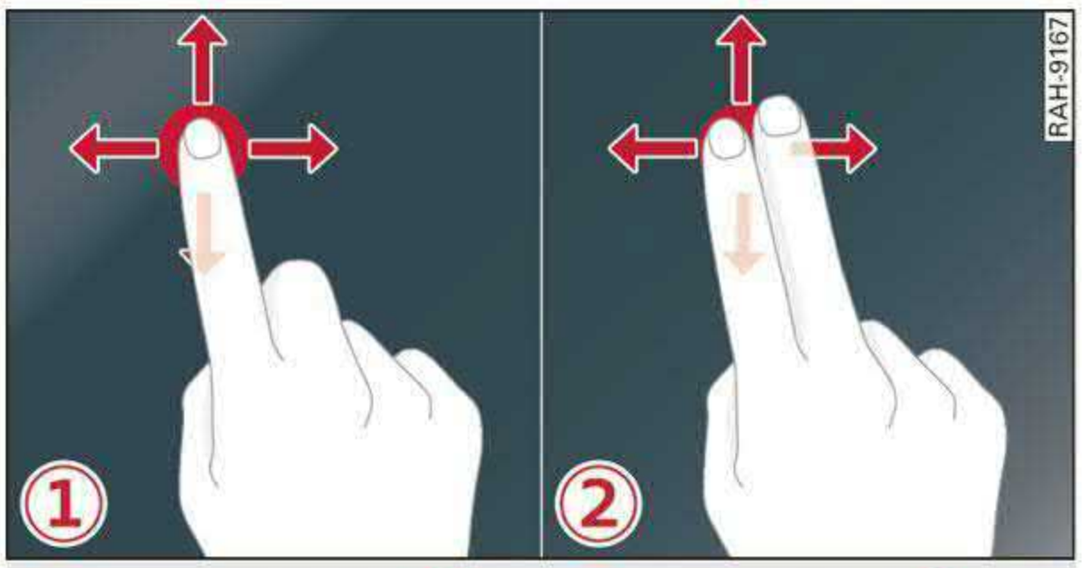


Fig. 13 Touch display: ① dragging with one finger, ② dragging with two fingers

Scrolling or browsing through menus/lists

- To scroll through menus and lists, swipe upward or downward with one finger.
- To browse through menus and lists, swipe to the right or left with one finger.

Tilting 3D displays

- Drag upward or downward with two fingers.

Dragging away from/toward the edge of the screen

Applies to: touch display

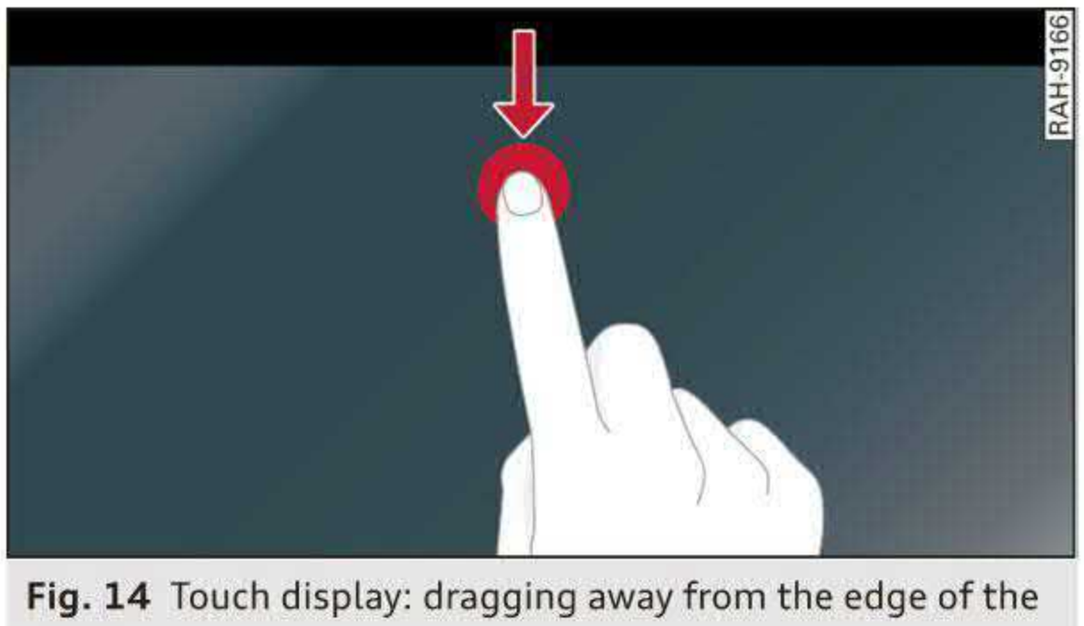


Fig. 14 Touch display: dragging away from the edge of the screen

Opening hidden menus

The ▭ symbol indicates that there is a hidden menu.

- Use your finger to drag inward from the upper or lower edge of the screen, or
- Press the ▭ button.

Closing hidden menus

- Press within the menu and drag it toward the upper or lower edge of the screen.

Information about menu paths

This guide shows you at a glance the paths for opening a desired menu and its settings and functions.

Example of a path

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Date & time**.

Following the path

- First, determine in which display the path should be entered. In this example, it is the MMI display.
- To open the home screen, press ⌂.
- If the **SETTINGS** button is not displayed, use your finger to swipe to the left or right until it appears.
- Press the **SETTINGS** button.
- If the **General** button is not displayed, swipe toward the left or right with one finger until it appears. ▶

- ▸ Press the **General** button.
- ▸ If the **Date & time** button is not displayed, swipe upward or downward with one finger until it appears.
- ▸ Press the **Date & time** button.

Tips

If a menu or symbol is in parentheses in the path, for example, (**General**) or (⚙), then it is an optional menu item that does not need to be used in every system.

Settings

- ▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **MMI**.

Possible settings:

– **Brightness**
– **Touchscreen Feedback**

Multi Media Interface

Traffic safety information

Audi recommends performing certain Infotainment system functions, such as entering a destination, only when the vehicle is stationary. Always be prepared to stop operating the Infotainment system in the interest of your safety and the safety of other road users.

WARNING

Only use the Infotainment system when road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions permit and always in a way that allows you to maintain complete control over your vehicle.

Tips

Certain functions are not available while driving.

Switching on or off

Switching the MMI on or off

- ▸ To switch the MMI off, press and hold the On/Off knob ⇨ *page 26, fig. 22* until all Infotainment functions are switched off.
- ▸ To switch the MMI on, press the On/Off knob.

Restarting the MMI

- ▸ Press and hold the On/Off knob for at least 10 seconds.

Switching the center display on or off

- ▸ To switch the center display on or off, press the ⏻ button in the center console above the selector lever, or
- ▸ To switch the center display off, press ⏻ in the notification center ⇨ *page 20*.
- ▸ To switch the center display on, touch the display or press ⏻ again.

Introduction

You can display and operate Infotainment system and vehicle functions using the touch display in the Multi Media Interface, abbreviated MMI.

Configuration wizard

After starting for the first time, the configuration wizard helps you to set up the vehicle, for example to set the desired system language and connect a telephone.

- ▸ Follow the instructions in the center display.
- ▸ Applies to: MMI: To access the configuration wizard at a later time, select on the home screen: **HELP** > **Configuration wizard**.

Menus and symbols

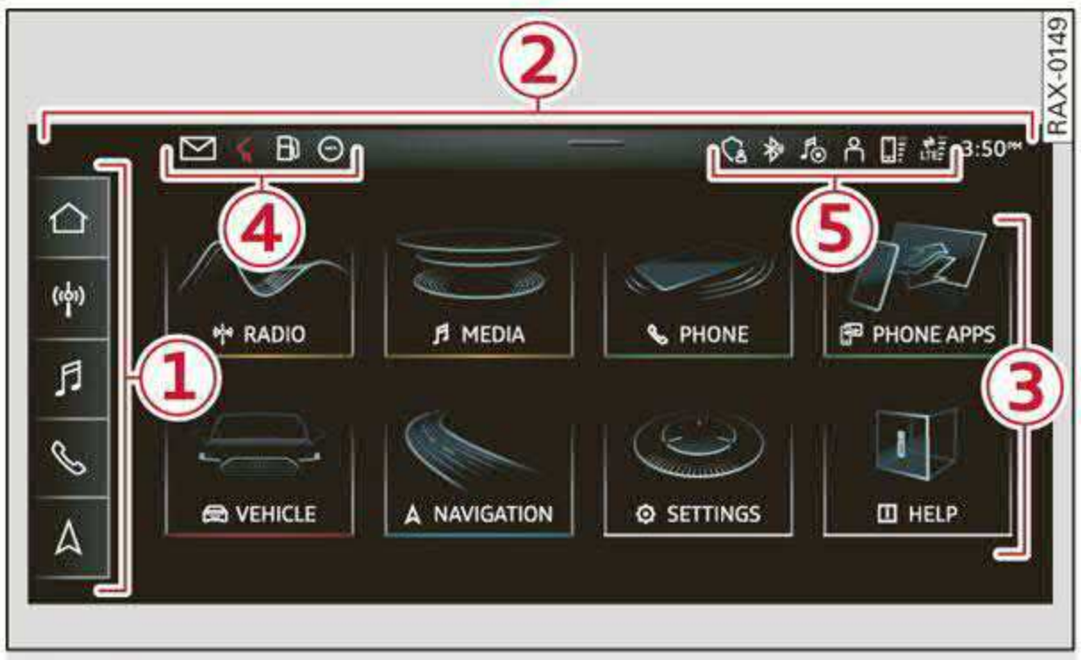


Fig. 15 Center display: home screen

	Label	Description
①	**Quick access bar**	Return to the home screen or open a menu quickly ⇨ *page 19*
②	**Status bar**	Operate functions and apply quick settings ⇨ *page 20*, display of available notifications ④ ⇨ *page 20*, status indicator ⑤ ⇨ *page 20*, time
③	**Display area**	Select a menu, apply settings, display content ⇨ *page 19*

Description of common symbols

You can operate the default functions using the symbols that follow. The symbols may be found in any menu, depending on the context.

Symbol	Description
	Go back one level
	Close the menu
	Search for content
	Open explanations for a menu
	Open settings for the selected menu
	Open the submenu
	Adjust the settings
	Set as favorite
	Switch functions on or off
	Switch functions on or off
	Switch functions on or off
	Open additional actions
	Open additional information for the selected menu

Quick access

With quick access, you can return to the home screen and quickly switch between four menus that can be individually configured.

Returning to the home screen or opening a menu quickly

- Press ⌂ or one of the four buttons.

Configuring quick access

- Press and hold a button on the home screen display area or in the quick access bar.
- To move a button to the quick access bar, pull it from the display area to the quick access bar.
- To adjust the placement of the buttons in the quick access bar, pull them to the desired position in the bar.
- Press **Done** to complete the configuration.

Tips

The position of ⌂ cannot be adjusted.

Display area

You can freely change the location of the buttons on the home screen display area. ▶

Configuring the display area

- ▸ Press and hold a button on the home screen display area.
- ▸ To adjust the placement of the buttons, pull them to the desired locations.
- ▸ Press **Done** to complete the configuration.

Switching between menu pages

If a menu contains multiple menu pages,  is displayed in the display area. The white bar shows the location of the current menu page.

- ▸ To switch between menu pages, swipe your finger to the right or left.

Status display

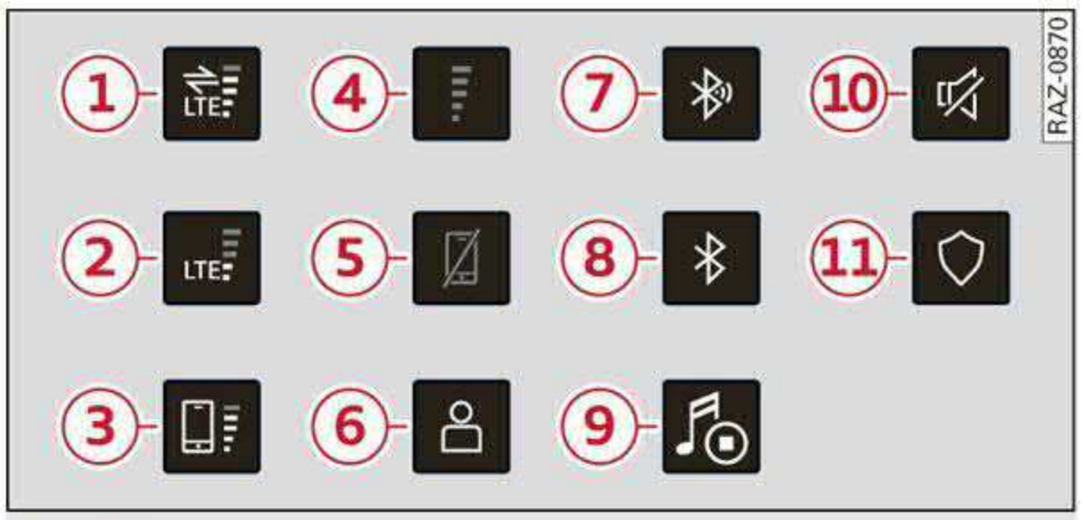


Fig. 16 Center display: frequently used symbols in the status bar

The symbols in the status bar show you information at a glance, such as if a mobile device is connected or if there is a data connection. The most common symbols are listed in the table.

	Description
①	There is a data connection. The bar indicates the signal strength of the data connection. Data is being transmitted now.
②	There is a data connection. The bar indicates the signal strength of the data connection. No data is being transmitted now.
③	A mobile device is connected. The bar indicates the signal strength of the mobile phone connection.
④	There is no data connection.
⑤	An error occurred with the mobile device connection to the MMI.
⑥	A user is selected. If a question mark appears in the symbol, the guest user is active.
⑦	A Bluetooth device is connected.
⑧	Bluetooth is switched on, but no Bluetooth device is connected.
⑨	Audio playback was interrupted.
⑩	The audio source is muted.
⑪	Privacy settings are enabled. The additional symbol indicates which privacy settings are currently activated ⇨ *page 270*.

Notification center

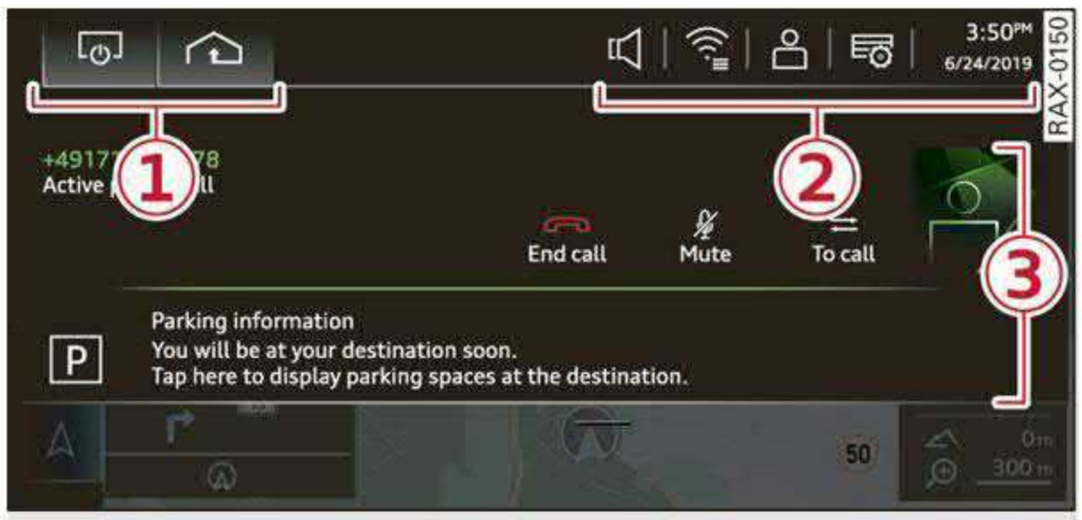


Fig. 17 Center display: notification center

Notifications can be displayed in the center display. After a certain amount of time, they will be hidden and a symbol will appear in the status bar ④ ⇨ *page 19, fig. 15*. In the notification center, you can view these notifications ③ ⇨ *fig. 17*, apply quick settings ②, and operate functions ①.

Using the notification center

- ▸ To open the notification center, pull the status bar downward, or
- ▸ Press the button on the status bar.
- ▸ To turn quick settings on or off, press the respective symbol ①.
- ▸ To apply quick settings, press the respective symbol ②.
- ▸ To obtain additional information about a notification, press it.
- ▸ To delete a notification, pull it toward the right edge of the screen.
- ▸ If there are more than four notifications in the notification center, the older notifications will be hidden. To display the older notifications, drag your finger upward on the screen. ▶

Setting which content is displayed

You can set whether some notifications should be displayed.

- ▸ To set the displayed content, press , or
- ▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Notifications**.
- ▸ Select and confirm which notifications should be displayed.

Possible functions

Symbol	Description
	Press: switches the center display on or off (this can also be done using the button in the center console)
	Press and hold: switches the screen clearing mode on or off (can also be done using the button in the center console)
	Opens the garage door opener function

Possible quick settings

Symbol	Description
	Apply sound settings
	Manage connected devices
	Manage users
	Set displayed content in the notification center
6/24/2019	Set date and time

Text input

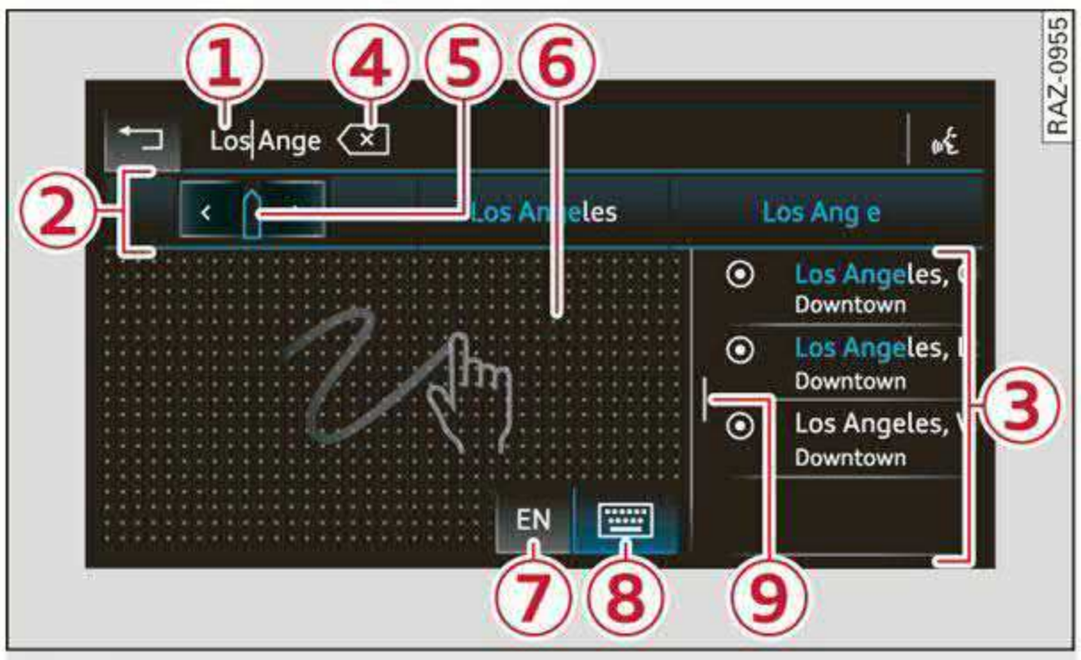


Fig. 18 Center display: text input

Overview

In the input fields of various menus, you can enter letters, numbers and characters, for example to find an address in navigation*.

The text that is currently entered is displayed in the center display (1). Depending on the context, word suggestions may be given based on the characters that have been entered (2) and results may be shown (3).

Opening text input

- ▸ Press in the input field (1).

Switching input languages

Requirement: multiple input languages must be defined in the MMI ⇨ *page 22*.

- ▸ To switch between the defined input languages, press the button (7).

Switching the input methods

- ▸ To switch between handwriting input or the on-screen keyboard, press the button (8).

Entering text

- ▸ Applies to: the on-screen keyboard: To enter text, press the buttons on the keyboard. Depending on the usage context, you may also be able to swipe over the letters [1)].
- ▸ Applies to: handwriting input: To enter text, simply write in the input area using one finger (6). You can write the separate characters next to each other or one on top of the other without having to move your finger over after writing a character. When you end the entry, the writing is interpreted by the system.
- ▸ Applies to: the on-screen keyboard with an input language that uses accented characters: To enter accented characters (such as â, ç, ñ, ö), press and hold a character that has accented versions available and select the desired accented character.
- ▸ Applies to: handwriting input: To enter a space, drag a line from left to right in the input section (6).

1) Depending on the country or equipment

- ▸ To select a location in the text input, press on the desired location in the input field. You can control the location more accurately using the slider on the screen (5)[1)].
- ▸ To delete individual characters, press ⌫ (4), or
- ▸ Applies to: handwriting input: Drag a line from right to left in the input section (6).
- ▸ To delete multiple characters, press and hold ⌫ (4).
- ▸ To delete all characters in a specific location, press and hold ⌫ (4) and drag up to the desired location[1)]. When released, the highlighted characters are deleted.

Accepting suggested words or selecting entries from the results list

- ▸ To accept a suggested word (2) or select an entry from the results list (3), press on it.
- ▸ To display more content in the results list, drag your finger upward or downward on the screen.
- ▸ To enlarge the results list, press the (9) button or pull it inward.

Setting the input language or keyboard layout

- ▸ Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Language & keyboard** > **Keyboard**.
- ▸ To define additional input languages, press the ⊂⊃ button.
- ▸ To change the keyboard layout for an input language, press >. For example, you can select between QWERTZ and QWERTY.

1) Depending on the country or equipment

Head-up display

Description

Applies to: vehicles with head-up display



Fig. 19 Instrument panel: knob for the head-up display

The head-up display projects certain warnings or selected information from the assist systems on the windshield. The display appears within the driver's field of vision.

Switching on and off

- ▸ To switch the head-up display on, press the knob (1).
- ▸ To switch the head-up display off, press the knob.

Adjusting the height

The height of the display can be adjusted to the individual driver.

- ▸ Make sure you are seated correctly ⇨ *page 59*.
- ▸ Turn the knob to the right or left.

Settings in the Infotainment system

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **Head-up display**.

Possible settings:

- **Picture rotation**
- **Brightness**
- **Display contents**: you can set which information should be displayed. The display of certain information and some of the red indicator lights cannot be hidden.

Note

To reduce the risk of scratches on the glass covering the head-up display, do not place any objects in the projection opening.

Tips

- Sunglasses with polarization filters and unfavorable lighting conditions can impair visibility of the display.
- An optimal display depends on the seat position and the height adjustment of the head-up display.
- A special windshield is needed for the head-up display function.
- For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *table Interior cleaning on page 249*.

8W1012721BB

Voice recognition system

General information

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

You can operate many functions in the vehicle easily using voice commands.

Using the voice recognition system optimally

- ▸ Speak clearly and distinctly at a normal volume. Speak louder when driving faster.
- ▸ Emphasize the words in the commands evenly and do not leave long pauses.
- ▸ Close the doors, the windows, and the sunroof* to reduce background noise. Make sure that passengers are not speaking when you are giving a voice command.
- ▸ Do not direct the vents toward the hands-free microphone, which is in the roof headliner near the front interior lights.
- ▸ Only the driver should speak to the system, because the handsfree microphone is aimed toward this seating position.

WARNING

- – Direct your full attention to driving. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Only use the functions in such a way that you always maintain complete control over your vehicle in all traffic situations.
- – Do not use the voice recognition system in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. The system may take longer to dial the number or may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.

Tips

There are no voice guidance* prompts when a dialog is active.

Operating

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system



Fig. 20 Center display: voice recognition system

Switching the voice recognition system on or off

Requirement: the ignition and the MMI must be switched on. A system language supported by the voice recognition system must be set. There must be no phone calls in progress and the parking aid must not be active.

- ▸ To switch the voice recognition system on, briefly press the button on the multifunction steering wheel, or depending on the context, press in the center display.
- ▸ To switch the voice recognition system off, press and hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel, or say or press **Cancel** (1).

Using the voice recognition system

In the voice recognition system menu, possible commands or help settings are displayed for the current dialog (3).

- ▸ Say the desired command after the signal tone.
- ▸ To receive additional help for the current dialog, say or press **Help** (2).
- ▸ To pause voice recognition, say or press **Pause** (4). To reactivate voice recognition, press (4) again or briefly press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Speech dialog system** > **Allow commands during voice output**. If the function is switched on, you can simply say a new command during a prompt.

Activating the online recognizer

Applies to: vehicles with online recognizer

You can activate the online recognizer for additional functions and to improve the results of ▶

voice recognition. A supported menu language must be selected. When there is an active Internet connection, the spoken command is evaluated in the vehicle and online.

- When you switch on the voice recognition system for the first time, a menu for the online recognizer opens. Or:
- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Speech dialog system** > **Consent to online speech recognizer**.
- Read the licensing agreements and accept them.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in General information on page 169*.

Tips

AUDI AG simply provides access to control your mobile device with voice operation and does not assume any responsibility for the content and commands within the external voice control.

External voice operation

Applies to: vehicles with external speech dialog system

You can access and control the voice operation on a connected mobile device through your vehicle.

Switching external voice operation on or off

Requirement: the ignition and the MMI must be switched on. A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI with the **Handsfree** profile ⇨ *page 158*. The mobile device being connected must have voice control that can be controlled externally. There must be no phone calls in progress and the parking aid must not be active.

- To switch on the external voice operation, press and hold the button longer on the multifunction steering wheel.
- To switch off the external voice operation, press and hold the button longer on the multifunction steering wheel or press **Cancel**.

Using external voice operation

- Say the desired command after the signal tone.
- To reactivate voice recognition when it is paused, press the button briefly on the multifunction steering wheel or press **Resume**.

8W1012721BB

Global functions

Additional function buttons

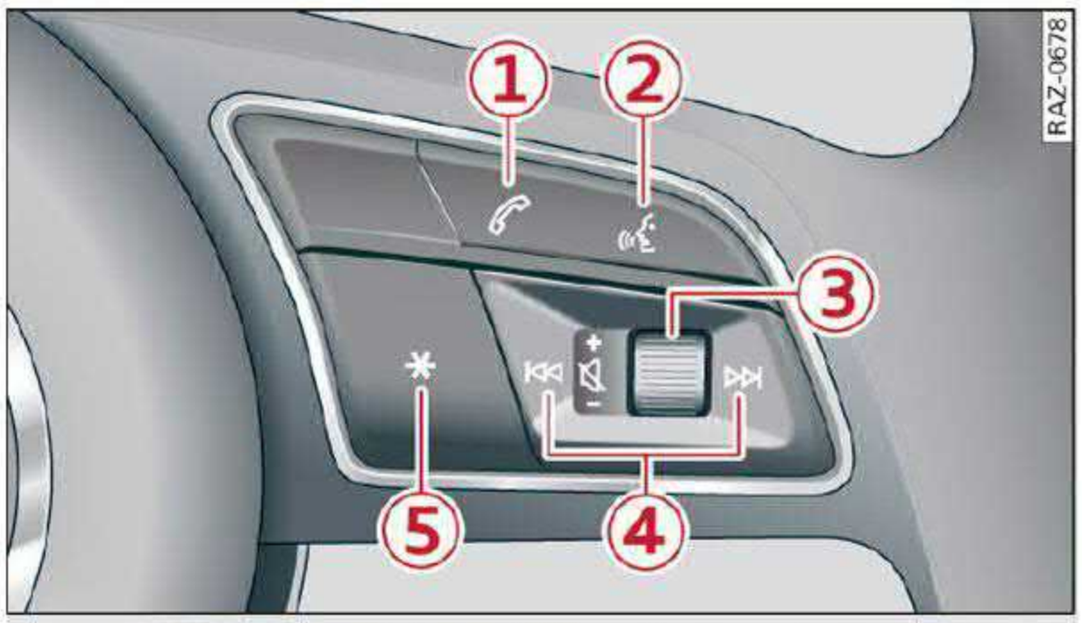


Fig. 21 Right side of the multifunction steering wheel



Fig. 22 MMI On/Off knob with joystick function

Adjusting the volume

You can adjust the volume of an audio source or a system message (for example, from the voice recognition system) when the sound is playing.

- ▸ To increase or decrease the volume, turn the right thumbwheel ③ ⇨ *fig. 21* upward or downward, or turn the On/Off knob ⇨ *fig. 22* to the right or left.
- ▸ To mute, push the right thumbwheel or the On/Off knob.

Selecting the previous/next track or station

- ▸ Press the |◁◁ / ▷▷| button ④ or briefly press the On/Off knob to the left or right.

Fast forward/rewind

- ▸ Press and hold the |◁◁ / ▷▷| button ④, or press the On/Off knob to the left or right until the desired playback position is reached.

Quick access steering wheel button

Depending on vehicle equipment, the button ⑤ may provide quick access to various functions.

- ▸ button, see ⇨ *page 90*.

You can program the ✳ button with various functions.

- ▸ To bring up the function that is currently set, press the ✳ button.
- ▸ To perform the function that is currently set, press and hold the ✳ button, or:
- ▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Steering wheel button assignment**.
- ▸ Select and confirm the desired function.

Switching voice operation on or off

button ②, see ⇨ *page 24*.

Using the telephone functions

button ①, see ⇨ *page 164*.

WARNING

Adjust the volume of the audio system so that signals from outside the vehicle, such as police and fire sirens, can be heard easily at all times.

Personalization

Users

General information

Applies to: vehicles with personalized user settings

Your vehicle can manage various users in the MMI. Each user will be assigned the settings that they last used.

Before you begin driving, you can select a user in the MMI and load personalized Infotainment and vehicle settings.

Possible users in the MMI:

- **myAudi user**: as a myAudi user, you can use Audi connect services that require a myAudi account. Certain settings are transferred online to your myAudi account. If you log into your myAudi account in another vehicle, you can load your settings in the other vehicle.
- **Local user**: as a local user, you can only store settings in the current vehicle. Your settings cannot be transferred to other vehicles. Audi connect services that can only be used with a myAudi account will not be available.
- **Guest**: as a guest, you can store settings in the vehicle without changing the settings for other users. Audi recommends only using the guest user temporarily, because settings can be overwritten by other users.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following options may be used to detect the active user so that the user settings can be loaded automatically before you start driving.

- Vehicle key

Requirement: the driver's door has been opened.

The detected user must be shown in the MMI.

Confirm the user shown, select another user ⇨ *page 27*, or add another user ⇨ *page 27*.

WARNING

It may not be possible to load Infotainment and vehicle settings, or they may only load partially. The driver is always responsible for the Infotainment and vehicle settings in order to reduce the risk of an accident.

Tips

- Certain Infotainment and vehicle settings (such as mirrors, last radio stations) may be stored, depending on vehicle equipment. You can find additional information in the MMI. Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Legal notes** > **About Audi connect**.
- Applies to: myAudi users: The stored settings can only be transferred to vehicles that are capable of receiving the transmitted information. There may be restrictions that prevent this, particularly in other countries.
- Applies to: myAudi users: The settings can only be transferred and loaded when there is coverage from the applicable mobile phone service provider.
- Applies to: myAudi users with PIN protection switched on: If the MMI displays a detected user but you simply start driving or wait without entering the 4-digit PIN, then the guest user will be selected. Some settings for the detected myAudi user will be transferred to the guest user.

User management

Opening user management

Applies to: MMI

▸ Press **USER** on the home screen.

Selecting a user

Applies to: MMI

▸ Press on the desired user.
▸ Enter the 4-digit myAudi PIN, if necessary.

Adding myAudi users

Applies to: MMI

Requirement: you must have successfully registered at my.audi.com and have created a 4-digit myAudi PIN.

▸ Press **Add user**.
▸ Press **Log in now** to log in with your myAudi credentials.
▸ Follow the system instructions. ▶

To transfer existing destinations from the MMI to your myAudi account one time, confirm the system prompts with **Yes**.

Adding a local user

Applies to: MMI

- ▸ Press **Add user**.
- ▸ Press **Initiate setup**.
- ▸ Press **Local user**.
- ▸ Follow the system instructions.

Editing users

Applies to: MMI

Requirement: the user must be selected and that user's settings must be loaded.

- ▸ Press on the user.

Depending on the user type, available options may include the following.

PIN protection: when this function is switched on, the 4-digit myAudi PIN must be entered before any settings for this user can be loaded.

Remove the user from the vehicle: the user will only be deleted in the vehicle from the list in the MMI.

Change name: you can change the name of the local user.

Removing users

Applies to: MMI

- ▸ Select on the home screen: **Users** > ✎ > *one or more entries* > **Delete**. The user will only be deleted from the list in the MMI. The authorizations for the user in the vehicle (such as key user) will not be removed.

Tips

– The guest user cannot be renamed.
– When changing users, the new user settings are loaded in the vehicle.
– If a user has the 🔒 symbol, PIN protection is active. To avoid having to enter the PIN, you can edit your user and switch off PIN protection.

Key user

Applies to: vehicles with user management

Depending on vehicle equipment, the vehicle owner must be set as the key user for certain Audi connect vehicle control services and possibly for functions on demand.

Setting the key user

Requirement: a key user must not be set yet.

- ▸ To set a key user for the vehicle, you will need a myAudi account. Register at my.audi.com.
- ▸ Add your vehicle at my.audi.com and then verify your myAudi account using the verification process that is provided.
- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **USER** > ⚙ > **Set key user**.
- ▸ Follow the system instructions and enter the 10-digit vehicle code ⇨ *page 34*. The key user is set. You have the rights to use the Audi connect vehicle control services ⇨ *page 171* that depend on vehicle equipment as well as the ability to manage other vehicle functions and any other users.

Managing additional users

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can grant authorization for additional users to use Audi connect vehicle control services at my.audi.com.

Removing the key user

If you remove the key user, all other users that were stored by the key user at my.audi.com and their authorizations will be deleted. It will no longer be possible to use the Audi connect vehicle control services, depending on the vehicle equipment.

Requirement: a key user must be set.

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **USER** > ⚙ > **Remove key user**.

Tips

– Depending on the country, you may be able to use the myAudi app or my.audi.com.
– You do not need to log into the vehicle with a myAudi user in order to use Audi connect ▶

vehicle control services, which depend on the vehicle equipment.
– If you sell your vehicle, reset all settings to the factory default settings.
– Store the vehicle code in a secure place. It may be necessary to re-enter the vehicle code.
– When entering the vehicle code, please note that the code is case-sensitive.
– If you do not have the 10-digit vehicle code, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

8W1012721BB

Opening and closing

Central locking

General information

WARNING

– If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the key with you. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise, children could start the vehicle or operate electrical equipment (such as power windows), which increases the risk of an accident.
– Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: When the vehicle is locked from the outside, no one - especially children - should remain in the vehicle, because the windows can no longer be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 33, Anti-theft alarm system*. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to enter the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Description

All doors and the luggage compartment lid can be centrally unlocked and locked at once. You can select in the MMI if the entire vehicle or only the driver's door should unlock when unlocking the vehicle ⇨ *page 31*. The turn signals flash twice when you unlock the vehicle and flash once when you lock the vehicle. If they do not flash when locking, check if all doors and lids are closed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you may have different options for centrally unlocking and locking your vehicle.

– Vehicle key ⇨ *page 35*
– Sensors in the door handles ⇨ *page 35*
– Lock cylinder on the driver's door ⇨ *page 32*
– Central locking switch inside ⇨ *page 32*

Vehicle key

The term “vehicle key” refers to the remote control key or convenience key*. The convenience key* is a remote control key with special functions ⇨ *page 35* and ⇨ *page 92*.

Automatic locking

If you unlock the vehicle but then do not open any of the doors, the luggage compartment, or the hood within a short period time, the vehicle locks again automatically. This feature prevents the vehicle from being accidentally left unlocked for a long period of time.

Automatic locking (Auto Lock)

The Auto Lock function locks all doors and the luggage compartment lid once the speed has exceeded approximately 9 mph (15 km/h). The vehicle will unlock again if the unlock function in the central locking switch is pressed, the “P” gear is engaged, or the ignition is switched off.

You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the door handle one time. To open the rear doors individually, you must pull the door handle twice.

In the event of a crash with airbag deployment, the doors will also automatically unlock to allow access to the vehicle.

Unintentionally locking yourself out

Only lock your vehicle when all of the doors and the luggage compartment lid are closed and there is no key in the vehicle. This reduces the risk of locking yourself out accidentally.

The following features help to reduce the risk of locking your vehicle key in the vehicle:

– If the driver's door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked by pressing the button on the remote control key or by touching the locking sensor* on a door.
– If the vehicle key that was used most recently is inside the luggage compartment, the luggage compartment lid will automatically open again after it closes ⇨ (!).
– If the vehicle key that was last used is detected inside the vehicle, then the vehicle cannot be locked from the outside ⇨ (!).

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 30*.

Note

The following applies when locking the vehicle:

– If the vehicle key that was last used is detected inside the passenger compartment, then the vehicle cannot be locked from the outside **using the sensor**. Take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle again. Otherwise, the vehicle will not be protected against unauthorized access.
– If you try to lock the vehicle **using the button on the vehicle key** while the front passenger's or rear door is open, and you accidentally place the key inside the passenger compartment and close the door, the vehicle will lock at first. But if the keyless system detects a vehicle key inside the vehicle after it locks, then the vehicle will unlock again. The turn signals will flash several times to indicate this. If you do not open the vehicle to remove the vehicle key within a brief period, then the vehicle will lock automatically. This prevents the vehicle from being left unlocked for long periods of time. The key will then be locked inside the vehicle.
– If the luggage compartment lid closes and the system detects that the last vehicle key that was used is inside the luggage compartment, then the luggage compartment lid will open again. The turn signals will flash several times to indicate this. The doors will lock. Always take the vehicle key with you, or unauthorized persons may be able to enter the vehicle.

Tips

– Do not leave valuables unattended in the vehicle. A locked vehicle is not a safe!
– The LED in the driver's door rail blinks when you lock the vehicle. If the LED turns on for approximately 30 seconds after locking, there is a malfunction in the central locking system. Have the problem corrected by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Setting the central locking system

You can adjust the central locking system to your preferences. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Central locking**.

Door unlocking

– If you select **All**, all doors and the luggage compartment lid will be unlocked when unlocking the vehicle.
– If you select **Driver's door**, only the driver's door will be unlocked. To unlock all doors and the luggage compartment lid, press the button on the vehicle key twice. In vehicles with a convenience key*, only the driver's door will unlock when you pull the driver's door handle. If you pull another door handle, the entire vehicle will be unlocked.

The entire vehicle will always be locked when you press the button.

Long press to open windows

You can select if all windows and the panoramic glass roof* should open using the vehicle key ⇨ *page 42, Convenience opening and closing*. If you press and hold the button on the vehicle key, all of the windows and the panoramic glass roof* will close.

Disable rear lid handle

You can select if the luggage compartment lid can open with the handle. If you activate this function, the luggage compartment lid can only be opened with the or button on the vehicle key or in the driver's door. In vehicles with a convenience key*, you can still open the luggage compartment lid using the handle if an authorized convenience key is detected ⇨ *page 36*.

Fold mirrors

You can select if the exterior mirrors automatically fold in when locking. ▶

Tone when locking[1)]

You can select if an audio signal sounds when locking the vehicle.

Open with convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

You can deactivate the feature for unlocking using the sensor. The function for locking via the sensor will still be enabled ⇨ *page 35*.

Tips

The settings are automatically stored and assigned to the active personal profile.

Central locking switch



Fig. 23 Driver's door: central locking switch

► To lock or unlock the vehicle, press the or button ⇨ .

When locking the vehicle with the central locking switch, the following applies:

– The doors and the luggage compartment lid cannot be opened from the outside for security reasons, for example, to reduce the risk of unauthorized entry while stopped at a light.
– The LED in the central locking switch turns on when all doors are closed and locked.
– You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the door handle one time. To open the rear doors individually, you must pull the door handle twice.
– In the event of a crash with airbag deployment, the doors unlock automatically to allow access to the vehicle.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 30*.
– The central locking button works when the ignition is switched off.
– The central locking switch is inoperative when the vehicle is locked from the outside.

Messages

Automatic transmission: **Driver's door: malfunction! Shift to P before leaving vehicle. See owner's manual**

There is a malfunction in the driver's door. Secure the vehicle before exiting by selecting the “P” selector lever position. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Mechanically unlocking and locking the doors

If the central locking fails, you must unlock or lock the doors separately.

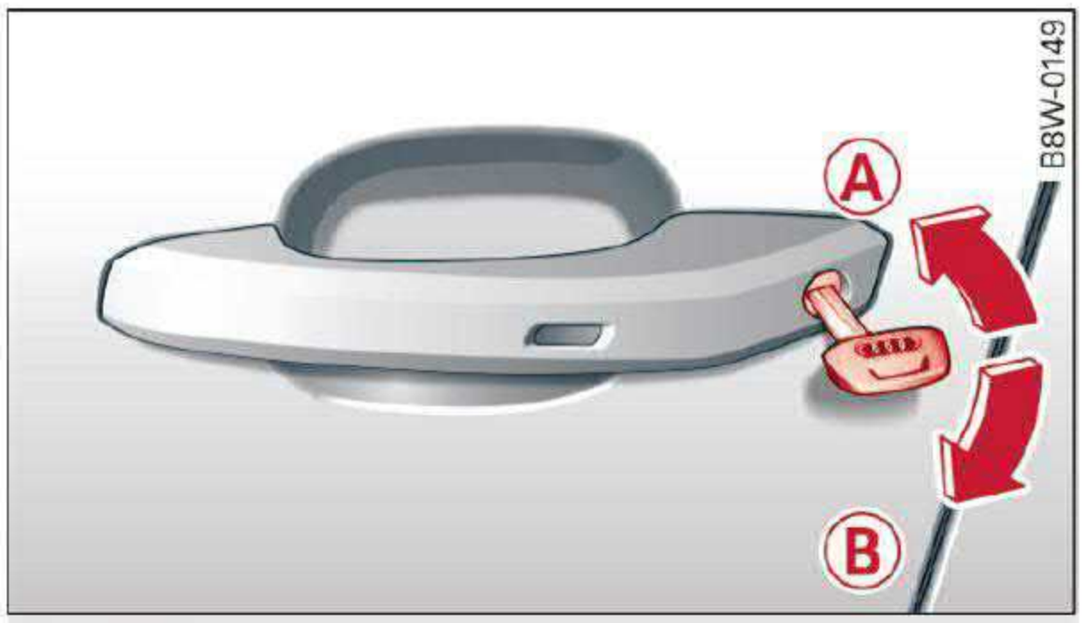


Fig. 24 Driver's door: door lock cylinder



Fig. 25 Door: mechanically locking

1) This function is not available in all countries.

Unlocking and locking the driver's door with the mechanical key

- Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 34*.
- To unlock the driver's door, turn the key to the unlock position Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 24*.
- To lock the driver's door, select the "P" position (automatic transmission) and turn the key **once** to the closing position Ⓑ ⇨ *page 30, General information*.

Locking the front passenger's door or rear doors with the mechanical key

The mechanical lock is located on the edge of the front passenger's door and the rear doors. It is only visible when the door is open.

- Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 34*.
- Remove the cap from the opening ⇨ *fig. 25*.
- Insert the key in the inside slot and turn it all the way to the right (right door) or left (left door).

Once the front passenger's door or rear doors close, it will no longer be possible to open them from the outside. The door can be unlocked from the inside by pulling on the door handle one time and then opened by pulling the door handle again. If the child safety lock in one of the rear doors is activated, you must first pull the door handle from the inside. Then you can open the door from the outside.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 30*.

Anti-theft alarm system

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

If the anti-theft alarm system detects a vehicle break-in, audio and visual warning signals are triggered. The anti-theft alarm system is switched on or off when locking or unlocking your vehicle. If the alarm is triggered, it will shut off automatically after a certain amount of time.

Switching the alarm off manually

- To switch the alarm off, press the button on the vehicle key or switch the ignition on.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the anti-theft alarm system may have the following features:

Break-in security feature

The alarm will sound if there is a break-in at the doors, hood, and/or luggage compartment lid.

Interior/towing protection monitor

The alarm will be triggered if there are movements detected in the vehicle interior (for example, by animals) or if there is a change in the vehicle angle (for example, when the vehicle is being towed).

You can prevent the alarm from being triggered by deactivating the interior/towing protection monitor.

Deactivating the interior/towing protection monitor

There are the following options for deactivating the interior/towing protection monitor:

- Press the button on the vehicle key a second time **within two seconds**. Or
- Applies to: vehicles with convenience key: Touch the sensor on the door handle a second time **within two seconds**. Or
- Turn the mechanical key in the door lock to the close position a second time **within two seconds**.
- Applies to: vehicles with MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Interior monitoring**

If you lock the vehicle, then the interior/towing protection monitor will stay off until the next time the vehicle is unlocked.

WARNING

No one, especially children, should stay in the vehicle when it is locked from the outside, because the windows can no longer be opened from the inside. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to enter the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Tips

The interior/towing protection monitoring only functions correctly when the windows and the roof* are closed.

Keys

Key set

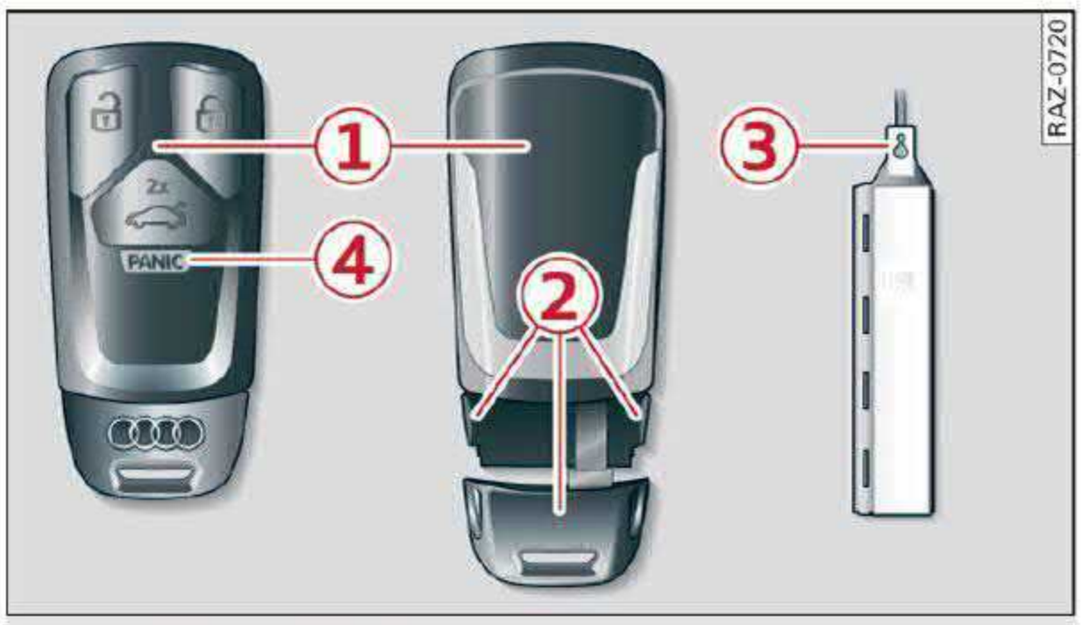


Fig. 26 Your vehicle key set

① Vehicle key

You can unlock and lock your vehicle with the vehicle key.

② Mechanical key and release buttons for the mechanical key

A mechanical key is integrated in the vehicle key. To remove it, press the release button and remove the mechanical key.

Using the mechanical key, you can:

– Applies to: vehicles with lockable glove compartment: Locking and unlocking the glove compartment.
– Manually unlock and lock the doors ⇨ *page 32*.
– Applies to: vehicles with locking backrests: Locking and unlocking the backrest ⇨ *page 82*
– Unlock the luggage compartment lid using the emergency release ⇨ *page 40*.

③ Key fob with vehicle code

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control

Open the key tag and scratch to reveal the vehicle code. You can unlock the Audi connect vehicle control services* for your vehicle with this vehicle code. For additional information, see ⇨ *page 171*. If a key fob is lost, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

④ PANIC button

In an emergency, you can press the PANIC button to trigger the alarm for the anti-theft alarm system. The vehicle horn and emergency flashers will turn on if you trigger the alarm.

– To trigger the alarm, press the PANIC button ④ ⇨ *fig. 26*.
– To turn the alarm off, press the red PANIC button again.

Lost key/replacing a key

If a vehicle key is lost, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Have this vehicle key deactivated. It is important to bring all keys with you.

If a key is lost, you should report it to your insurance company.

Electronic immobilizer

The immobilizer prevents unauthorized use of the vehicle.

In some cases, it may not be possible to start the vehicle if there is a vehicle key from a different vehicle manufacturer on the key chain.

Data in the vehicle key

When driving, service and maintenance-relevant data is continuously stored in your vehicle key. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can read out this data and tell you about the work your vehicle needs.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 30*.

Note

Protect the key against high temperatures and direct sunlight.

For the sake of the environment

Do not dispose of vehicle keys in household trash. They contain materials that can be recycled. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or ▶

authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Tips

– The vehicle key function can be temporarily disrupted by interference from transmitters near the vehicle working in the same frequency range (such as a mobile device or radio equipment). Always check if your vehicle is locked.
– Applies to: MMI: You can view the number of keys programmed to the vehicle by selecting on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Vehicle information**.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 275*.

Unlocking and locking the vehicle



Fig. 27 Door handle: sensor for locking

You can unlock and lock your vehicle using either the buttons on the vehicle key or using the sensors* in the door handles. The settings in the MMI specify which doors will unlock ⇨ *page 31*.

Unlocking or locking using the vehicle key buttons

► To unlock the vehicle, press the 🔓 button ⇨ *page 34, fig. 26*.
► To lock the vehicle, press the 🔒 button **once**.

Unlocking or locking using the sensors

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

► To unlock a door or the luggage compartment lid, grasp the door handle or luggage compartment lid handle.
► To lock the vehicle, close the doors and touch the outer sensor on the door handle **once** ⇨ *fig. 27*. Do not grasp the door handle while locking the vehicle, or else the vehicle will not lock. The door cannot be opened for a brief period directly after locking it. This way you have the opportunity to check if the doors locked correctly.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 30*.

Tips

– Only use the vehicle key when you can see the vehicle.
– The vehicle can only be locked when the "P" selector lever position is engaged.
– Do not use the vehicle key to lock and unlock when you are inside the vehicle. Otherwise, you could trigger the anti-theft alarm*. If this happens, press the 🔓 unlock button.

Tips

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

– When unlocking or locking the vehicle, the convenience key cannot be more than approximately 4 feet (1.5 m) away from the door handle or luggage compartment.
– Unlocking with the convenience key (keyless access) can be deactivated in the MMI system ⇨ *page 31*.
– To prevent the vehicle battery from discharging, the energy management gradually switches off convenience functions that are not needed. You then may no longer be able to unlock your vehicle with the sensors.

LED and battery in the vehicle key



Fig. 28 Vehicle key: removing the battery holder

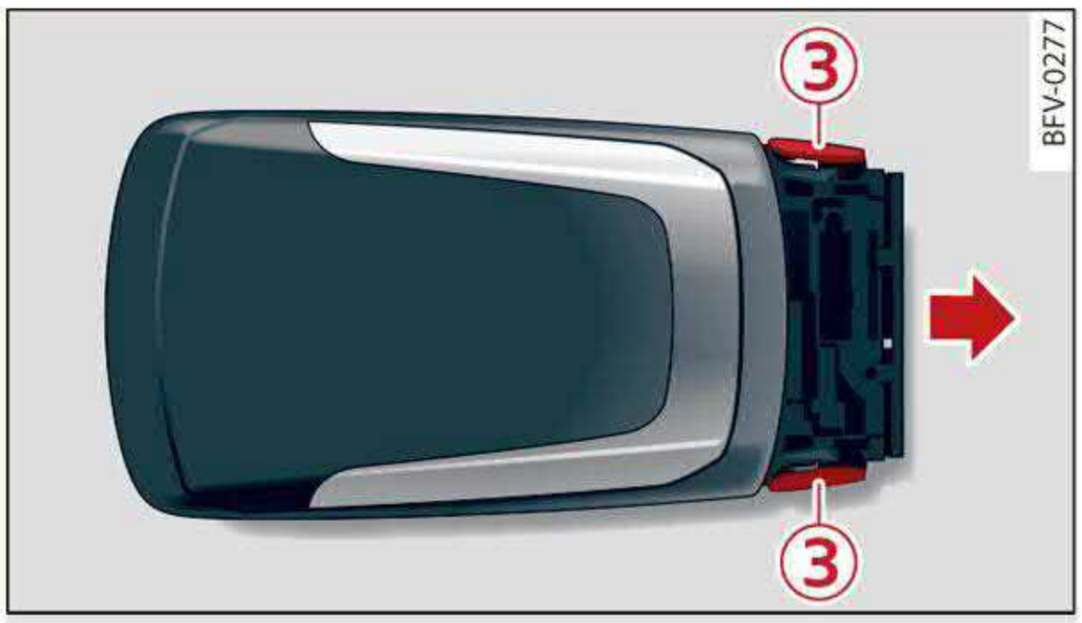


Fig. 29 Vehicle key (rear side): removing the battery holder

LED in the vehicle key

The LED ① indicates the vehicle key function.

- ▸ If you press a button briefly, the LED blinks once.
- ▸ If you press and hold a button (convenience opening/closing), the LED blinks several times.
- ▸ If the LED does not blink, the vehicle key battery is drained. Replace the battery in the vehicle key.

Replacing the vehicle key battery

- ▸ Press the release buttons ② ⇨ *fig. 28* and remove the mechanical key.
- ▸ Press the release buttons ③ ⇨ *fig. 29* while pulling the battery holder out of the vehicle key in the direction of the arrow.
- ▸ Insert the new battery with the “+” facing down.
- ▸ Slide the battery holder carefully into the vehicle key.
- ▸ Insert the mechanical key.

For the sake of the environment

Discharged batteries must be disposed of using methods that will not harm the environment. Do not dispose of them in household trash.

Tips

Replacement batteries for the vehicle key must meet the same specifications as the original battery.

Luggage compartment lid

General information

WARNING

– Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: When the vehicle is locked from the outside, no one - especially children - should remain in the vehicle, because the windows can no longer be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 33*. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to enter the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.
– Always close and lock the luggage compartment lid and the doors when the vehicle is not in use. Otherwise someone such as a child could enter the vehicle through the luggage compartment and become locked inside it. To reduce the risk of injury, do not allow children to play in or around the vehicle.
– To reduce the risk of injuries by pinching, make sure that no one is in the operating area of the luggage compartment lid, including the hinge areas and the upper and lower edge of the luggage compartment lid.
– After closing the luggage compartment lid, make sure that it is latched. The luggage compartment lid could open suddenly while driving, which would increase the risk of an accident.
– Never drive with the luggage compartment lid ajar or open, because poisonous gases ▶

from the surrounding area can enter the vehicle interior and increase the risk of asphyxiation.

– If there is a luggage rack (such as a bicycle rack) on the luggage compartment lid, the luggage compartment lid may not open completely under certain circumstances or it could close by itself if open due to the extra weight. Therefore, the open luggage compartment lid must be given additional support or the cargo must first be removed from the luggage rack.
– Applies to: vehicles with power-operated or sensor-controlled luggage compartment lid: Pay careful attention when closing the luggage compartment lid. Otherwise, you could cause serious injury to yourself or others despite the pinch protection.

Note

The luggage compartment lid can bump into objects such as the garage ceiling when opening and become damaged.

Tips

– When the vehicle is locked, the luggage compartment lid can be unlocked separately by pressing the 2x button on the vehicle key twice. The luggage compartment lid locks automatically when it is closed again.
– The ability to open the luggage compartment lid using the handle can be deactivated or activated in the MMI ⇨ *page 31*.
– Applies to: vehicles with fixed rear backrests: The luggage compartment lid can be unlocked from the inside in an emergency ⇨ *page 41*.

Opening and closing the luggage compartment lid



Fig. 30 Driver's door: opening the luggage compartment lid

Opening the luggage compartment lid

- When the ignition is switched off, press the 2x button on the vehicle key twice. Or
- Select the “P” selector lever position and pull the switch in the driver's door. Or
- Applies to: vehicles without convenience key: Unlock the vehicle using the / 2x button on the vehicle key and press the handle in the luggage compartment lid. Or
- Applies to: vehicles with convenience key: Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid. The vehicle key cannot be more than approximately 4 feet (1.5 m) away from the luggage compartment.

Closing the luggage compartment lid

- Applies to: vehicles without automatic luggage compartment lid: Use the inside grip to pull the luggage compartment lid down and allow it to drop gently to close it. Or
- Applies to: vehicles with automatic luggage compartment lid: Note ⇨ *page 38*.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 36*.

Automatic luggage compartment lid

Applies to: vehicles with automatic luggage compartment lid

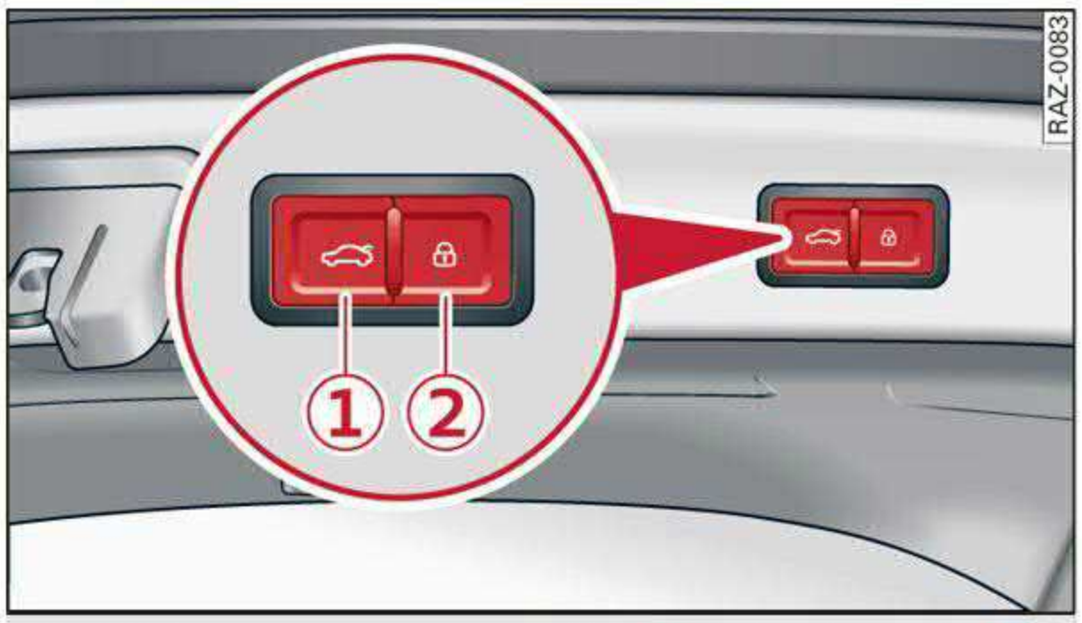


Fig. 31 Luggage compartment lid: ① closing button*, ② lock button* (vehicles with convenience key*)

The luggage compartment lid can be opened and closed automatically ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 36*.

Opening the luggage compartment lid

- ▸ When the ignition is switched off, press the 2x button on the vehicle key twice. Or
- ▸ Select the "P" selector lever position and pull the switch* in the driver's door. Or
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with convenience key: Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid. The vehicle key cannot be more than approximately 4 feet (1.5 m) away from the luggage compartment.

Closing the luggage compartment lid

- ▸ Press the button in the luggage compartment lid. Or
- ▸ Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid. Or
- ▸ Press the luggage compartment lid downward slightly. Or
- ▸ When the ignition is switched on, pull the switch in the driver's door ⇨ *page 37, fig. 30* until the luggage compartment lid is closed. Or
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with convenience key: Press and hold the 2x button on the vehicle key while the ignition is switched off until the luggage compartment lid closes. Make sure there is enough distance (maximum of approximately 9 feet (3 m)) between you and the luggage compartment lid. Or
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with convenience key: While the ignition is switched off, press the / * button in the luggage compartment lid. The vehicle key must not be more than approximately 4 feet (1.5 m) away from the luggage compartment and it must not be inside the vehicle. If you press the * button, then the vehicle will lock.

Storing the luggage compartment lid opening position

Applies to: allroad

The position must be at a certain height or higher to store.

- ▸ Bring the luggage compartment lid into the desired open position. If you want to move the luggage compartment lid to a lower position, move it slowly in small increments; otherwise, the luggage compartment lid will close automatically.
- ▸ Press and hold the button in the luggage compartment lid for at least four seconds to store the new open position. A visual and audio signal will follow.
- ▸ To set a higher open position, wait at least five seconds and then carefully press the luggage compartment lid upward.
- ▸ Press and hold the button again for at least four seconds to store the new open position.

The automatic opening or closing will stop if:

– You press the button or press the handle in the luggage compartment lid again Or
– If something blocks the luggage compartment lid or makes it difficult for the lid to move.

If you press the button or press the handle in the luggage compartment lid again, the luggage compartment lid will open again.

⚠ WARNING

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 36*.

ⓘ Tips

The luggage compartment lid can be operated manually if the vehicle battery is low. It is necessary to use more force when doing this. Move the lid slowly to reduce the amount of force needed.

Opening and closing the luggage compartment lid with foot motion (kicking movement)

Applies to: vehicles with sensor-controlled luggage compartment lid



Fig. 32 Vehicle rear: foot motion (example)

The luggage compartment lid can be opened and closed automatically [1] ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 36*.

Requirements: you must be carrying your convenience key* with you. The ignition must be switched off. You must be standing at the center behind the luggage compartment lid.

- ► Move your foot back and forth under the bumper one time ⇨ *fig. 32*. Do not touch the bumper. Make sure you have firm footing. The luggage compartment lid will open or close [1] once the system detects the movement. The automatic opening or closing will be canceled if you repeat one of the movements described.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 36*.

Tips

The luggage compartment lid will only open or close [1] if you perform the movement as described. This prevents the luggage compartment lid from opening or closing due to similar movements [1], such as when you walk between the rear of the vehicle and your garage door. In some situations, the function may be limited or temporarily unavailable. This may happen if:

- You are standing too close to the bumper or too far away from it
- The luggage compartment lid was closed or opened immediately beforehand
- You park close to a hedge and the branches move back and forth under the vehicle for a long period of time
- You clean your vehicle, for example with a pressure washer or in a car wash
- There is heavy rain
- The bumper is very dirty, for example after driving on salt-covered roads
- There is interference to the vehicle key's radio signal, such as from mobile devices or remote controls

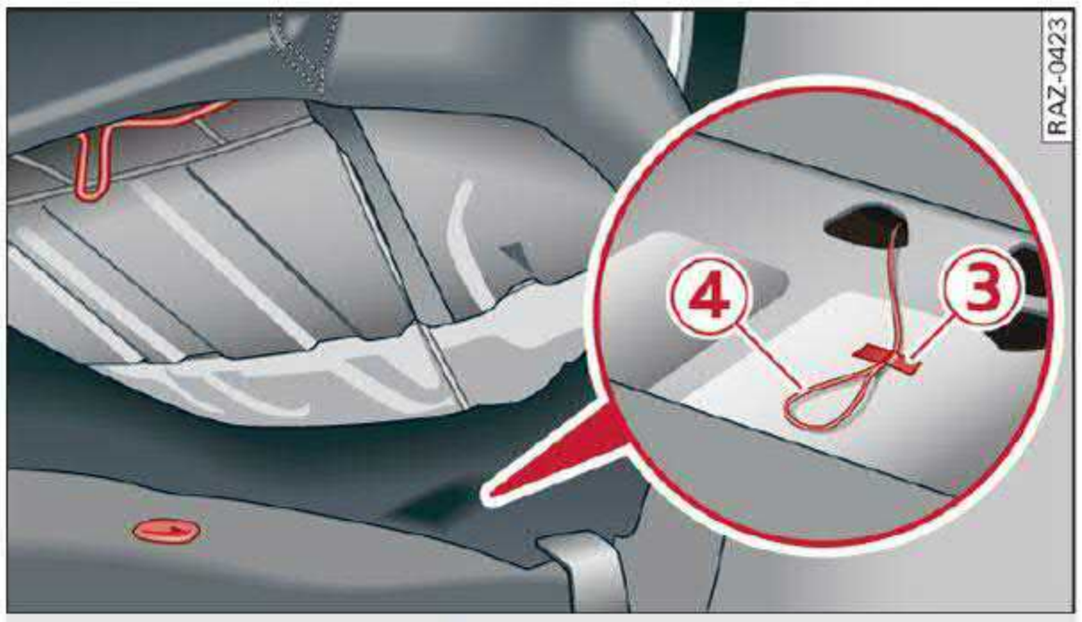
[1] The closing function applies to vehicles that also have automatic luggage compartment lid operation.

Mechanically unlocking the luggage compartment lid



Applies to: vehicles with folding backrests

Fig. 33 Inner luggage compartment lid: access for emergency release ① sedan, ② allroad



Applies to: vehicles with fixed backrests

Fig. 34 Rear bench seat: release cable for emergency release in the sedan

Depending on the equipment, the luggage compartment lid can be opened either from inside the luggage compartment or from the rear bench seat using the emergency release.

Folding rear seat backrest

- ▸ Fold the backrest on the rear bench seat forward ⇨ *page 82*.
- ▸ Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 34*.

- ▸ Applies to: sedan: Using the mechanical key, pry out the cover in the luggage compartment lid trim panel ① ⇨ *fig. 33*.
- ▸ Applies to: allroad: Using the mechanical key, pry out the cover in the luggage compartment lid trim panel ② ⇨ *fig. 33*.
- ▸ Press the lever with the mechanical key in the direction of the arrow to release the luggage compartment lid.
- ▸ Fold the backrest backward until it locks into place.

Fixed rear seat backrest

Applies to: sedan

- ▸ Carefully pull the left side of the rear bench seat out of its mount until you can reach the release cable ⇨ *fig. 34*.
- ▸ Remove the Velcro® tape ③.
- ▸ Pull on the loop ④ until the luggage compartment lid releases.
- ▸ Tape the release cable back in place and press the bench seat back into its retainer.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 36*.

WARNING

– Applies to: vehicles with folding backrests: If you have folded the backrests into the upright position, always check if the lock is secured by pulling forward on the backrest.
– Applies to: vehicles with fixed backrest: After the emergency release on the luggage compartment lid is activated, make sure that the bracket under the rear bench seat engages securely in the lifting eye.

Opening the luggage compartment lid from the inside in an emergency

Applies to: vehicles with fixed rear backrests



Fig. 35 Inner luggage compartment lid: lever

- Press the lever in the direction of the arrow until the luggage compartment lid opens.

Tips

Never close the luggage compartment lid using the emergency handle.

Child safety lock

The child safety lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside and the rear power windows from being operated.

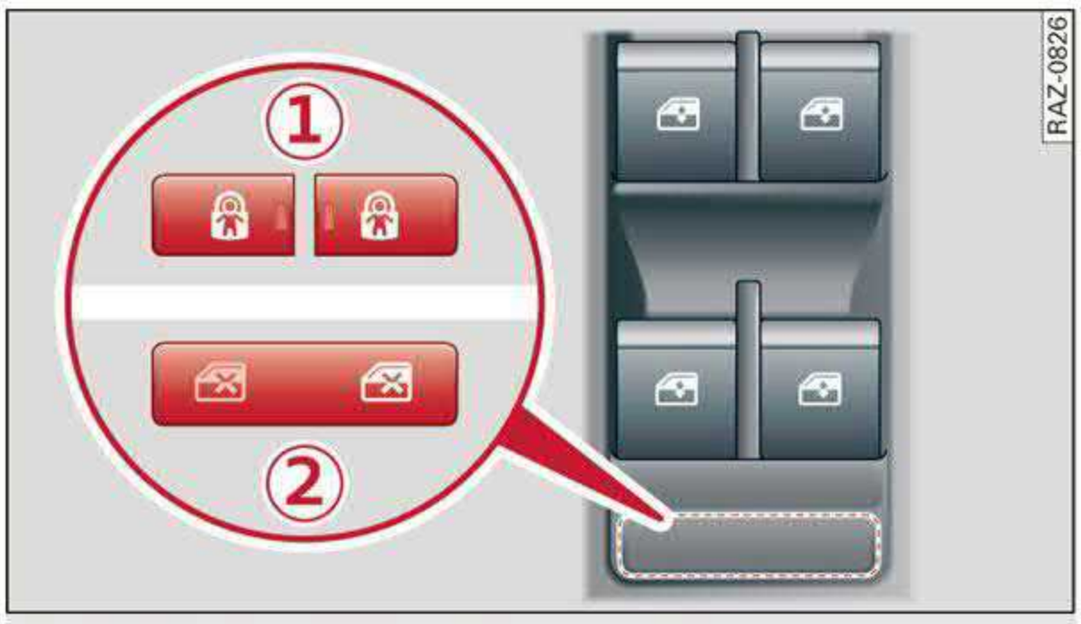


Fig. 36 Section of driver's door: controls



Applies to: vehicles with manual child safety locks

Fig. 37 Rear door: manual child safety lock

Vehicles with button

Applies to: vehicles with power child safety locks

- To activate and deactivate the child safety lock (door handle and power window switch) for the a rear door, press the left or right button in the driver's door (1) that corresponds to that rear door ⇨ *fig. 36*. The indicator light in the button turns on/blinks.
- Make sure the child safety lock is working by checking the function on the rear power window switch and door handle.

Vehicles with button

Applies to: vehicles with manual child safety lock

- To activate or deactivate the child safety lock for the power window switch in the rear doors, press the button in the driver's door (2) ⇨ *fig. 36*. The indicator light in the button turns on/blinks.
- To activate or deactivate the manual child safety lock for the rear door handle, open the respective rear door and turn the key switch with the mechanical key in the direction of the arrow or opposite the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 37*. This will disable the function of the rear door handle.
- Make sure the child safety lock is working by checking the function on the rear power window switch and door handle.

Applies to: vehicles with power child safety locks:

It is not possible to operate the rear climate control system* when the child safety lock is activated. The **SET REAR** function allows you to adjust all settings in the rear using the climate control system controls in the cockpit.

Message in the instrument cluster display

/ Child safety lock: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the child safety lock. Press the / button again.

If the message stays on, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 30*.

– A malfunction in the child safety lock could allow the rear doors to be opened from the inside, which increases the risk of an accident.

Power windows

Opening and closing the windows

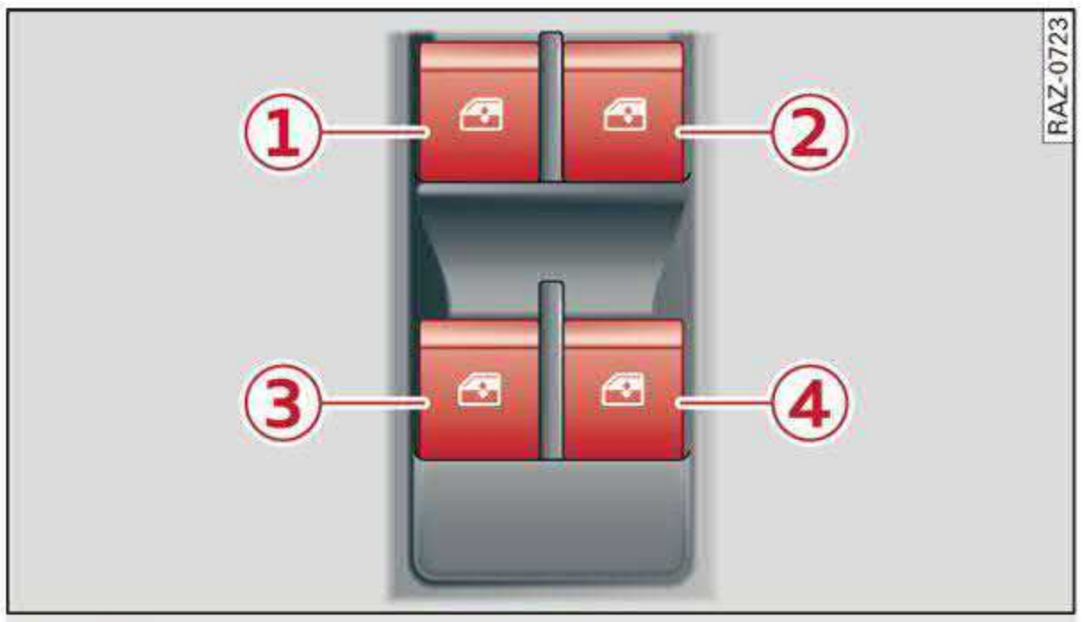


Fig. 38 Driver's door: power window switch

Power window switches:

① Left front door
② Right front door
③ Left rear door
④ Right rear door

Opening and closing the windows

The driver can control all power windows. All power window switches are equipped with a two-stage function:

- ▸ To open or close the window completely, press the switch down or pull the switch up briefly to the second level. The operation will stop if the switch is pressed or pulled again.
- ▸ To select a position in between opened and closed, press or pull the switch to the first level until the desired window position is reached.

Correcting a malfunction in the one-touch up/down function

You can reactivate the one-touch up/down function if it malfunctions.

- ▸ Pull the power window switch up until the window is completely raised.
- ▸ Release the switch and pull it up again for at least one second.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 30*.
– Never close the windows carelessly or in an uncontrolled manner, because this increases the risk of injury.

Tips

– You can still open and close the windows for several minutes after turning the ignition off. The power window switch is not disabled until the driver's door or front passenger's door is opened.
– The power windows are equipped with pinch protection. The automatic window may stop closing and will open all the way again even if no obstacle is detected. Pull the power window switch up until the window is completely raised.

Convenience opening and closing

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

Convenience opening and closing the windows and roof*

You can set in the MMI if all windows or the roof* should open or close all at once ⇨ *page 31, Setting the central locking system*.

- ▸ Press and hold the / button on the vehicle key until all windows and the roof* have reached the desired position ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with convenience key: Touch the sensor* on one of the door handles and continue touching it until all of the windows and the roof* are closed. Do not place your hand in the door handle when doing this.

When all of the windows and the roof* are closed, the turn signals will flash once.

WARNING

– Never close the windows or the roof* carelessly or in an uncontrolled manner, because this increases the risk of injury.
– For security reasons, the windows and the roof* can only be opened and closed with the vehicle key at a maximum distance of approximately 6.5 feet (2 m) away from the ▸

vehicle. Always pay attention when using the button to close the windows and the roof* so that no one is pinched. The closing process will stop immediately when the button is released.

Tips

Applies to: vehicles with panoramic glass roof: If the sunshade is closed, it will automatically open partially or halfway when the roof is tilted or opened.

Sliding/tilting sunroof

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with sliding/tilting sunroof

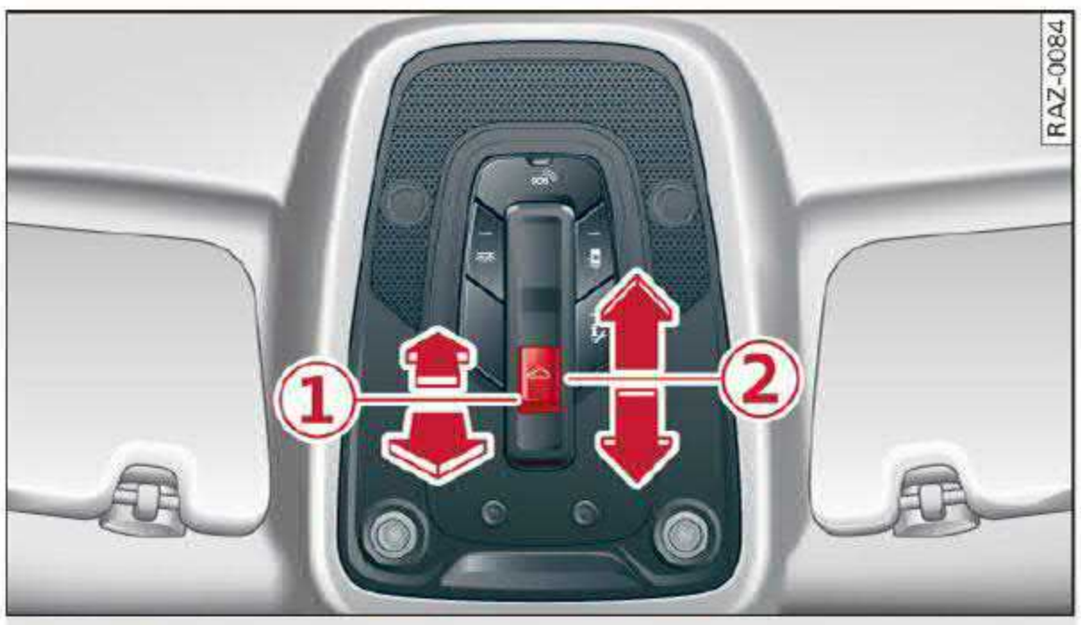


Fig. 39 Section of front headliner: sliding/tilting sunroof button

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually in any position when the roof is closed. The sunshade opens automatically when the roof is opened.

Tilting and closing the roof

- To tilt the sunroof as far as possible, press the button up briefly to the second level (1).
- To close the sunroof completely, pull the button down briefly to the second level ⇨ .
- To set a position between opened and closed, press/pull the button up to the first level until the sunroof reaches the desired position.

Opening and closing the roof

- To close the sunroof completely, push the button back briefly to the second level (2).
- To close the sunroof completely, push the button forward briefly to the second level ⇨ .
- To set a position between opened and closed, slide the button forward/back up to the first level until the desired position is reached.

Sunroof emergency closing

If an object is detected when closing, the roof will open again automatically. In this case, you can then close it with the power emergency closing function.

- Within five seconds after the sunroof opens automatically, pull the applicable button until the roof is closed.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury, always pay attention when closing the sliding/tilting sunroof. Always switch the ignition off when leaving the vehicle and always take the vehicle key with you.

Note

Always close your sliding/tilting sunroof when leaving your vehicle. Rain can cause damage to the interior equipment of your vehicle, particularly the electronic equipment.

Tips

- After switching off the ignition, the sliding/tilting sunroof can still be operated for several minutes as long as neither of the front doors have been opened.
- It is not possible to open the sliding/tilting sunroof when temperatures are too low.

Panoramic glass roof

Operating the panoramic glass roof and roof sunshade

Applies to: vehicles with panoramic glass roof and roof sunshade

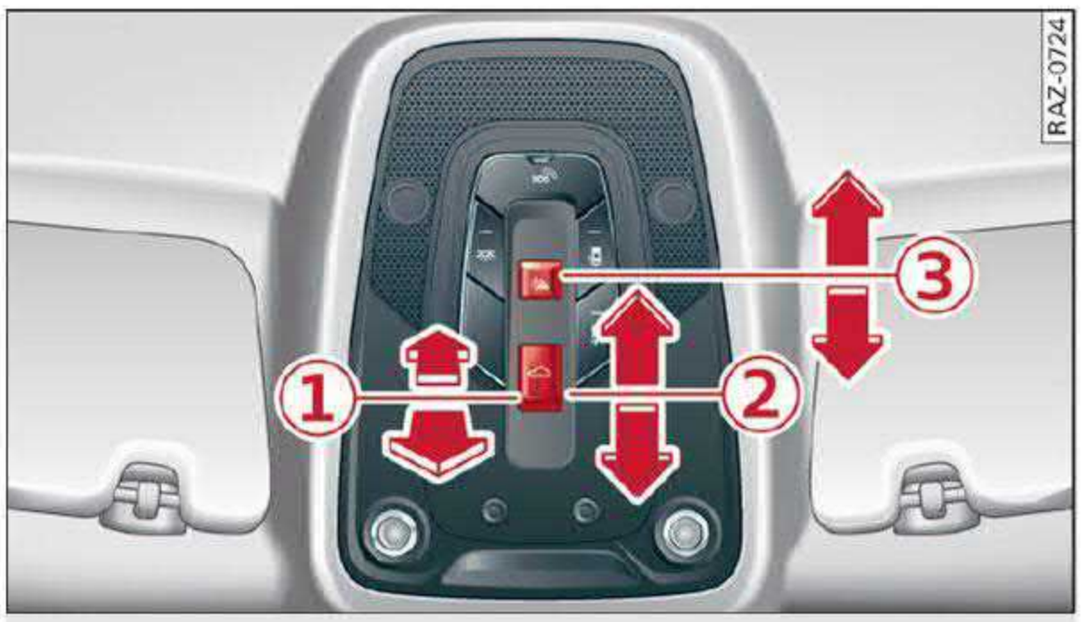


Fig. 40 Headliner: panoramic glass roof and sunshade* buttons

The control buttons are equipped with a two-stage function.

When tilting or opening the roof, the roof sunshade will open partially or halfway if the sunshade is closed.

Operating the roof sunshade

The roof sunshade cannot be closed completely if the roof is open.

- ▸ Opening and closing the sunshade: push the switch in the headliner (3) briefly toward the rear or forward to the second level.
- ▸ Partially opening the sunshade: press the switch to the first level until the sunshade reaches the desired position.

Operating the roof

- ▸ Tilting the roof: press the switch in the headliner briefly upward to the second level (1).
- ▸ Closing the tilted roof: pull the switch downward briefly to the second level.
- ▸ Opening the roof: slide the switch back briefly twice in a row to the second level (2).
- ▸ Closing the roof: push the switch forward briefly to the second level.
- ▸ Opening or closing partially: slide the switch to the first level and hold it there until the roof reaches the desired position.

Quick opening

You can also open the roof and roof sunshade in one movement.

- ▸ Push the switch back briefly to the second level (2) twice in a row.

Roof emergency closing

If an object is detected when closing, the roof will open again automatically. In this case, you can then close it with the power emergency closing function.

- ▸ Within five seconds after the sunroof opens automatically, pull the applicable button until the roof is closed.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury, always pay attention when closing the roof. Always switch the ignition off and take the key with you when leaving the vehicle.

Note

Always close the roof when you leave the vehicle and when there is precipitation to reduce the risk of damage to the interior equipment, particularly the electronic equipment.

Tips

- – After switching off the ignition, the roof and sunshades can still be operated for several minutes as long as neither of the front doors have been opened.
- – It is not possible to open the roof when temperatures are too low.

Valet parking

Applies to: vehicles with valet parking function

The valet parking function can protect the luggage compartment from unauthorized access.

The VALET button for valet parking is in the glove compartment. ▶

You can switch the valet parking function on, for example when someone else is parking your vehicle [1]. The vehicle can be driven, locked, and unlocked using the vehicle key, but access to the luggage compartment is blocked.

- ▸ Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 34*.
- ▸ Press the VALET button in the glove compartment. The LED in the button turns on if the function is switched on.
- ▸ Lock the glove compartment with the mechanical key.
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with lockable pass-through and lockable rear seat backrests: To secure the luggage compartment from the vehicle interior, lock the pass-through and the rear seat backrests using the mechanical key ⇨ *page 84* or ⇨ *page 82*.
- ▸ Give your vehicle key to the service personnel who are parking your vehicle and keep the mechanical key.

The following buttons are deactivated when the valet parking function is switched on:

– button in the driver's door
– 2x button on the vehicle key
– Handle in the luggage compartment lid

If the valet parking function is switched on, a message will appear every time the ignition is switched on.

Tips

Please note that the luggage compartment can still be accessed from the vehicle interior in vehicles with fixed rear seat backrests or ones that cannot be locked, even when the valet parking function is switched on.

Garage door opener

Description

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

With the garage door opener, you can activate systems such as the garage doors, security systems or house lights from inside your vehicle. These functions are operated in the MMI. Multiple receivers can be programmed, which can control the functions of up to eight [2] hand-held transmitters.

WARNING

– When operating or programming the garage door opener, make sure that no people or objects are in the area immediately surrounding the equipment. People can be injured or property can be damaged if struck when closing.
– Do not allow yourself to be distracted from traffic by the viewing and operating the displays.

Tips

– If you sell your vehicle, reset all settings to the factory default settings ⇨ *page 207*.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 275*.

Tips

Before you program your system to the garage door opener, first check the compatibility:

– Ask an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility or check at www.homelink.com. You can also find more information about HomeLink there.
– You can display information about HomeLink (compatibility level/status/country code/HomeLink generation) in the MMI:
– Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Garage door opener** > ⓘ.

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

Requirements: the remote control transmitter must be programmed ⇨ *page 46*, the vehicle ▶

1) This function is not available in all countries.
2) The possible number of hand-held transmitters depends on the equipment.

must be within range of the system, and the ignition must be switched on.

There are multiple options to open or close the system (such as the garage door).

- ▸ If you have only programmed one remote control transmitter, press the ⌂ button on the display. Or
- ▸ If you have programmed multiple remote control transmitters, press the ⌂ button on the display and then press the respective system button. Or
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with programmable steering wheel button: If you have configured the programmable steering wheel button, press the ✳ button ⇨ *page 26*. Or
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with location pairing: If you have programmed **Location pairing**, press the button for this in the display (notification center ⇨ *page 20*). As you approach the system, the button is displayed on the MMI.

If transmission was successful, the message: **Send to: XXX** will appear.

Programming

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

You can program both fixed code and rolling code systems in the MMI using the procedure that is described.

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

Programming the system

Applies to: MMI

Requirement: the hand transmitter must be present and the vehicle must be within range of the system (such as the garage door) that you would like to program.

- ▸ If you are programming the garage door opener for the **first time**, press the ⌂ button on the display. Follow the instructions in the MMI. Or
- ▸ If you would like to program **other** systems, select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Garage door opener**. Select the desired button: ⊕. Follow the instructions in the MMI.
- ▸ If you would like to **reprogram** systems that are already programmed, select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Garage door opener**. Press the ✎≡ button and select ✎ for the system to be reprogrammed. Select: **Program**. Follow the instructions in the MMI.

With some systems, the garage door opener will be immediately available after programming. With other systems, the garage door opener must also be synchronized.

Synchronizing[1)]

Requirement: the hand transmitter must already be programmed and the vehicle must be within range of the system (such as the garage door).

If the system synchronization is performed directly after the programming procedure, follow the instructions on the MMI.

If you would like to sync at a later time:

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Garage door opener**.
- ▸ Press the button for the system that you would like to synchronize.
- ▸ Follow the instructions in the MMI.

Renaming programmed systems

You can rename the programmed systems individually (names may have a maximum of 10 characters).

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Garage door opener**.
- ▸ Press the ✎≡ button.
- ▸ Press the ✎ button for the system that you would like to rename.
- ▸ Select: **Rename**. If necessary, delete the preset name, such as Garage door opener 1.
- ▸ Follow the instructions in the MMI. ▶

1) Only applies to rolling code systems

Location pairing

Applies to: vehicles with GPS pairing

For easier operation, you can program your system's location.

Requirements: the respective hand transmitter must be programmed ⇨ *page 46* and the vehicle must be located in front of the system.

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Garage door opener**.
- ▸ Press the button.
- ▸ Press the button for the system your vehicle is facing.
- ▸ Select: **Location pairing**.
- ▸ Follow the instructions in the MMI.

Only a maximum of three systems can be displayed in the notification center ⇨ *page 20*. If you would like to have all systems displayed, press .

Deleting programmed systems

The programmed systems can be deleted individually or all at once.

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Garage door opener**.
- ▸ Press the button.
- ▸ To delete an **individual** system, press the button for the desired system. If the checkmark ✓ is set, select: **Delete**.
- ▸ To delete **all** systems, select: **All** > **Delete**.

Tips

– Make sure the batteries in the hand transmitter are charged before starting the programming process.
– The programming process may take up to 30 seconds. It may be necessary for the hand transmitter to be pressed again in the meantime.
– The garage door opener may need to be synchronized with the system after programming. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for doing this.

Tips

In some cases, the system may need to be programmed in a different mode (“D mode”).
– Switch the ignition on.
– Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Garage door opener**.
– Press and hold the desired button +.
– Select **Yes, in D mode** and follow the instructions on the MMI.

Lights and Vision

Exterior lighting

Switching the lights on and off



Fig. 41 Instrument panel: light switch with button

① Light switch

Turn the light switch ① to the corresponding position when the ignition is switched on. and the selected position turn on (except position 0).

0 - The daytime running lights* will automatically turn on. In vehicles for some markets, you can switch the automatic daytime running lights on and off in the MMI.

AUTO - The headlights will automatically adapt to the surrounding brightness.

– Parking lights

– Low beam headlights

② All-weather lights FRONT

Requirement: the light switch must be in the AUTO or position.

The headlights automatically adjust so that there will be less glare, for example when the road surface is wet.

Automatic headlight range control

Your vehicle is equipped with automatic headlight range control. It reduces glare for oncoming traffic if the vehicle load changes. The headlight range adjusts automatically.

Audi adaptive light

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive light

Audi adaptive light provides better visibility when driving in the dark. The lights are adapted to the road conditions based on speed, such as when driving on expressways, rural roads, at intersections, and around curves. The adaptive lights only function when the light switch is in the AUTO position and the all-weather lights are switched off.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.
– Automatic headlights are only intended to assist the driver. They do not relieve the driver of responsibility to check the headlights and to turn them on manually based on the current light and visibility conditions. For example, fog cannot be detected by the light sensors. So always switch on the low beams under these weather conditions and when driving in the dark.

Tips

– If the vehicle battery has been discharging for a while, the parking light may switch off automatically. Avoid using the parking lights for several hours.
– Follow the regulations applicable to the country where you are operating the vehicle when stopping the vehicle and when using the lighting systems.
– A warning tone will sound if you open the door when the exterior lights are switched on.
– Only the front headlights turn on when the daytime running lights are switched on*. In vehicles in certain markets, the tail lights will also turn on.
– In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals, and tail lights can fog over due to the temperature difference between the inside and outside. They will clear shortly after switching them on. This does not affect the service life of the lighting.

Turn signal and high beam lever

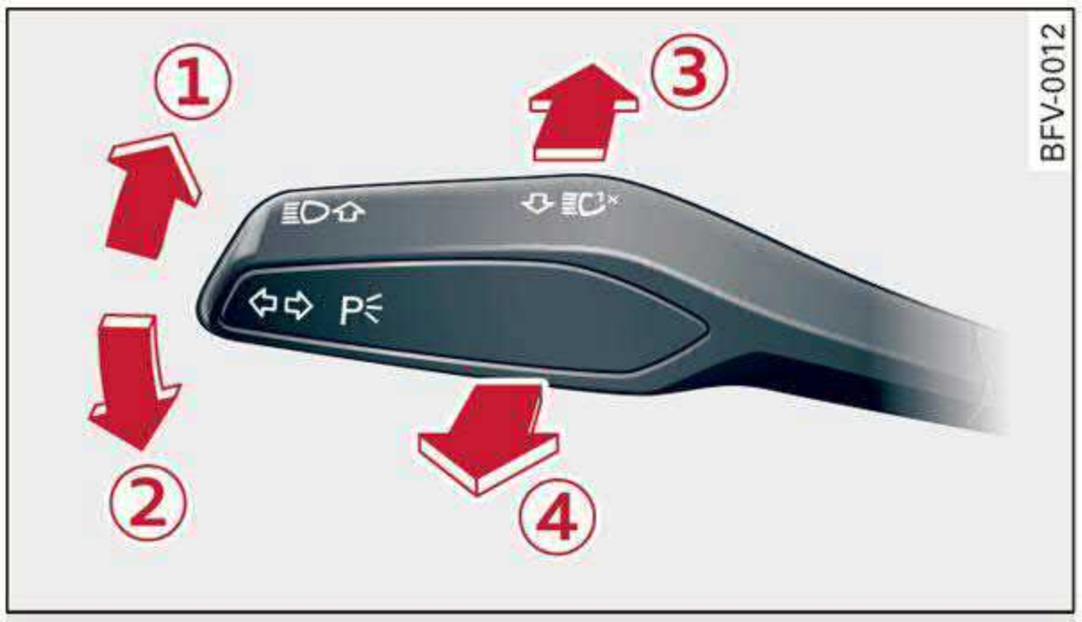


Fig. 42 Lever: switching on the turn signal and high beams

The lever operates the turn signals, the high beams and the headlight flasher.

Turn signals ⇦ ⇨

The turn signal activates when you move the lever into a turn signal position when the ignition is switched on. The respective ⇦ or ⇨ indicator light flashes.

① Right turn signal

② Left turn signal

The turn signal blinks three times if you tap the lever (convenience turn signal).

If an indicator light blinks twice as fast as usual, a turn signal bulb has failed. Carefully drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

High beams and headlight flasher

► Move the lever to the corresponding position:

③ High beams on (vehicles with high beam assistant*) ⇨ *page 49*

④ High beams off or headlight flasher

The indicator light in the instrument cluster will turn on.

WARNING

High beams can cause glare for other drivers, which increases the risk of an accident. For this reason, only use the high beams or the headlight flasher when they will not create glare for other drivers.

High beam assistant

Applies to: vehicles with high beam assistant

The high beam assistant automatically turns the high beams on or off depending on the surrounding conditions.

A camera on the rearview mirror mount can detect light sources from other road users. The high beams switch on or off automatically depending on the position of vehicles driving ahead and oncoming vehicles, the vehicle speed as well as other environmental factors and traffic conditions.

Switching on the high beam assistant

Requirement: the light switch must be in the AUTO position and the high beam assistant must be switched on in the MMI ⇨ *page 50*.

► To activate the high beam assistant, tap the lever forward ③ ⇨ *page 49, fig. 42*. The AUTO indicator light appears in the instrument cluster display and the high beams are switched on or off automatically. The AUTO indicator light turns on if the high beams are switched on.

Switching the high beams on or off manually

If the high beams did not switch on or off automatically as expected, you may switch them on or off manually instead:

► To switch the high beams on manually, tap the lever forward ③ ⇨ *page 49, fig. 42*. The indicator light turns on.
► To switch the high beams off manually, pull the lever back ④ ⇨ *page 49, fig. 42*. The high beam assistant is deactivated.

Operating the headlight flasher

► To operate the headlight flashers, pull the lever back ④ ⇨ *page 49, fig. 42*. If the high beam assistant is activated, but the high beams were not turned off, the high beam assistant remains activated.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.

– High beam assistant is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still responsible for controlling the headlights and may need to switch them on and off manually depending on light and visibility conditions.
– High beams can cause glare for other drivers, which increases the risk of an accident. For this reason, only use the high beams or the headlight flasher when they will not create glare for other drivers.

Tips

Certain settings are automatically stored and assigned to the active user.

Adjusting the exterior lighting

You can adjust the exterior lighting separately. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Light & Visibility** > **Exterior lighting**.

Automatic headlights

You can adjust the following settings in the **Automatic headlights** menu:

Activation time - You can adjust if the headlights switch on **Early**, **Medium**, or **Late** based on the sensitivity of the light sensor.

High beam assistant - You can switch the high beam assistant on and off.

Entry/exit lighting

When it is dark, the **Entry/exit lighting** illuminates the area around the vehicle when unlocking the vehicle and after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door. The entry/exit lighting only works when it is dark and the light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

Daytime running lights

USA models: The daytime running lights can be switched on and off.

Canada models: This function cannot be switched off. They activate automatically each time the ignition is switched on.

Tips

Certain settings are automatically stored and assigned to the active user.

Emergency flashers



Fig. 43 Center console: emergency flasher button

The emergency flashers help to make other drivers aware of your vehicle in dangerous situations.

► Press the ⚠ (1) button to switch the emergency flashers on or off.

When the emergency flashers are turned on, the ⇦ and ⇨ indicator lights will flash at the same time.

You can indicate a lane change or a turn when the emergency flashers are switched on by using the turn signal lever. The emergency flashers stop temporarily.

The emergency flashers also work when the ignition is turned off.

Tips

You should switch the emergency flashers on if:
– you are the last car in a traffic jam so that all other vehicles approaching from behind can see your vehicle
– your vehicle has broken down or you are having an emergency
– your vehicle is being towed or if you are towing another vehicle

Messages

If the indicator light turns on, a bulb has failed. The displayed message indicates the cause ▶

and possible solutions. If one of the messages does not turn off, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Audi adaptive light: malfunction! See owner's manual

Adaptive light* is not working. The headlights still function. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Headlight range control: malfunction! See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the headlight range control system, which may cause glare for other drivers. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

High beam assistant: malfunction! See owner's manual

You can still switch the high beams on or off manually. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

High beam assistant: currently unavailable. Camera view limited due to environmental conditions

This message appears if the camera's visual field is blocked. The system will switch itself off. Try switching the systems on again later.

Automatic headlights: malfunction! See owner's manual

The light/rain sensor is malfunctioning. The low beams remain switched on at all times for safety reasons with the AUTO light function. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Interior lighting

Front interior lighting



Fig. 44 Headliner: front interior lighting

Interior lighting buttons

– Interior lighting on/off

– Door contact switch on/off. The interior lighting is controlled automatically.

Touch-sensitive reading lights

- To turn a reading light on or off, touch the surface (1) briefly.
- To activate the manual dimming function, touch the surface (1) when the light is switched off and keep touching it until the desired brightness is reached.

Rear interior lighting

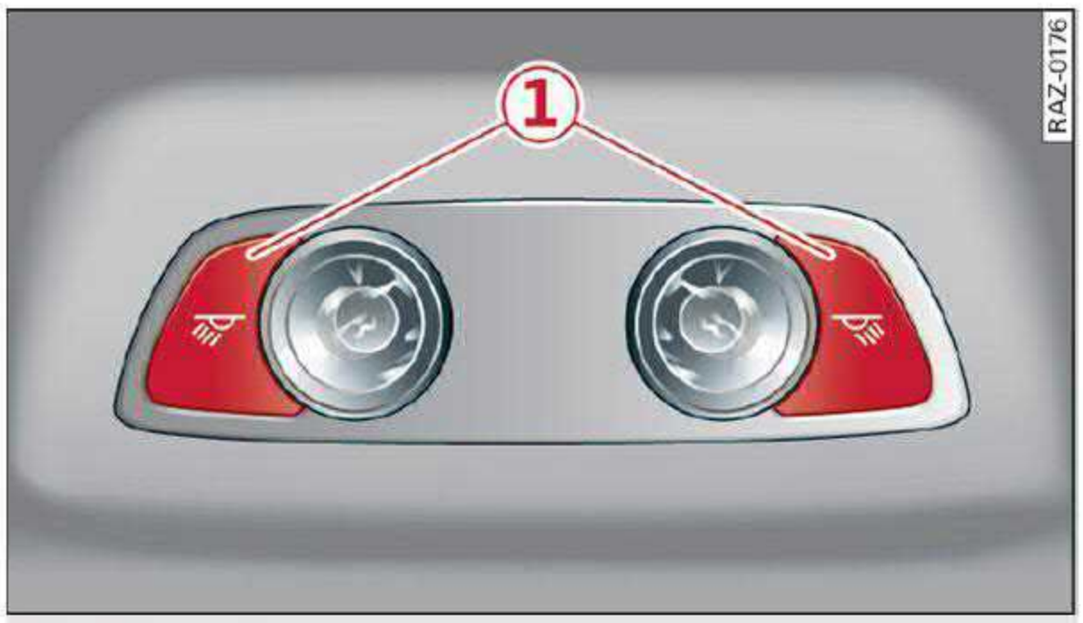


Fig. 45 Headliner: rear reading lights

Reading lights

- To switch the reading lamp on or off, press the button (1).
- To activate the manual dimming function*, touch the surface while the light is switched off (1) and keep touching it until the desired brightness is reached.

Interior lighting

Applies to: vehicles with interior lighting

The ambient lighting turns on when the ignition is switched on. The ambient lighting is deactivated when the light function is OFF.

You can adjust the interior lighting individually. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Light & Visibility** > **Interior lighting**.

You can choose among predefined color profiles, such as **Maritime**.

Additional settings and profiles:

– **Brightness**: you can adjust the brightness for all of the interior lighting.
– **Individual**: you can adjust the brightness and color of the interior lighting separately, divided into contour and surface lighting.
– **Drive select**: the contour and surface lighting color changes depending on the selected Audi drive select* mode.

Tips

– Depending on vehicle equipment, when the **Drive select** function is activated, the color of the contour and surface lighting may briefly change to red or blue when the interior temperature is manually increased or decreased.
– Certain settings are automatically stored and assigned to the active user.

Display brightness

You can adjust the instrument and display illumination separately. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness**.

Possible settings in the MMI:

– **Cockpit dimming**
– **Head-up display**
– **MMI**
– **Virtual cockpit**

Instrument illumination



Fig. 46 Light switch: instrument illumination

You can adjust the background brightness of the instruments and display illumination.

▸ Press the knob (1) to release it.
▸ Turn the knob toward "-" or "+" to reduce or increase the brightness.
▸ Press the knob again to return it to its original position.

Tips

Depending on vehicle equipment, the instrument illumination (needles and gauges) may turn on when the lights are off and the ignition is switched on. The illumination for the gauges reduces automatically and eventually turns off as brightness outside increases. This function reminds the driver to turn the low beams on at the appropriate time.

Vision

Adjusting exterior mirrors



Fig. 47 Driver's door: knob for the exterior mirrors

▸ Turn the knob in the driver's door to the desired position: ▶

0 – Deactivates all adjustment functions.

/ – Selects the left or right exterior mirror. To adjust the mirror glass in a mirror, press the knob in the desired direction.

- Heats the mirror glass depending on the outside temperature.

– Folds the exterior mirrors*. To fold the mirrors out, turn the knob to one of the other positions. In the MMI, you can select if the mirrors fold in automatically when you lock the vehicle ⇨ *page 31*.

Front passenger's exterior mirror tilt function*

Requirement: the knob must be in the position for the front passenger's exterior mirror.

To help you see the curb when backing into a parking space, the surface of the mirror will tilt slightly when reverse gear is selected.

You can adjust the mirror surface by turning the knob in the desired direction.

The mirror moves from the reversing position back to the original position:

– When you switch the ignition off
– Once you drive forward at speeds faster than 9 mph (15 km/h)
– When the knob is no longer in the position for the front passenger exterior mirror

WARNING

Curved mirror surfaces (for example convex) enlarge the field of vision. However, they make objects in the mirror appear smaller and farther away. When using these mirrors to estimate your distance to vehicles behind you when changing lanes, you could estimate incorrectly, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

– Applies to: vehicles with power folding exterior mirrors: If the mirror housing was moved by outside forces (such as an impact when maneuvering), you must use the power folding function to fold the mirror all the way out. The mirrors will make a loud noise when they latch into place. The mirror housing must not be moved back into place by hand because this could impair the function of the mirror mechanism.
– Applies to: vehicles without power folding exterior mirrors: If the mirror housing was moved by outside forces (such as an impact when maneuvering), you must move it back in place by hand.
– If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage to the mirrors. Never fold power folding exterior mirrors* by hand. Only fold them in and out using the power controls.

Tips

– If the power adjusting function malfunctions, the glass in both mirrors can be adjusted by pressing on the edge of it by hand.
– Certain settings are automatically stored and assigned to the active user.

Dimming the mirrors

Manual dimming rearview mirror

▸ Pull the lever on the bottom of the mirror back.

Automatic dimming rearview mirror*

▸ The interior and exterior mirrors* dim automatically when light shines on them, for example from headlights on a vehicle behind you.

WARNING

– If the glass on an automatic dimming mirror* breaks, electrolyte can leak out. This liquid can irritate the skin, eyes and respiratory system. If there is contact with the fluid, flush immediately with plenty of water. Consult a physician if necessary.
– Repeated or long-term exposure to electrolyte fluid can lead to irritation of the airways, especially in people with asthma or other respiratory conditions. Take deep ▶

breaths immediately after leaving the vehicle or, if this is not possible, open all of the doors and windows as wide as possible.
– If electrolyte fluid comes into contact with the eyes, flush them thoroughly with plenty of clean water for at least 15 minutes and then seek medical attention.
– If electrolyte fluid comes into contact with the skin, flush the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes, and then clean with soap and water and seek medical attention. Clean affected clothing and shoes thoroughly before wearing again.
– If the fluid was swallowed and the person is conscious, flush the mouth with water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless this is recommended by medical professionals. Seek medical attention immediately.

Note

If the glass on an automatic dimming mirror* breaks, electrolyte can leak out. This liquid damages plastic surfaces and paint. Clean this liquid as quickly as possible, for example with a wet sponge.

Tips

– If the light reaching the rearview mirror is obstructed, the automatic dimming mirror* will not function correctly.
– The automatic dimming mirrors* do not dim when the interior lighting is turned on or reverse gear is selected.

Sun visors



Fig. 48 Roof headliner: sun visor

Sun visor

The sun visors for the driver and front passenger can be released from their mounts and turned toward the doors (1).

They can also be moved back and forth lengthwise in this position.

Vanity mirror

The mirror lighting* switches on when the cover over the vanity mirror (2) opens.

Sunshade

Applies to: vehicles with sunshade

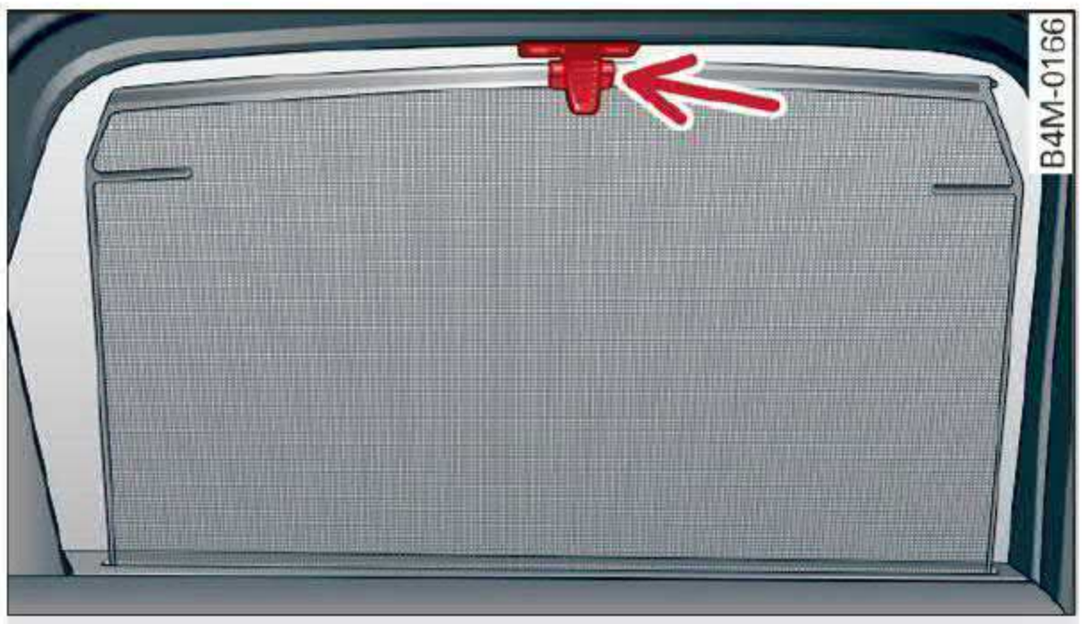


Fig. 49 Rear door: sunshade

Rear door sunshade

▸ Pull the sunshade out and attach it to the retainer on the upper door frame ⇨ *fig. 49*.

Windshield wipers

Switching the windshield wipers on

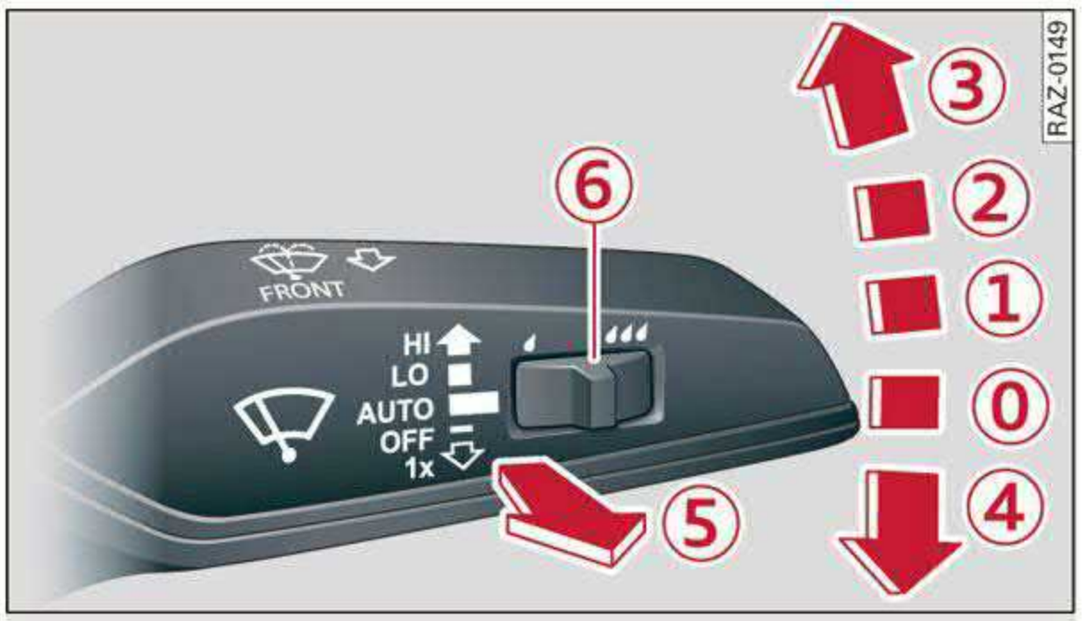


Fig. 50 Lever: windshield wipers



Fig. 51 Lever: rear window wiper (allroad)

► Move the windshield wiper lever to the corresponding position:

⓪ Windshield wipers off

① Rain sensor/intermittent mode. The windshield wipers switch on once the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 2 mph (4 km/h) and it is raining. The higher the sensitivity of the rain sensor that is set (switch ⑥ to the right), the earlier the windshield wipers react to moisture on the windshield. You can deactivate the rain sensor mode, which switches the interval mode on. In intermittent mode, you can adjust the interval time using the switch ⑥.

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Light & Visibility** > **Rain sensor**.

② Slow wiping

③ Fast wiping

④ Single wipe. If you hold the lever in this position longer, the wipers switch from slow wiping to fast wiping.

⑤ Clean the windshield. The wipers wipe one time after several seconds of driving to remove water droplets. You can switch this function off by moving the lever to position ⑤ within ten seconds of the afterwipe. The afterwipe function is reactivated the next time you switch the ignition on.

Clean the headlights*. The headlight washer system* operates only when the low beam headlights are on. If you move the lever into position ⑤, the headlights will be cleaned at fixed intervals.

Applies to: vehicles with rear window wiper: ⑦ Wiping the rear window. The number of wipes depends on the windshield wiper movement.

The rear wiper automatically switches on when the reverse gear is selected and the front windshield wipers are on and running.

Applies to: vehicles with rear window wiper: ⑧ Cleaning the rear window. The number of wipes depends on how long the lever is held in position ⑧.

This may also clean the rearview camera, depending on the vehicle equipment.

WARNING

- The rain sensor is only intended to assist the driver. The driver may still be responsible for manually switching the wipers on based on visibility conditions.
- The windshield must not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Under unfavorable conditions, such as wetness, darkness, and when the sun is low, these coatings can cause increased glare, which increases the risk of an accident. They can also cause wiper blade chatter.
- Properly functioning windshield wiper blades are required for a clear view and safe driving ⇨ *page 56, Cleaning/changing wiper blades*.

Note

- If there is frost, make sure the windshield wiper blades are not frozen to the ▶

windshield. Switching on the windshield wipers when the blades are frozen to the windshield can damage the wiper blades.
– Prior to using a car wash, the windshield wiper system must be switched off (lever in position (0)). This prevents the wipers from switching on unintentionally and causing damage to the windshield wiper system.

Tips

– The windshield wipers switch off when the ignition is switched off. You can activate the windshield wipers after the ignition is switched on again by moving the windshield wiper lever to any position. The single wipe function (lever in position (4)) also functions when the ignition is switched off.
– Worn or dirty windshield wiper blades result in streaking. This can affect the rain sensor function. Check your windshield wiper blades regularly.
– The washer fluid nozzles for the windshield washer system are heated when the ignition is on if the outside temperature is low.
– When stopping temporarily, such as at a traffic light, the speed of the windshield wipers automatically reduces by one level.
– Certain settings are automatically stored and assigned to the active user.

Cleaning/changing wiper blades

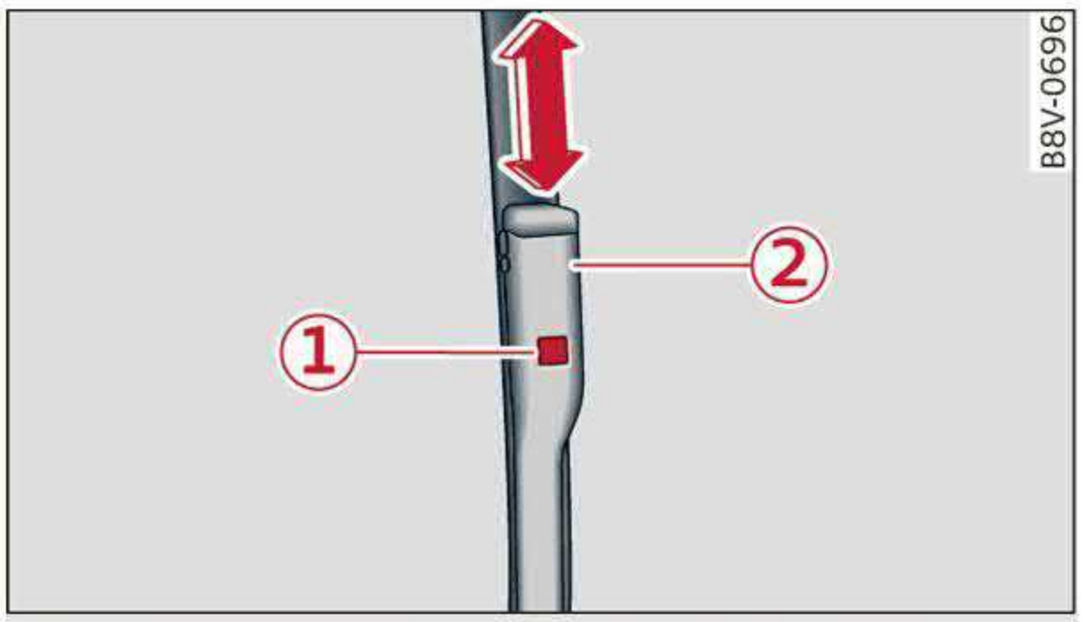


Fig. 52 Windshield wipers: changing the wiper blades

Windshield wiper service position/blade replacement position

▸ Switch off the ignition and hold the windshield wiper lever in position (4) ⇨ *page 55, fig. 50* until the windshield wiper moves into the service position.
▸ To bring the windshield wipers back to the normal position, switch the ignition on and hold the windshield wiper lever in position (4) until the windshield wipers go back to the normal position, or drive faster than 8 mph (12 km/h).

You can also turn the service position on or off in the MMI:

▸ Switch the windshield wipers off (position (0) ⇨ *page 55, fig. 50*).
▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Service position**.

Cleaning the wiper blades

Requirement: the windshield wipers must be in the service position.

▸ Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the windshield.
▸ For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *table on page 248*.

Replacing the wiper blades

Requirement: the windshield wipers must be in the service position.

▸ Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the windshield.
▸ Press the locking knob (1) on the wiper blade. Hold the wiper blade firmly.
▸ Remove the wiper blade from the windshield wiper arm mount (2).
▸ Insert the new wiper blade into the mount on the wiper arm until it clicks into place.
▸ Place the wiper arm back on the windshield.
▸ Exit the service position.

WARNING

– For safety reasons, the windshield wiper blades should be replaced once or twice each year.
– Dirty windshield wiper blades can impair vision, which increases the risk of an accident. ▶

Note

– The windshield wipers must only be folded up when in the service position! Otherwise, you risk damaging the paint on the hood or the windshield wiper motor.
– You should not move your vehicle or press the windshield wiper lever when the wiper arms are folded up from the windshield. The windshield wipers would move back into their original position and could damage the hood and windshield.

Tips

– You can also use the service position, for example, if you want to protect the windshield from icing by using a cover.
– You cannot activate the service position when the hood is open.

Cleaning/changing the rear wiper blade

Applies to: vehicles with rear window wiper



Fig. 53 Rear window wiper: installing the wiper blade

Cleaning the wiper blades

- ▸ Fold the wiper arm away from the rear window.
- ▸ For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *table on page 248*.

Removing the wiper blade

- ▸ Fold the wiper arm away from the rear window.
- ▸ Remove the wiper blade from its holder.

Installing the wiper blade

- ▸ Press the wiper blade mount into the retainer.
- ▸ Fold the window wiper arm back onto the rear window.

WARNING

For safety reasons, the windshield wiper blades should be replaced once or twice each year.

Messages

If the indicator light turns on, then there is a windshield wiper malfunction. The displayed message indicates the cause and possible solutions. If one of the messages does not turn off, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Automatic wipers: malfunction! See owner's manual

The light/rain sensor is malfunctioning. You can still control all functions that are independent of the rain sensor through the windshield wiper lever. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Digital compass

Switching the compass on and off

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

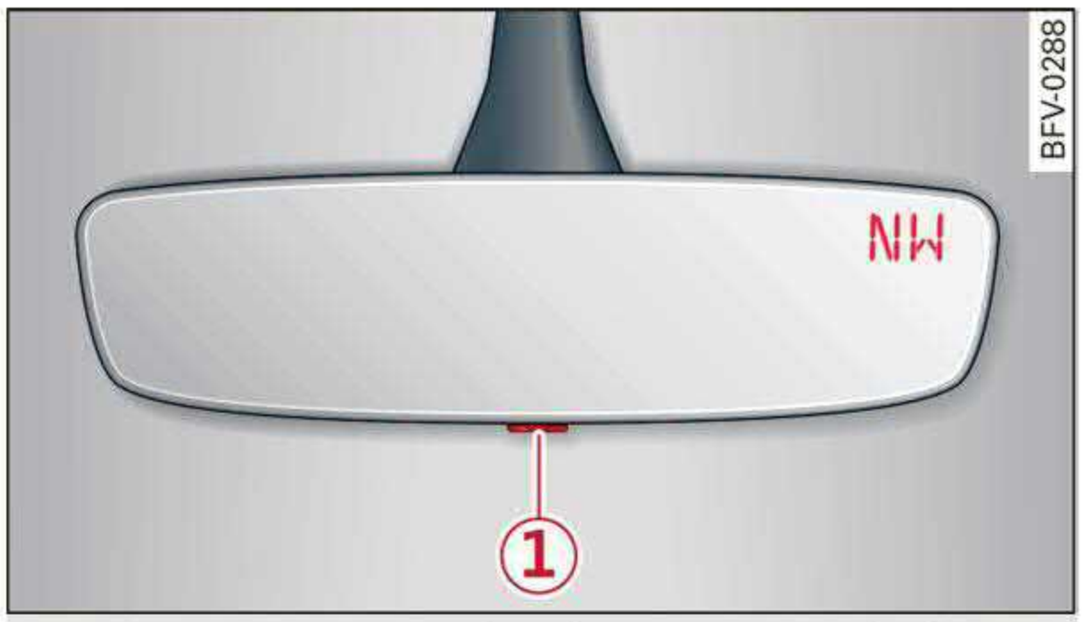


Fig. 54 Rearview mirror: digital compass is switched on

- ▸ To turn the compass on or off, press the button ① until the compass display in the mirror turns on or off.

The digital compass only works when the ignition is turned on. The directions are indicated with abbreviations: **N** (north), **NE** (northeast), **E** (east), **SE** (southeast), **S** (south), **SW** (southwest), **W** (west), **NW** (northwest). ▶

Tips

To prevent inaccurate compass readings, do not bring any remote controls, electrical devices or metallic objects near the mirror.

Adjusting the magnetic zone

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

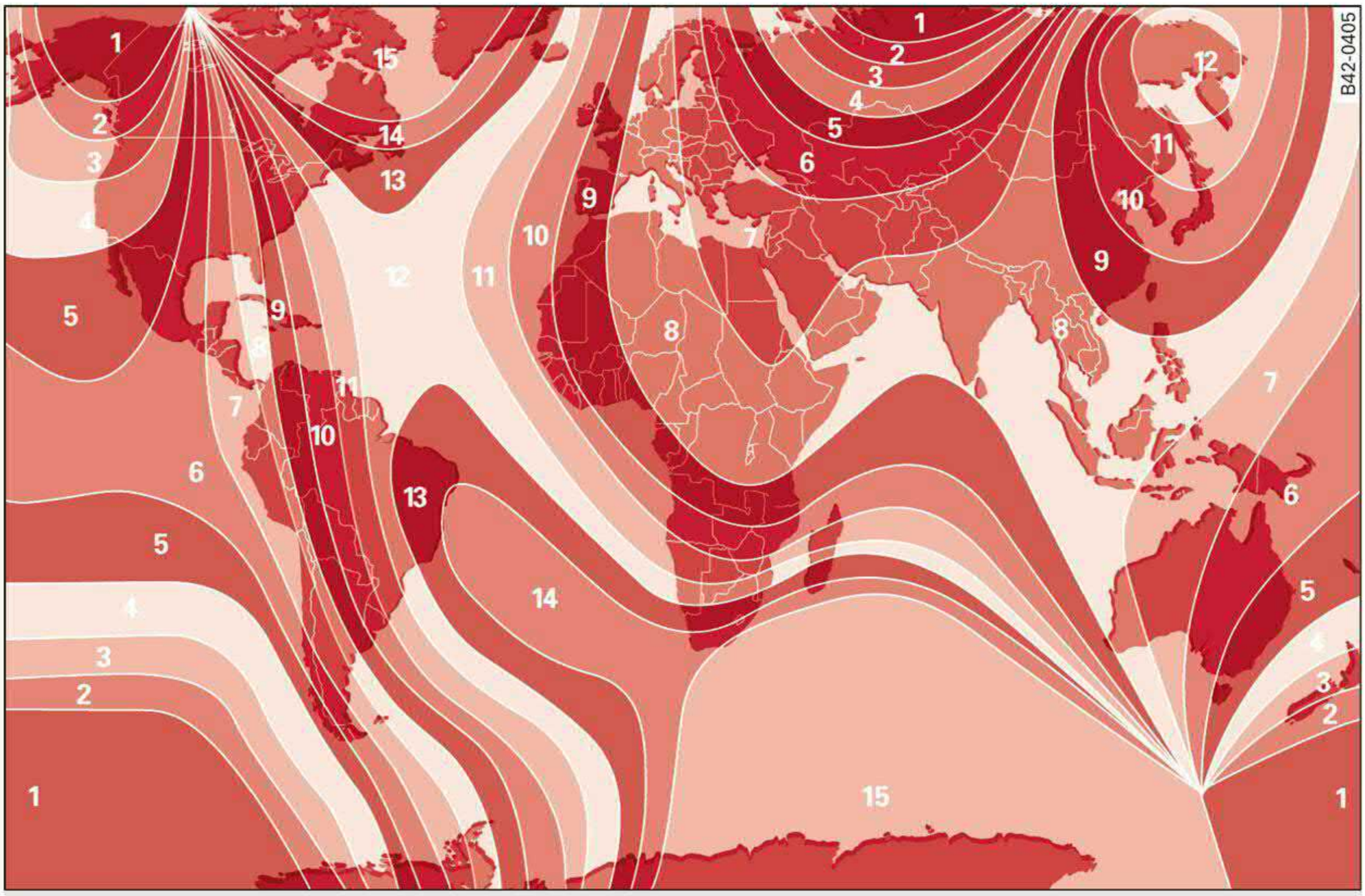


Fig. 55 Magnetic zone map

The magnetic zone must be adjusted correctly for the compass to read accurately.

- ▸ Press and hold the button (1) ⇨ *page 57, fig. 54* until the number of the magnetic zone appears in the interior rearview mirror.
- ▸ Press the button (1) repeatedly to select the correct magnetic zone. The selection mode turns off after a few seconds.

Calibrating the compass

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

If the display is incorrect or inaccurate, the compass must be recalibrated.

- ▸ Press and hold the button (1) until a **C** ⇨ *page 57, fig. 54* appears in the rearview mirror.
- ▸ Drive in a circle at about 6 mph (10 km/h) until a direction is displayed in the interior rearview mirror.

WARNING

To reduce the risk to yourself and other drivers, calibrate the compass in an area where there is no traffic.

Sitting correctly and safely

Correct passenger seating position

General information

As the driver, you are responsible for making sure every passenger is sitting correctly in their seat and maintaining this seating position while driving. Make sure that:

- Every passenger in the vehicle has adjusted his or her seat correctly ⇨ *page 59*
- The steering wheel is adjusted correctly ⇨ *page 62*
- The mirrors are adjusted so that there is a sufficient view of the area around the vehicle ⇨ *page 52*
- Every passenger in the vehicle has his or her head restraint adjusted correctly ⇨ *page 63*
- Every passenger in the vehicle has his or her safety belt fastened correctly ⇨ *page 64*
- The activation status of the front passenger's airbag is suitable for the passenger in the front passenger's seat ⇨ *page 70*
- Children are secured in suitable child safety seats that are secured to appropriate vehicle seats ⇨ *page 72*. Read and observe the important safety information pertaining to the use of child safety seats on the front passenger's seat ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 72*.

Examples of incorrect seating positions

Safety belts can only provide its optimal protection when they are routed correctly. Incorrect seating positions significantly reduce the protective functions of the safety belts and increase the risk of injury due to incorrect belt routing.

The following list includes examples of seating positions that could be dangerous for all vehicle occupants. This is not a complete list. The purpose is to provide examples to increase your awareness of the topic. The following points apply when the vehicle is in motion:

- Never stand inside the vehicle.
- Never stand on the seats.
- Never kneel on the seats.
- Never tilt your backrest too far back.
- Never lean against the instrument panel.
- Never lie down on the rear bench seat.
- Never sit only on the front section of the seat.
- Never sit sideways on the seat.
- Never lean against the window.
- Never place your feet out of the window.
- Never place your feet on the instrument panel.
- Never place your feet on the seat cushion.
- Never ride in the footwell.
- Never sit on the armrests.
- Never drive or ride in a seat without fastening your safety belt.
- Never ride in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

Incorrect seating positions, failure to wear a safety belt, or being too close to an airbag increase the risk of serious or fatal injury to vehicle occupants, especially if the airbags deploy and come into contact with occupants who are not seated correctly. Note the important information and warnings in the chapters for the topics given above.

Tips

If you or other vehicle passengers have physical limitations that prevent sitting in a correct position, modifications to the vehicle may be necessary. For more information, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility, or call Audi customer support at 1-800-822-2834.

Front seats

General information

Make sure that:

- You can press the pedals down completely while your legs are slightly bent
- The distance between your upper body and the steering wheel or instrument panel is at least 10 inches (25 cm)
- The distance between your knees and the instrument panel is at least 4 inches (10 cm) ▶

– Your thighs are lightly supported by the front surface of the seat
– The backrest is in an upright position and your back is resting against it
– You have a sufficient view of the area around the vehicle
– You have a clear view of the instrument cluster, indicator lights, and the head-up display*

WARNING

– If you are too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel, the airbag system cannot provide the optimal protection, which increases the risk of injury and death.
– To reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking maneuvers or accidents, never drive with the backrest reclined very far. The airbag system and seat belts can only provide optimal protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the driver is wearing the seat belt correctly. If the backrest is angled back too far, the safety belt can shift to soft areas of the body, such as the stomach, which increases the risk of injury.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, only adjust the seats when the vehicle is stationary.
– Be careful when adjusting the seat. Lack of control or attention when adjusting can result in injuries due to pinching to vehicle occupants both in the front seats and rear seats.
– Never place objects in the driver's footwell. Objects could shift and enter the area around the pedals, which could prevent you from using them. You would then be unable to use the pedals if sudden driving or braking maneuvers were needed, which increases the risk of an accident.
– Make sure that the floor mats are always securely attached.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, never place additional floor mats or other floor covers over the installed floor mats, because this reduces the pedal's range of motion and can impair pedal operation.
– To reduce the risk of injury, never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window, or on the seat surfaces. This also applies to passengers in the rear seats.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with manually adjustable head restraints

To reduce the risk of damage, be very careful when adjusting the seat to make sure the head restraints do not hit the headliner or the panorama glass roof*.

Power seat adjustment

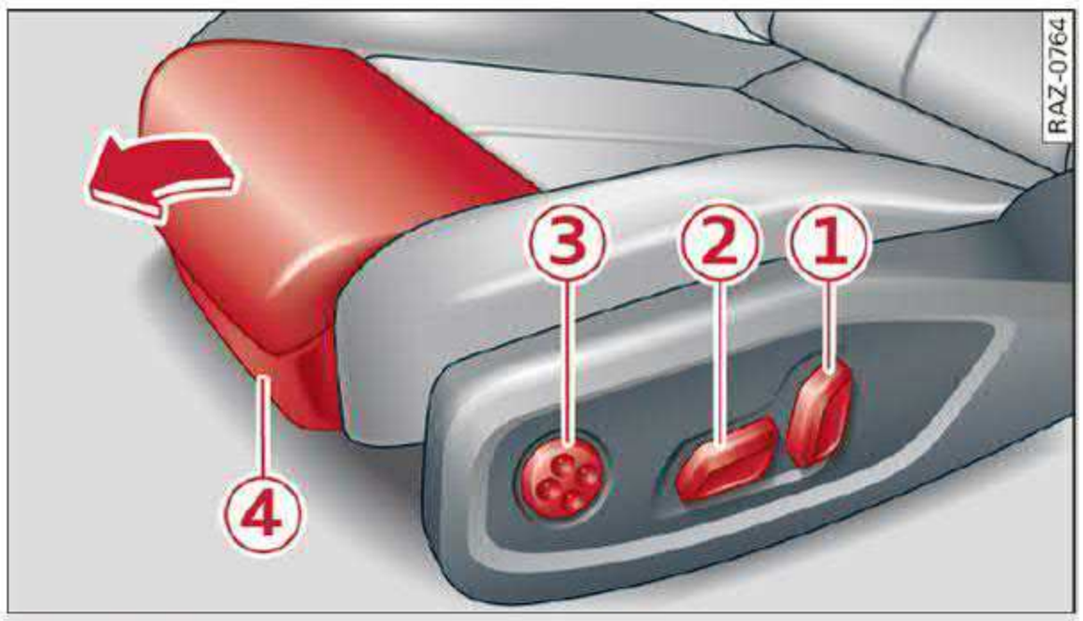


Fig. 56 Front seat: adjusting the seat (version A)

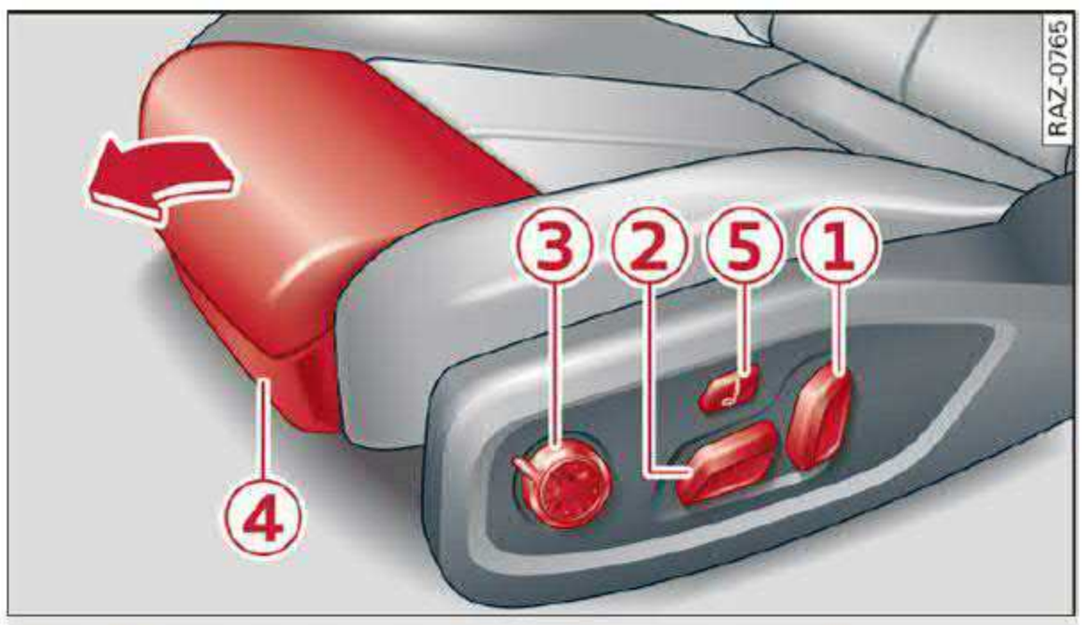


Fig. 57 Front seat: adjusting the seat (version B)

The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

Adjusting the seat position

▸ To adjust the seat forward or backward, push the button (2) forward or backward.
▸ To adjust the seat upward or downward, push the rear section of the button (2) upward or downward.
▸ To adjust the seat surface, press the front part of the button (2) upward or downward.

Adjusting the backrests

▸ To adjust the backrest forward or backward, press the button (1) forward or backward. ▶

Adjusting the upper thigh support

- To increase or decrease the upper thigh support, lift the handle (4) and move the upper thigh support.

Massage function

- To switch the massage function on or off, press the button (5) ⇨ *fig. 57*.

Adjusting the lumbar support

- To adjust the lumbar support, press the button (3) at the applicable location.

Adjusting the side supports

You can adjust the side bolsters using the multifunction button (3) ⇨ *fig. 57*.

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of an accident, only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary.
- The power front seats can also be adjusted when the ignition is switched off. To reduce the risk of injury, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle for this reason.
- Exercise caution when adjusting the seat height. Unsupervised or careless seat adjustment could cause parts of the body to get pinched, which increases the risk of injury.
- The front seat backrests must not be reclined too far back when driving, because this impairs the effectiveness of the safety belts and airbag system, which increases the risk of injury.

Adjusting the front seats in the MMI

Applies to: vehicles with seat settings in the MMI

You can adjust additional settings in the MMI.

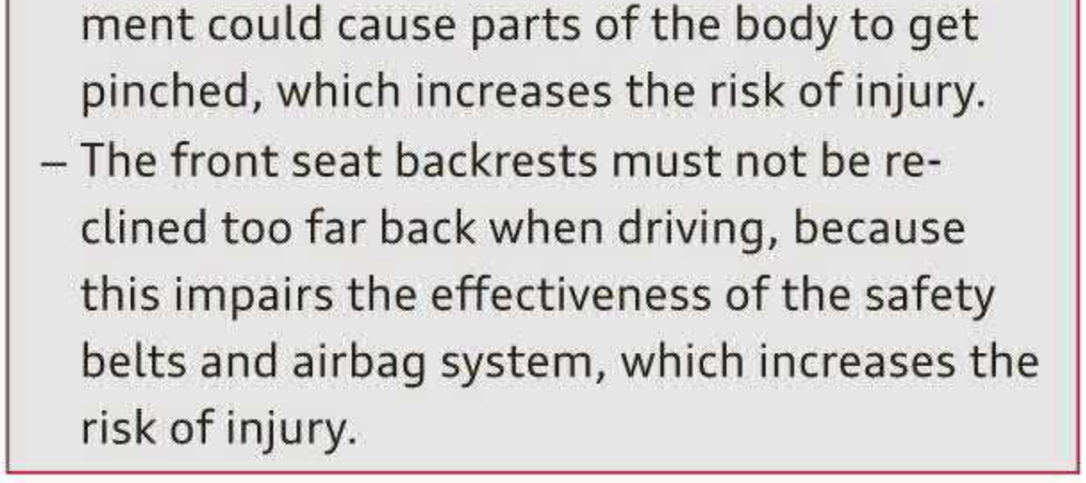


Fig. 58 Center display: seat settings

The settings and the number of menus and buttons depend on the vehicle equipment.

Operating

Applies to: MMI

- Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Seats**.
- To access the various menus (1), swipe to the left or right.
- To display the various seats, press 〉 or 〈 (2).

The red coloring of the symbol (3) indicates which seat is selected.

Massage

See ⇨ *page 61*

Additional seat settings

See ⇨ *page 62*

Front seat massage function

Applies to: vehicles with massage function

Selecting the massage function

Applies to: MMI

- To open the **Massage** menu, press the button (5) ⇨ *page 60, fig. 57*.

Switching the massage function on or off

Applies to: MMI

- To switch the massage function on or off, press the button (5) ⇨ *page 60, fig. 57*.
- Press **Start/Stop** on the MMI.

Setting the massage type and intensity

Applies to: MMI

- To adjust the massage type, press the desired button on the MMI, such as **Pulse**.
- To adjust the intensity of the massage, press **Intensity** on the MMI repeatedly until the desired level is reached.

Tips

The massage function switches off automatically after approximately 10 minutes.

Additional settings in the MMI

You can adjust additional settings and switch functions on or off in the MMI.

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Seats**.
- ▸ Swipe to the left if necessary.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following options may be available.

Reset seat position

You can adjust the position of the front passenger's seat to match the driver's seat.

Driver's seat entry assistance

Entry assistance makes it easier to enter or exit the vehicle.

Front passenger's seat adjustment

You can adjust the front passenger's side with the driver's seat buttons.

Front center armrest

Applies to: vehicles with a front center armrest

The front center armrest is located between the front seats.

Adjusting the center armrest

The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

- ▸ To adjust the armrest forward or backward, move the armrest in the desired direction.
- ▸ To adjust the angle, raise the armrest in stages.
- ▸ To move the armrest back into the original position, raise it slightly out of the top level and fold it downward.

WARNING

In certain positions, the front center armrest can interfere with the driver's arm movement, which increases the risk of injury.

Steering wheel

General information

Make sure that:

- – The distance between your upper body and the steering wheel is at least 10 in (25 cm)
- – Your arms are bent slightly at the elbows
- – You have a sufficient view of the area around the vehicle and you have a clear view of the instrument cluster
- – You are always holding the steering wheel with both hands on the outer edge at the sides (9:00 and 3:00 position) when driving

WARNING

- – If you are too close to the steering wheel, the driver's airbag cannot provide optimal protection, which increases the risk of injury or fatality.
- – Never hold the steering wheel in the 12:00 position or in any other way, such as holding the center of the steering wheel. Otherwise, your arms, hands, and head could be injured in the event that the driver's airbag deploys.

Adjusting the steering wheel position manually

Applies to: vehicles with manual steering wheel adjustment

The steering wheel position is adjustable up and down and forward and back.



Fig. 59 Steering column: lever for adjusting the steering wheel position

- ▸ Press the lever in the direction of the arrow.
- ▸ Bring the steering wheel into the desired position.
- ▸ Push the lever all the way up until it engages.

WARNING

- – To reduce the risk of an accident, only adjust the steering wheel before you start driving. ▶

– Push the lever upward firmly so that the steering wheel position does not change unintentionally while driving, which would increase the risk of an accident.

Head restraints

General information

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

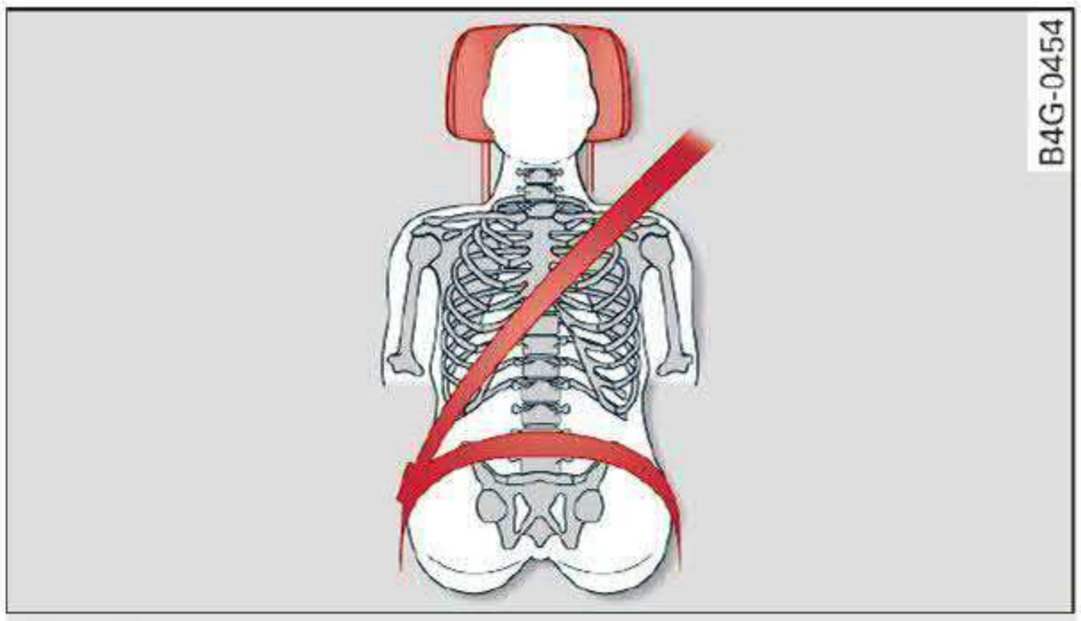


Fig. 60 Correctly adjusted head restraints

Make sure that:

– The upper edge of the head restraint is as even as possible with the top of your head
– The head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head
– The head restraints in any occupied rear seats are all the way up

WARNING

– There is one head restraint for each seating position. All vehicle occupants must adjust the head restraint correctly before every trip. Having head restraints that are not adjusted correctly or not installed in the vehicle increases the risk of a neck injury during sudden or unexpected driving or braking maneuvers or in a collision.
– Only remove the rear seat head restraints if it is necessary to install a child safety seat ⇨ *page 72*. Stow the removed head restraints securely, for example in the luggage compartment. Reinstall the head restraints immediately once the child safety seat has been removed. Driving without head restraints increases the risk of serious neck injuries.

Front head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

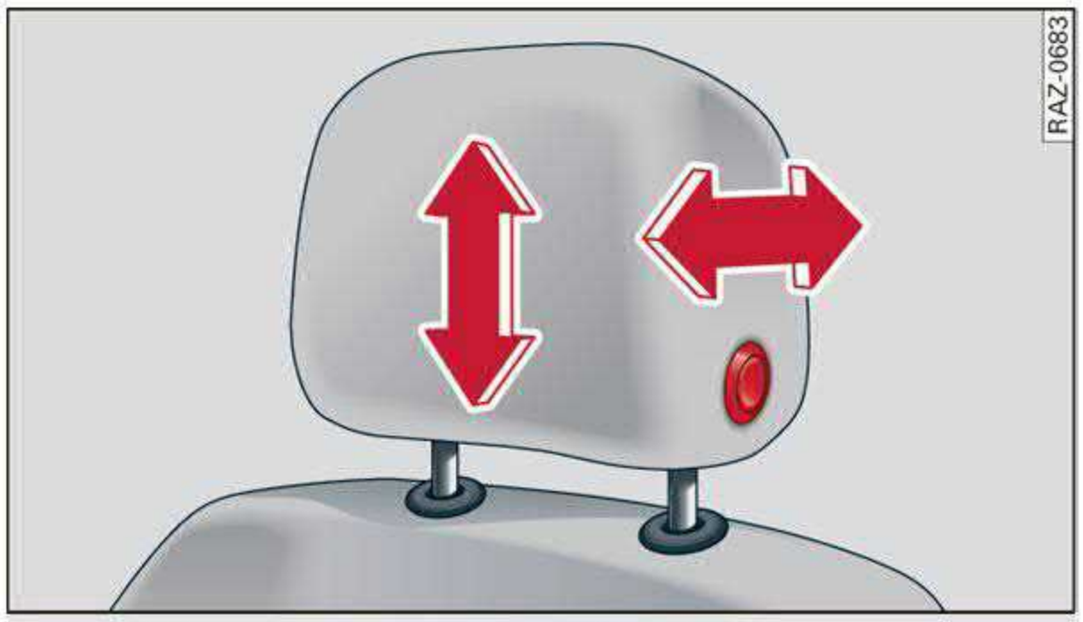


Fig. 61 Front seat: adjusting the head restraint

Adjusting the head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with manually adjustable head restraints

- ▸ To adjust the head restraint upward or forward, slide it until it locks into place.
- ▸ To adjust the head restraint downward or backward, press the button on the side and slide the head restraint. Release the button and slide the head restraint farther until it locks into place.

Rear head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

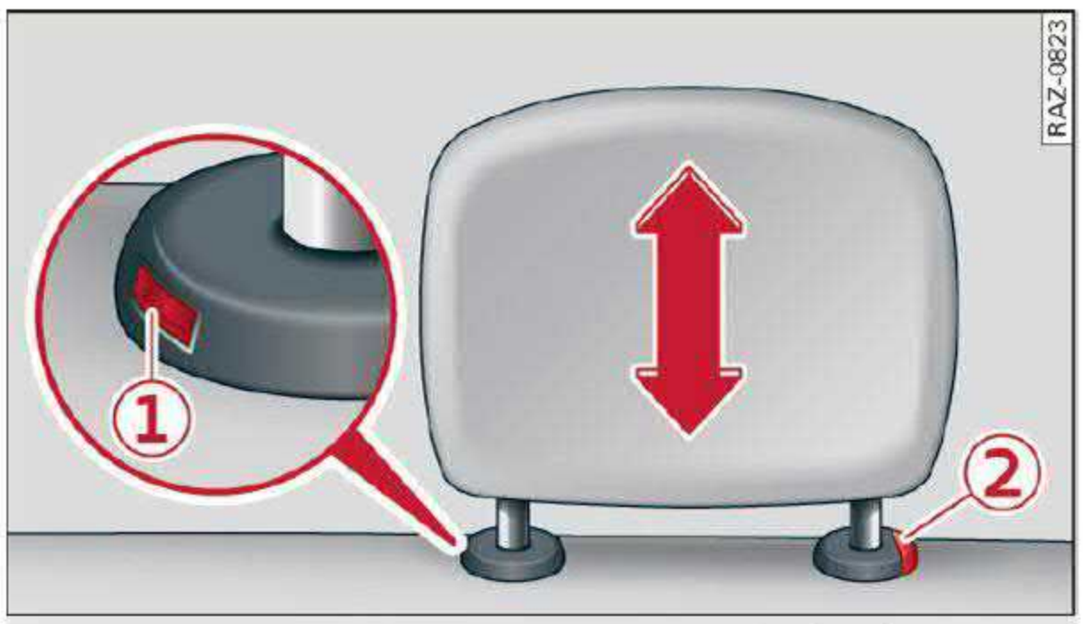


Fig. 62 Rear seat: adjusting or removing the head restraint

Adjusting the head restraints

- ▸ To adjust the head restraint upward, slide it until it locks into place.
- ▸ To adjust the head restraint downward, press the button (2) and slide the head restraint. Release the button and slide the head restraint farther until it locks into place.

Removing the headrests

Applies to: vehicles with removable head restraints

- ▸ Fold the backrest forward slightly ⇨ *page 82*.
- ▸ Move the head restraint upward all the way. ▶

- ▸ Insert a suitable object, such as the the extended vehicle key or mechanical key, into the release point ① on the inside or outside of the base.
- ▸ Press the button ② and pull the head restraint out of the backrest.

Installing the headrests

- ▸ Fold the backrest forward slightly ⇨ *page 82*.
- ▸ Slide the posts on the head restraint down into the guides until the posts click into place.
- ▸ Press the button ② and slide the head restraint all the way down. It should not be possible to remove the head restraint from the backrest without pressing the button.

Safety belts

General information

Each seat is equipped with a three-point safety belt. Safety belts that are worn correctly are the most effective way to reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries in a collision. Therefore, wear your safety belt correctly and make sure that all vehicle passengers are also wearing their safety belts correctly when the vehicle is moving.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an airbag system, every vehicle passenger must still always wear the appropriate safety belt. In addition to their normal protective function, safety belts also hold vehicle occupants in the correct seating position in the event of a collision so that the airbags can deploy correctly and provide additional protection. Safety belts provide protection during collisions when the airbags do not deploy or if they have already deployed.

WARNING

The risk of serious or fatal injury increases if the safety belt is not fastened, if it is worn incorrectly, or if it is damaged.

– All vehicle occupants, including the driver, must fasten their safety belts correctly before every trip and must always keep their safety belts fastened during the trip, regardless of whether the seat is equipped with an airbag or not. This also applies to children that are seated in a child safety seat that is appropriate for their weight and age and that is secured with a safety belt.
– In the event of a collision, vehicle occupants that are not wearing safety belts could be propelled through the vehicle interior and collide with vehicle components, such as the steering wheel, instrument panel, windshield, or doors. In some situations, vehicle occupants could also be ejected from the vehicle. Vehicle occupants in the rear seats who do not wear safety belts not only endanger themselves, but also other people in the vehicle.
– Only one person may be fastened with a safety belt at a time. Never secure more than one person, including children, with a single safety belt.
– Never allow children or infants to ride on another person's lap and be belted into the safety belt with them.
– Insert the belt buckle only in the belt latch belonging to the corresponding seat, so that the protective function is not impaired.
– To ensure the maximum protective function of the safety belts, all vehicle passengers must sit in the correct seating position ⇨ *page 59*.
– Check the condition of your vehicle's safety belts regularly ⇨ *page 248*. If you find damage to the belt webbing, the belt connections, the retractor, or the buckle, have the damaged safety belt replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– The safety belts must not be removed or modified in any way. Do not attempt to repair the safety belts yourself.
– Safety belts that are strained during an accident, and thus stretched, must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Correct safety belt positioning

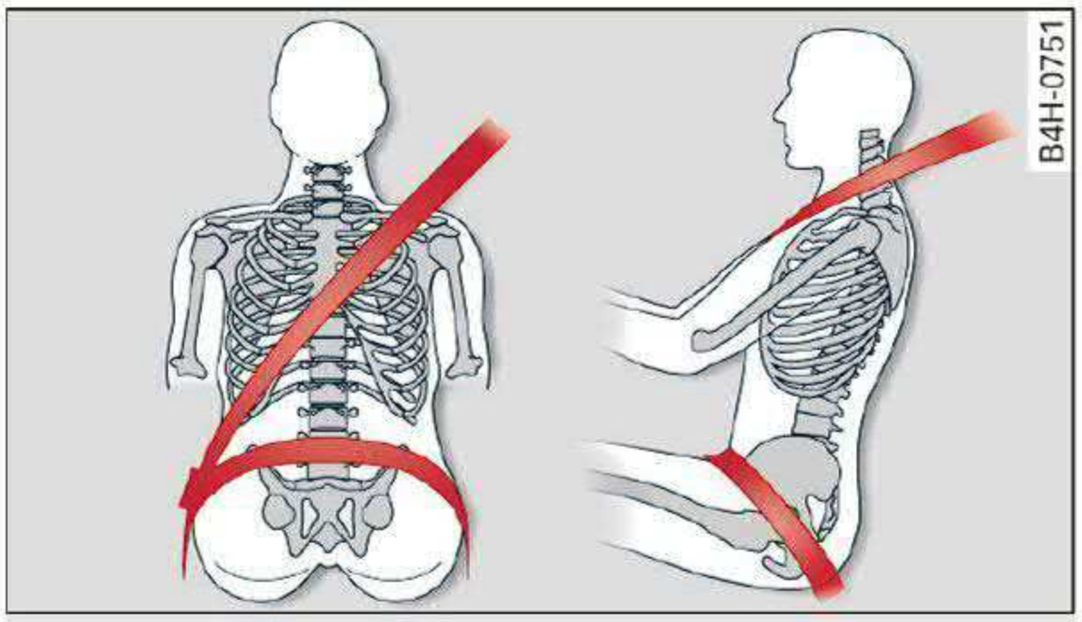


Fig. 63 Lap/shoulder belt positioning



Fig. 64 Safety belt positioning for pregnant women

Fastened safety belts only offer optimal protection during an accident and reduce the risk of serious injury or death when they are positioned correctly. Furthermore, the correct safety belt position holds the vehicle occupant in place so that a deployed airbag can provide maximum protection. Therefore, always fasten the safety belt and make sure it is positioned correctly ⇨ *fig. 63*.

To ensure the safety belt is positioned correctly, make sure of the following points:

– The lap portion of the safety belt must be located across the lap.
– The shoulder portion of the safety belt must rest over the center of the shoulder.
– The safety belt must always rest flat and securely on the body.

For pregnant women, the safety belt must rest evenly across the chest and as low and flat as possible on the lap, so that no pressure is applied to the lower abdomen. This should be done throughout the entire pregnancy ⇨ *fig. 64*.

WARNING

Incorrect safety belt positioning can cause serious injury in the event of an accident or during sudden braking or driving maneuvers.

– Never drive with the backrest reclined extremely far. The more the backrest is tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to the safety belt being routed incorrectly.
– The safety belt itself or a loose safety belt can cause serious injuries if it shifts onto soft areas of the body, such as the stomach.
– The shoulder portion of the safety belt must lie over the center of the shoulder and chest, and never under the arm, behind the back, or across the neck or face.
– The lap portion of the safety belt must lie across the lap and never over the stomach.
– The safety belt must lie flat and securely on the upper part of the body and the lap.
– The belt webbing must not be pinched or twisted, or rub against sharp edges.
– If the safety belt height is set incorrectly and/or the safety belt is routed incorrectly, then the safety belt's protective function will be impaired in the event of an accident. Make sure the safety belt is at the right height and is routed correctly for the passenger using it.
– A safety belt that is too loose may lead to injuries during an accident, because your body will move farther forward due to kinetic energy and will be stopped abruptly by the belt.
– Heavily bulky, loose clothing (for example, a coat over a sports jacket) may prevent the seat and safety belts from functioning correctly.
– Do not position the safety belt over hard or breakable objects (such as glasses, pens, etc.).
– The lap belt portion of the safety belt must sit as low as possible on the lap of pregnant women and lie flat under the belly.

Note

Make sure that there are no hook-and-loop fasteners or sharp objects such as zippers or ▶

rivets on clothing in the area where the safety belt is worn. Otherwise, the safety belt could be damaged.

Fastening and unfastening safety belts

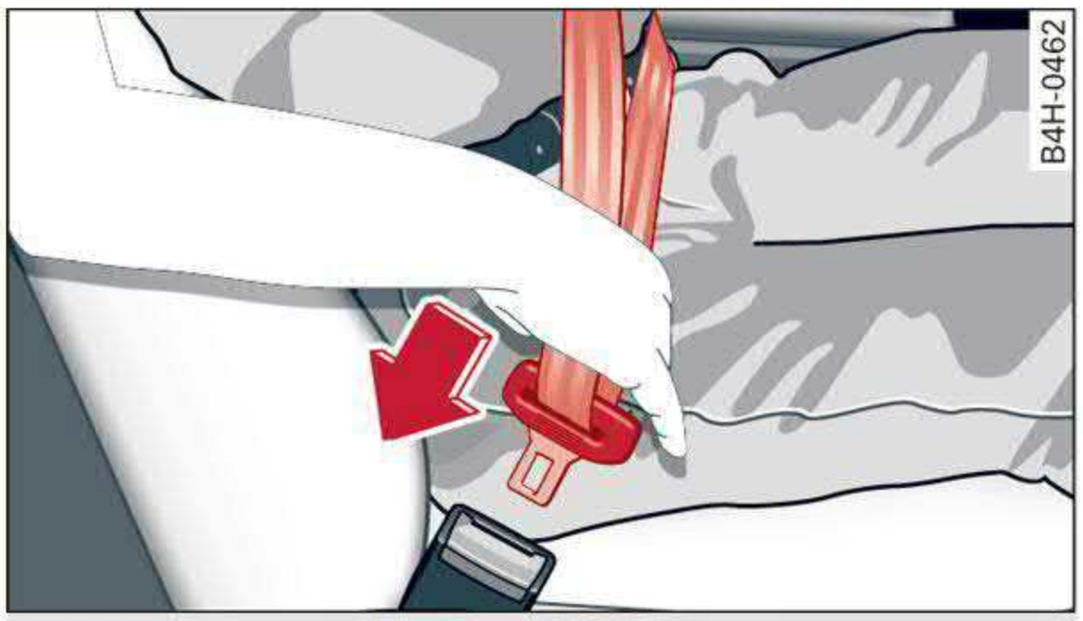


Fig. 65 Belt buckle and belt latch

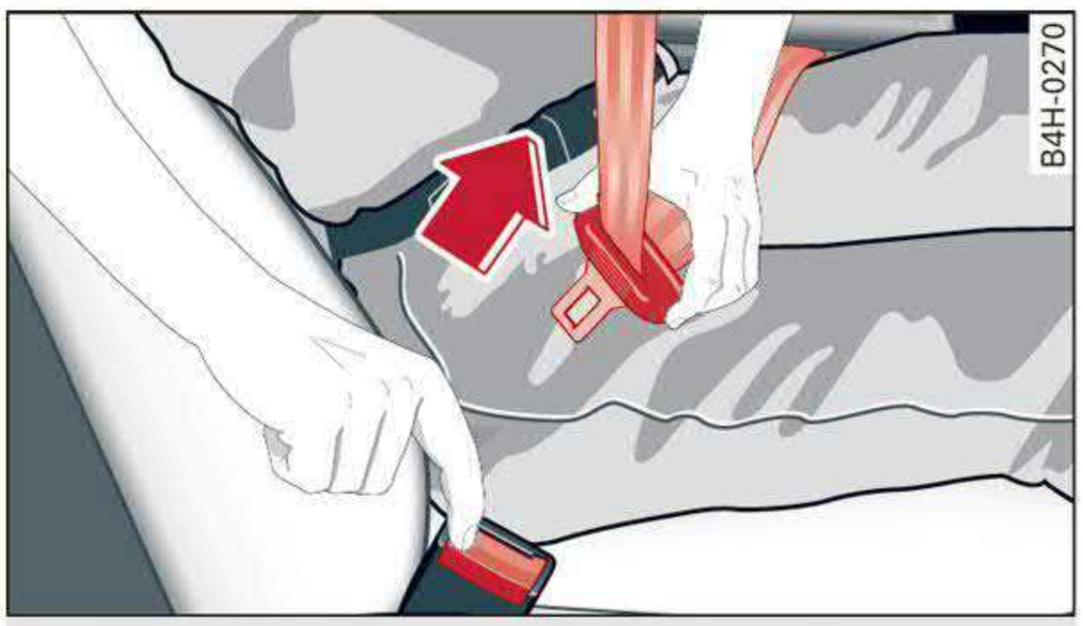


Fig. 66 Releasing the belt buckle from the belt latch

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 64*.

Fastening the safety belt

- ▸ Pull the safety belt by the belt buckle evenly across your chest and lap.
- ▸ Insert the belt buckle in the belt latch belonging to the seat until it audibly engages ⇨ *fig. 65*.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that the belt is securely locked in the latch.

Unfastening the safety belt

- ▸ Press the red button on the belt latch ⇨ *fig. 66*. The belt buckle will pop out.
- ▸ Guide the belt back by hand so that the safety belt can roll up more easily.

Safety belt monitoring system

– If the indicator light turns on or flashes, a safety belt is not fastened or it has been unfastened while the vehicle is in motion. Above certain speeds, additional warning tones will sound.

Belt retractor lock

The safety belts on the rear seats and on the front passenger seat are equipped with a belt retractor lock.

– If you secure a child safety seat with a safety belt, the belt retractor lock on the safety belt may need to be activated. Follow the instructions from the child safety seat manufacturer.
– When a vehicle passenger has fastened a safety belt, the belt retractor lock should not be activated. If the belt retractor lock has been activated unexpectedly, deactivate it.

Deactivating or activating the belt retractor lock ⇨ *page 75*.

Adjusting the height of the safety belt

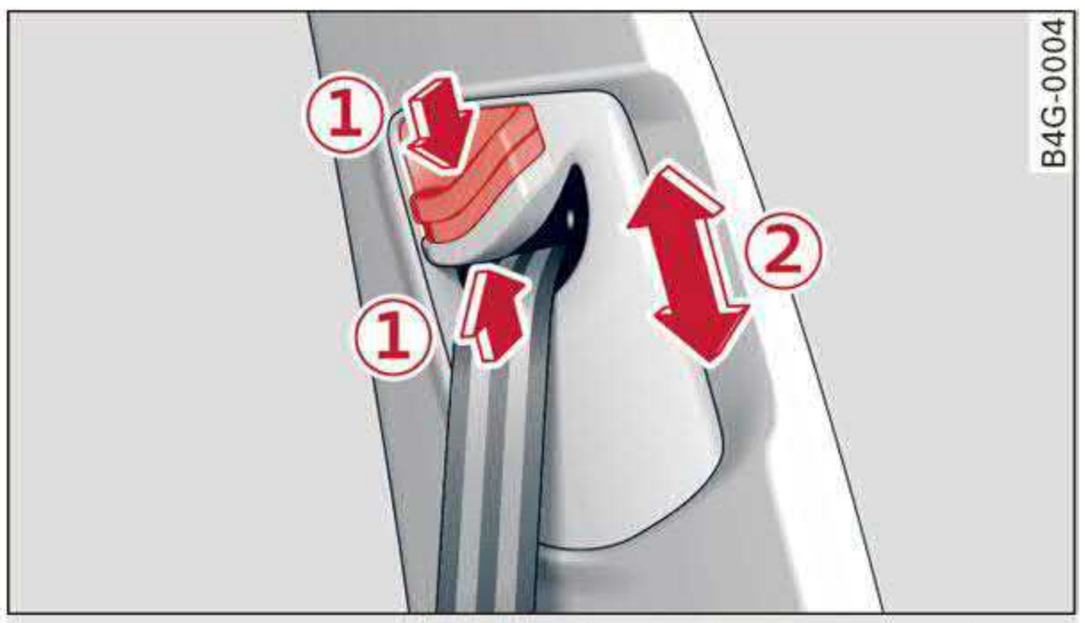


Fig. 67 Belt height adjustment for the front seats - safety belt relay

- ▸ To move the belt higher, slide the safety belt relay ② upward.
- ▸ To move the belt lower, press the release button ① and slide the safety belt relay ② downward.
- ▸ To check if the safety belt relay is securely locked in place, pull firmly on the belt.

Tips

You can also adjust the height of the front seats to change the position of the safety belts.

Additional safety belt functions

Safety belt retractor

The safety belts are equipped with an automatic belt retractor. This automatic retractor allows the safety belt to be pulled all the way out when the belt is pulled slowly. However, the automatic retractor locks during sudden braking maneuvers. It also locks the belts when accelerating, driving uphill, and driving around curves.

Belt force limiter

Safety belts with belt force limiters reduce the force placed on the body by the safety belts during a collision.

Safety belt pretensioners

In certain driving situations, safety belts may be tightened with reversible belt tensioners when you start driving. If the safety belt is too loose, it will be tightened so that the belt will rest closer to the body.

In some collisions, pyrotechnic belt tensioners may secure the safety belts so that they cannot loosen. This reduces forward movement by the vehicle passengers.

WARNING

The pyrotechnic system can only provide protection during one collision. If the pyrotechnic belt tensioners deploy, the pretensioning system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Tips

Smoke may be released when pyrotechnic belt tensioners deploy. This is not a sign of a vehicle fire.

Memory function

General information

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

With the memory function, you can save and call up seat profiles using the memory buttons in the door trim panel.

Depending on the equipment, it may be possible to store the following settings:

– **Driver's seat:** seat, exterior mirror*

Storing and recalling a seat profile

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

The memory function buttons are located in the door trim panel.

Storing a seat profile

- ► Press the SET button. If the LED in the button turns on, a seat profile can be stored.
- ► Push one of the numbered memory buttons. A tone confirms that the settings were stored.

Recalling a seat profile

- ► When the a door is open and the ignition is switched off, press the memory button once briefly. The seat will be fully adjusted to the settings in the seat profile.
- ► If the door is closed or the ignition is switched on, press and hold the memory button until the seat is fully adjusted to the settings in the seat profile.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of an accident, the seat setting can only be recalled when the vehicle is stationary.
– In an emergency, the recall process can be canceled by pressing the seat adjustment button on that seat.

Tips

Certain settings are automatically stored and assigned to the active user.

Airbag system

General information

WARNING

– If you have not fastened your safety belt, you are in an incorrect seating position, or you are too close to the airbag system, the airbag system will not be able to protect ►

you. This increases the risk of serious or fatal injuries. Make sure that every vehicle passenger has their safety belt correctly fastened and is sitting in a correct seating position ⇨ *page 59*. This is necessary regardless of whether the seat is equipped with an airbag or not.

– Never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window, or on the seat surfaces. To help ensure that the airbag system can deploy correctly, never bend forward or lean on the door or the side window. Otherwise, serious and possibly fatal injuries can occur if the airbags deploy.
– People, animals, or objects between the passengers and the airbag system can interfere with the correct deployment of the airbag or can be thrown through the vehicle interior, increasing the risk of serious or fatal injuries. Make sure that nothing is located between the vehicle occupants and the airbag system. Do not secure or transport any objects within the deployment zone of the airbag systems, especially on the steering wheel, on the instrument panel, on the doors, on the windows, or in the footwell.
– Never put stickers on the airbag system covers or cover them with any objects.
– Only lightweight clothing should be hung from the garment hooks in the vehicle. Do not use clothes hangers to hang clothing. The pockets of the clothing must not contain any heavy, breakable, or sharp-edged objects. This could impair the effectiveness of the side curtain airbags.
– You must not use seat or protective covers that are not specifically approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags. Since the side airbags deploy from the seat backrest, such covers could impair the protective function of the side airbags.
– Damage to the original seat covers in the side airbag deployment area must always be repaired by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Airbag system components are installed at various locations in your vehicle. Incorrect work or repairs on the vehicle could damage the airbag system components or impair their functionality. This may prevent the airbags from deploying or cause them to deploy incorrectly in the event of an accident, which increases the risk of serious or fatal injuries. Only have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility make repairs or modifications to a vehicle.
– The airbag system can only provide protection during one collision. If there is another collision, the airbag system will not deploy again. If the airbag system has deployed, have it replaced immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Fine dust may appear if the airbags deploy. This is completely normal and does not indicate a fire in the vehicle. The fine dust can irritate the skin and mucous membranes in the eyes and can cause difficulty breathing, particularly for individuals who have or have had asthma or other health issues that affect breathing. Exit the vehicle or open the windows or doors to get access to fresh air.

Tips

If you are transporting children in the vehicle, read the information and follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 72*.

Safety systems monitoring

The  indicator light in the instrument cluster monitors the safety systems such as the airbags (including the control modules, sensors, and wiring) and the belt tensioners. It turns on when you switch the ignition on and turns off after several seconds.

If the  indicator light does not turn on when the ignition is switched on, does not turn off after several seconds, or turns on or flashes while driving, there may be a malfunction in one of the safety systems. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. ▶

WARNING

Have the malfunction in the safety systems inspected immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk that the systems may not activate during an accident, which increases the risk of serious or fatal injury.

Description

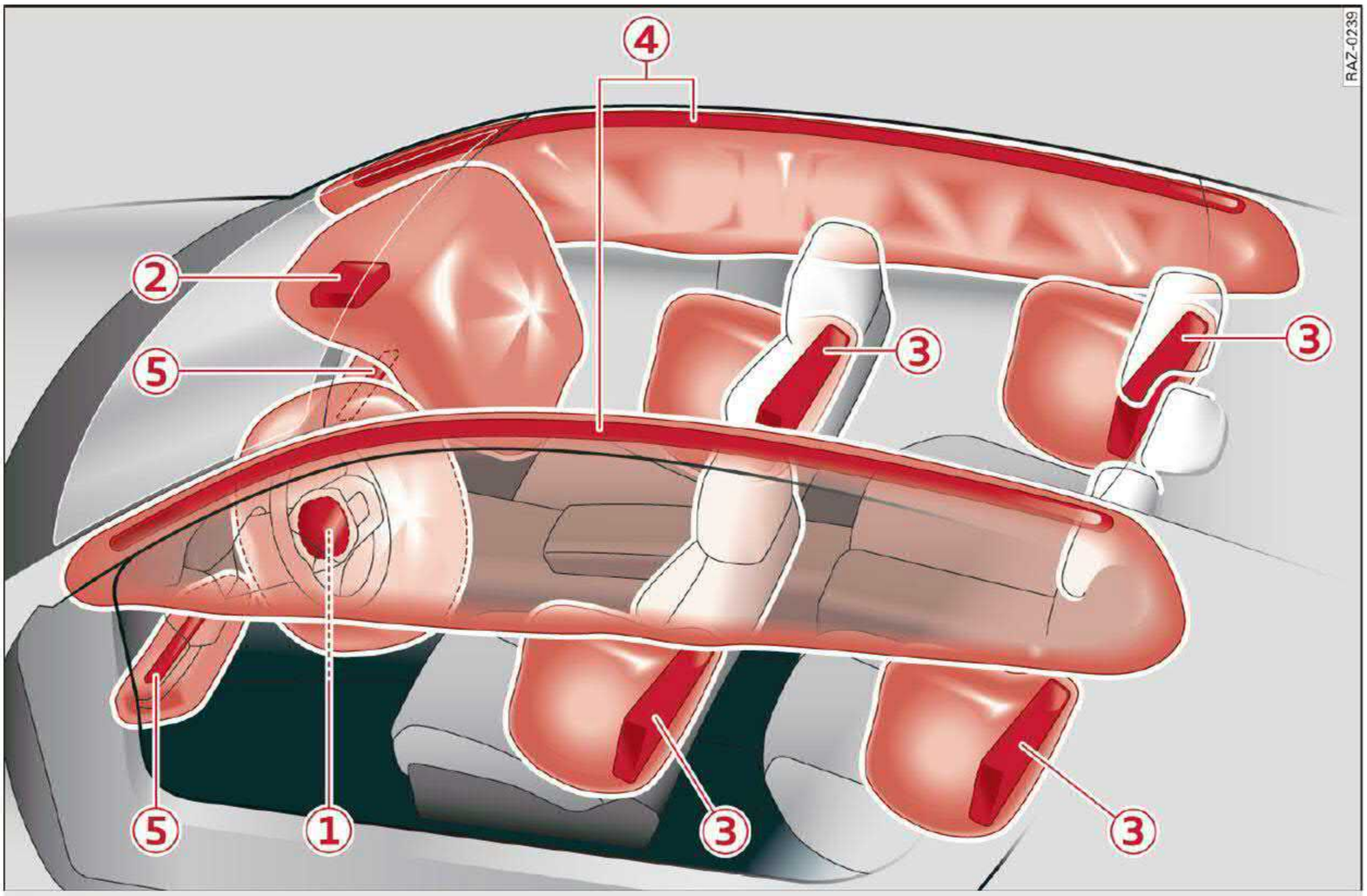


Fig. 68 Airbag overview image (enlarged section: deployed airbags)

The locations of the airbags are labeled with “AIRBAG”. The following airbags are installed in your vehicle:

① Driver's airbag
② Front passenger's airbag
③ Front side airbags and rear, if applicable
④ Head curtain airbag with ejection mitigation
⑤ Knee airbags

Airbags offer the best possible protection in your vehicle during an accident when they are used together with safety belts that are fastened correctly, and when passengers are sitting in the correct seating position. Airbags are a supplementary restraint system and do not replace safety belts.

Airbags may deploy during front-impact, side-impact, or rollover accidents.

The deployment area for the airbag system cannot be defined for every situation, since the circumstances surrounding accidents can vary widely. Factors that play an important role include the condition of the object that the vehicle hits (hard or soft), the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. The deciding factor for the deployment of the airbag system is the deceleration that occurs during an accident. Sensors in the vehicle are designed to detect the severity of an accident in conjunction with the control module, and to provide a targeted and timely deployment of the restraint system. If the vehicle deceleration that is measured during an accident is below the specified reference values in the control module, then the airbags will not deploy, even though the vehicle ▶

may be severely damaged from the accident. In these cases, the vehicle occupants will be protected by the safety belts if they are fastened and worn correctly.

The deployment of the front passenger's airbag will depend on the occupancy of the seat ⇨ *page 70*.

Each deployed airbag is filled with gas. When this occurs, the airbag covers open and the airbags unfold with great force into the deployment zone within milliseconds. Inflated airbags reduce the movement of passengers wearing safety belts in the direction of the impact and thus help to reduce the risk of injury. They can help to protect the head, upper body, and lap, for example. However, there is the possibility that airbag deployment can cause injuries.

The airbag system only works when the ignition is turned on.

If you or other vehicle passengers have physical limitations that prevent sitting in a correct position, modifications to the vehicle may be necessary. For more information, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility, or call Audi customer support at 1-800-822-2834.

Tips

The side curtain airbags in your vehicle have ejection mitigation functions. This reduces the risk of being ejected from the vehicle interior during an accident, especially in the event of a vehicle rollover.

Advanced airbag system

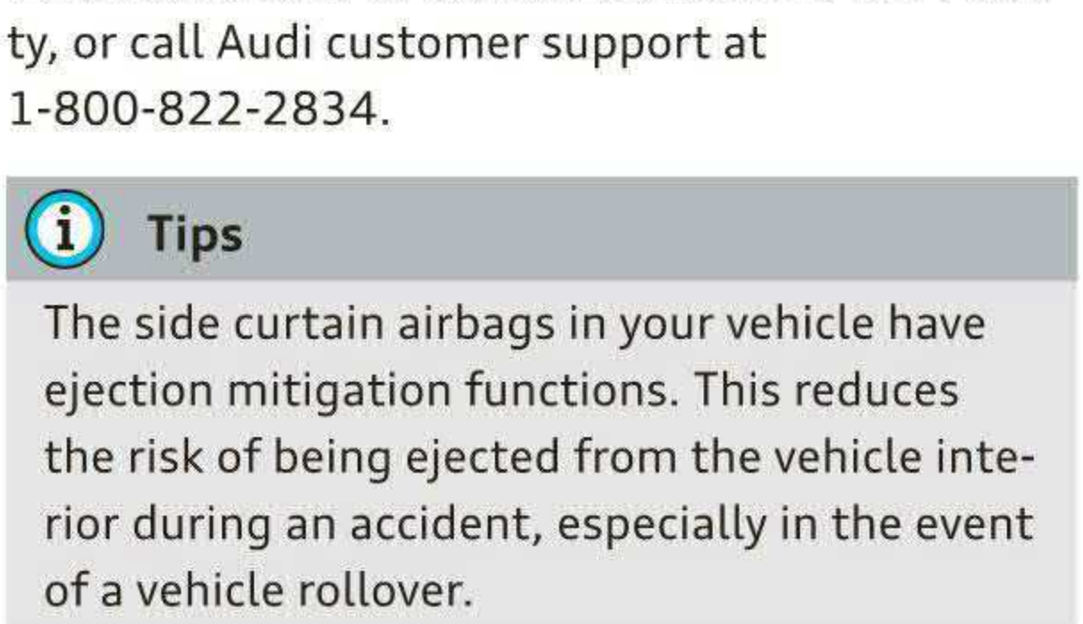


Fig. 69 Headliner: indicator light to display the status of the front passenger's airbag

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to comply with the requirements of the United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. According to these requirements, the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger's side has been certified for "suppression" for infants approximately 12 months old and younger, and for "low risk deployment" for children aged 3 to 6 years old (as defined in the standard).

The advanced airbag system will activate or deactivate the front passenger's airbag based on the occupancy of the seat. If a front airbag deploys during an accident, the deployment force will adapt to the passenger.

Components

The advanced airbag system consists of the following components:

- Front airbags in the steering wheel and in the instrument panel on the front passenger's side: these can protect the front passengers during an accident
- Passenger occupant detection sensor in the front passenger's seat: this detects if the front passenger's seat is occupied (for example, by a person or a small child in a child safety seat)
- Seat position sensors on the front seats: these determine the distance between the seat and the steering wheel or instrument panel
- Sensors in the front seat belt latch: these detect if the safety belts are fastened
- The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON indicator light in the headliner: this indicates if the front passenger's airbag is activated or deactivated
- indicator light in the instrument cluster: this monitors the function of the Advanced Airbag System components to ensure they are functioning correctly

How the components function together

The passenger occupant detection sensor in the front passenger's seat detects if the front passenger's seat is occupied. The passenger ▶

occupant detection sensor measures the electrical capacity on the front passenger's seat. The passenger's airbag is activated or deactivated depending on the electrical capacity that is measured.

The passenger's airbag is activated if:

– The electrical capacity is higher than the threshold stored in the control module
– The electrical capacity is the same as or greater than the electrical capacity of a typical adult

The passenger's airbag is deactivated if:

– The electrical capacity is lower than the threshold stored in the control module
– The electrical capacity is the same as or less than the electrical capacity of a typical one-year-old child in a child safety seat that has been used for certification in accordance with FMVSS 208

If the front passenger's airbag is activated, the PASSENGER AIR BAG ON indicator light will turn on. If the front passenger's airbag is deactivated, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator light will turn on.

The deployment force of the front airbags adapts based on whether or not the safety belt is used and the distance between the seat and the steering wheel/instrument panel. For example, if a person is too close to the front airbag, the front airbag will deploy with less force to help reduce the risk of injury.

Meaning of PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON indicator light

When the ignition is switched on, the system detects whether the front passenger's seat is occupied. PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON will turn on for several seconds during this process. Then it will indicate whether the front passenger's airbag is activated or deactivated.

– PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF : the front passenger's airbag is deactivated and will not deploy in the event of an accident.
– PASSENGER AIR BAG ON : the front passenger's airbag is activated and could deploy in the event of an accident.

If a change to the occupancy status of the front passenger's seat is detected, PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON will flash for several seconds and will then display the status of the front passenger's airbag.

Always make sure the indicator light corresponds to the occupancy of the front passenger's seat.

– **An adult or individual of similar size in the front passenger's seat:** the front passenger's airbag must be activated, so PASSENGER AIR BAG ON must remain on.
– **An individual of smaller size (for example, an adolescent or small adult) in the front passenger's seat:** the front passenger's airbag must be activated, so PASSENGER AIR BAG ON must remain on.
– **Child in a child safety seat on the front passenger's seat:** the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated, so PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF must remain on.
– **Front passenger's seat not occupied:** the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated, so PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF must remain on.

WARNING

– An adult or a person with a small stature (such as a young person or small adult) seated on the front passenger's seat will not be protected by the passenger's airbag in the event of a collision if the passenger's airbag is deactivated. This increases the risk of injury and death. Always make sure that PASSENGER AIR BAG ON remains on while driving. If PASSENGER AIR BAG ON does not turn on, make sure the front passenger is sitting correctly in the seat ⇨ *page 59* and that there are no objects covering the front passenger's seat (such as blankets or pillows). If PASSENGER AIR BAG ON still does not turn on, the front passenger's seat must not be used. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service ▶

8W1012721BB

Facility and have the airbag system inspected.

– A child in a child safety seat on the front passenger's seat - especially in a rear-facing child safety seat - can receive a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag deploys, which increases the risk of serious or fatal injury. Always secure child safety seats on the rear seats. If special circumstances require the use of a child safety seat on the front passenger's seat, always make sure that PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF remains on while driving. If PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF does not turn on, remove the child safety seat and install it again according to the child safety seat manufacturer instructions. If PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF still does not turn on, the front passenger's seat must not be used. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the airbag system inspected.
– Fluids, electronic devices, or mechanical damage on the front passenger's seat may cause the front passenger seat occupant detection to malfunction. The system may then incorrectly detect if the front passenger's seat is occupied. As a result, it could deploy the front passenger's airbag incorrectly or fail to deploy it, which increases the risk of serious or fatal injury. Make sure that no wet objects (such as a wet hand towel) and no fluids come into contact with the front passenger's seat cushion. If the front passenger's seat becomes wet, dry it immediately. Make sure no electronic devices (such as a laptop or a retrofitted seat heater) are on the front passenger's seat. Do not transport any objects on or under the front passenger's seat.
– Seat covers or protective covers may prevent the advanced airbag system from correctly detecting child safety seats or passengers in the front passenger's seat. You must not use seat covers or protective covers on the front passenger's seat that are not specifically approved for use on Audi seats with an advanced airbag system.

Child safety seats

General information

When installing and using child safety seats, follow the information in this Owner's Manual, the applicable state and federal regulations, and the manufacturer instructions for the child safety seat.

You can also obtain useful and current information from the following sources:

U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
http://www.nhtsa.gov
http://www.safercar.gov

National SAFE KIDS Campaign
http://www.safekids.org

SafetyBeltSafe U.S.A.
http://www.carseat.org

Transport Canada Information Centre
http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety

Audi Customer Experience Center
https://www.audiusa.com/help/contact-us
https://www.audi.ca/ca/web/en/models/layer/contact.html

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries, children must always be secured in the vehicle with a child safety seat that is appropriate for their body size, weight, and age.

– Children ages 12 and under must be transported using the appropriate child safety seat. Note differences in regulations between states and countries.
– Child safety seats secured incorrectly in the vehicle may cause serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident. Always secure the child safety seat according to the manufacturer instructions.
– Children or babies must not under any circumstances be held on the lap of the driver or other passengers while driving.
– Do not secure more than one child in a child safety seat.

– Never allow a child to sit in a child safety seat unsupervised.
– Never allow children to ride unsecured in the vehicle or to stand or kneel on the seats while driving. In the event of an accident, a child could be propelled through the vehicle. This can cause serious or fatal injuries for the child and passengers.
– If children use an incorrect seating position while driving, they have a higher risk of injury during a sudden braking maneuver or accident. This especially applies to children in the front passenger's seat or children who have their head near the side airbag deployment area, if the airbag system is deployed during an accident. This incorrect seating position can cause severe or even fatal injuries.
– Make sure there is enough space in front of the child in the child safety seat. If necessary, adjust the angle and position of the seat in front of the child safety seat.
– The rear side of a forward-facing child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat. If the head restraints make it difficult to install a child safety seat, adjust or remove them if necessary ⇨ *page 63*. Reinstall the head restraints immediately once the child safety seat has been removed.
– Always make sure that the backrest on the seat where the child safety seat is installed is securely locked in place and cannot move forward. Otherwise, the backrest where the child safety seat is secured could move forward in the event of an accident or other emergency situation.
– NEVER use a rear-facing child safety seat on a seat with an ACTIVATED FRONT AIRBAG; this could cause DEATH or SERIOUS INJURIES to a CHILD.
– Always secure child safety seats on the rear seats. If exceptional circumstances require the child safety seat to be placed on the front passenger's seat, then the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated. Always make sure that PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF remains on while driving. If PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF does not turn on, remove the child safety seat and install it again according to the child safety seat manufacturer instructions. If PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF still does not turn on, the front passenger's seat must not be used. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the airbag system inspected.
– If you must use a forward-facing child safety seat on the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far back as possible so that it is as far as possible from the front passenger's airbag. While doing this, make sure the seat can be adjusted all the way. A child in a child safety seat on the front passenger's seat can receive a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag deploys, which increases the risk of serious or fatal injury.
– Replace the child safety seat after an accident because there could be damage that is not visible.
– Even if a child is not sitting in the child safety seat, the child safety seat must be secured. An unsecured child safety seat may be thrown through the vehicle interior during sudden braking maneuvers or an accident.

Correct positioning for children

Always secure children in a child safety seat designed for the body size, weight, and age of the child.

You can secure child safety seats in your vehicle using the lower LATCH anchors or the safety belts. You can also secure child safety seats to the top tether anchor. Depending on the child safety seat, it may also be necessary to secure it to the top tether anchor. In Canada, securing forward-facing child safety seats to the top tether anchors is required by law.

Always transport children in the rear seats

Accident statistics show that children that are secured correctly in the rear seats are safer than in ▶

front seats. Always transport children in suitable child safety seats secured on the rear seats.

In exceptional circumstances: transporting children in the front passenger's seat

If exceptional circumstances require the child safety seat to be placed on the front passenger's seat, then the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated. Please note the important information for this ⇨ *page 70, Advanced airbag system*. If you must secure a forward-facing child safety seat, move the front passenger's seat as far back as possible so that it is as far as possible from the front passenger's airbag. While doing this, make sure the seat can be adjusted all the way.

Only switch to a larger child safety seat when absolutely necessary

Switch to a larger child safety seat only when absolutely necessary. Secure your child using a safety belt without a child safety seat only if all of the following statements are true:

- The child is large enough to sit upright in the seat
- The child is able to sit with his or her back resting completely on the seat backrest
- The child is able to sit with his or her knees bent over the edge of the seat surface
- The child is able to sit with both of his or her feet completely touching the floor in the footwell
- The lap portion of the safety belt lies flat and securely over the hip area and never over the stomach
- The shoulder portion of the safety belt lies flat and securely over the center of the shoulder and the chest, and never under the arm, behind the back, or over the neck or face.
- The child is able to maintain this seating position throughout the entire trip

Read and follow the important information and warnings regarding the correct use of safety belts ⇨ *page 64*.

Tips

- Child safety seats can also be secured to seats with side airbags. In the event of an accident, children can also be protected by the side airbags if the child is correctly secured in a suitable child safety seat that is attached correctly.
- The lower LATCH anchors as well as the safety belt may be required to correctly install some child safety seats. Using both at the same time is permitted, provided that the fastening systems or safety belts do not impair those in an adjacent seating position.
- All child safety seats are constructed so that they can be secured using the lap safety belt in the vehicle.
- Child safety seats with a load leg can only be secured to the outer rear seats and to the front passenger's seat.

Securing child safety seats to the lower LATCH anchors



Fig. 70 Rear bench seat: lower LATCH anchors

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 72*.

In the United States and Canada, child safety seats can be secured without safety belts using the LATCH system. LATCH stands for Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children. In Canada, similar systems are called UCRA, LUAS, or UAS.

The lower LATCH anchors in your vehicle are located on the outer seats of the rear bench seat between the seat surface and the backrest. These seating locations each have two lower LATCH anchors that can be used to secure a LATCH child safety seat. Marking points with a ⇨ *fig. 70* symbol are located on the covers for the lower LATCH anchors. You can locate the LATCH anchors using the marking points.

▸ Activate the child safety lock ⇨ *page 41*. ▶

- ► Remove the cover* from both lower LATCH anchors.
- ► If you secure a child safety seat to the rear seat, secure any unused safety belts that are within reach of the child ⇨ ⚠ *in Securing child safety seats with a safety belt on page 76*.
- ► Secure the child safety seat according to the child safety seat manufacturer instructions.
- ► Pull on the child safety seat to check if both sides are engaged correctly in the LATCH anchors.
- ► If possible, also secure the child safety seat to the respective top tether anchor in the vehicle ⇨ *page 76*.

⚠ WARNING

The LATCH anchors in the vehicle are only designed for child safety seats with the LATCH system. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injury, never secure other child restraint systems, belts, or objects to the anchors.

ⓘ Tips

The LATCH anchors are designed for a total weight (child and child safety seat combined) up to 65 lbs (29 kg). If the total weight is greater than this, the child safety seat must be secured with the vehicle safety belt.

Securing child safety seats with a safety belt

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 72*. The front passenger's seat is a dangerous location for a child, even with an advanced airbag system. If exceptional circumstances require the child safety seat to be placed on the front passenger's seat, then the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated. Please note the important information for this ⇨ *page 73, Correct positioning for children* and ⇨ *page 70, Advanced airbag system*.

Securing child safety seats

- ► Activate the child safety lock ⇨ *page 41*.
- ► If you secure a child safety seat to the rear seat, secure any unused safety belts that are within reach of the child ⇨ ⚠, ⇨ *page 77*.
- ► If you secure a child safety seat to the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's seat to the highest position.
- ► Secure the child safety seat according to the child safety seat manufacturer instructions.
- ► If necessary, activate the belt retractor lock ⇨ *page 75*.
- ► If the child safety seat is secured on the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's seat backrest until it rests flat against the child safety seat. Also make sure that the upper safety belt fixture is behind the child safety seat.
- ► If you secure a child safety seat on the rear seat, also secure it to the correct top tether anchor if possible ⇨ *page 76*.

Activating the belt retractor lock

If you secure a child safety seat using the vehicle safety belt, you must activate the belt retractor lock. Follow the child safety seat manufacturer instructions.

The belt retractor lock prevents the safety belt from becoming loose while driving, which could result in the child safety seat no longer being adequately secured.

- ► Secure the child safety seat according to the child safety seat manufacturer instructions. While doing so, pull out the safety belt. Insert the safety belt into the belt latch that belongs to that seat until it audibly locks.
- ► Pull the upper belt out completely and then allow it to retract. You will hear a clicking sound while the belt is retracting. It will not be possible to pull the safety belt out any farther.
- ► Push the child safety seat into the seat and allow the belt to retract more.
- ► Make sure that the child safety seat cannot move more than 1 inch (2.5 cm).

Deactivating the belt retractor lock

- ► Unbuckle the safety belt from the belt latch.
- ► Remove the child safety seat according to the manufacturer instructions.
- ► Allow the safety belt to retract completely. The belt retractor lock is deactivated. ▶

WARNING

– A safety belt that is not locked by the belt retractor lock or a locking device cannot secure a child safety seat while driving or in the event of an accident, which increases the risk of fatal injury. Always make sure the belt retractor lock on the safety belt is activated if the child safety seat manufacturer instructions require it.
– Due to the risk of fatal injury, never place a rear-facing child safety seat on the front passenger's seat when the front passenger's airbag is switched on.
– For the child safety seat to offer the maximum protection, it is especially important to route the vehicle safety belt correctly. Always follow the instructions from the child safety seat manufacturer for routing the safety belt correctly. Incorrectly fastened safety belts can cause injuries, even during minor accidents.

Additionally securing a child safety seat to the top tether anchor

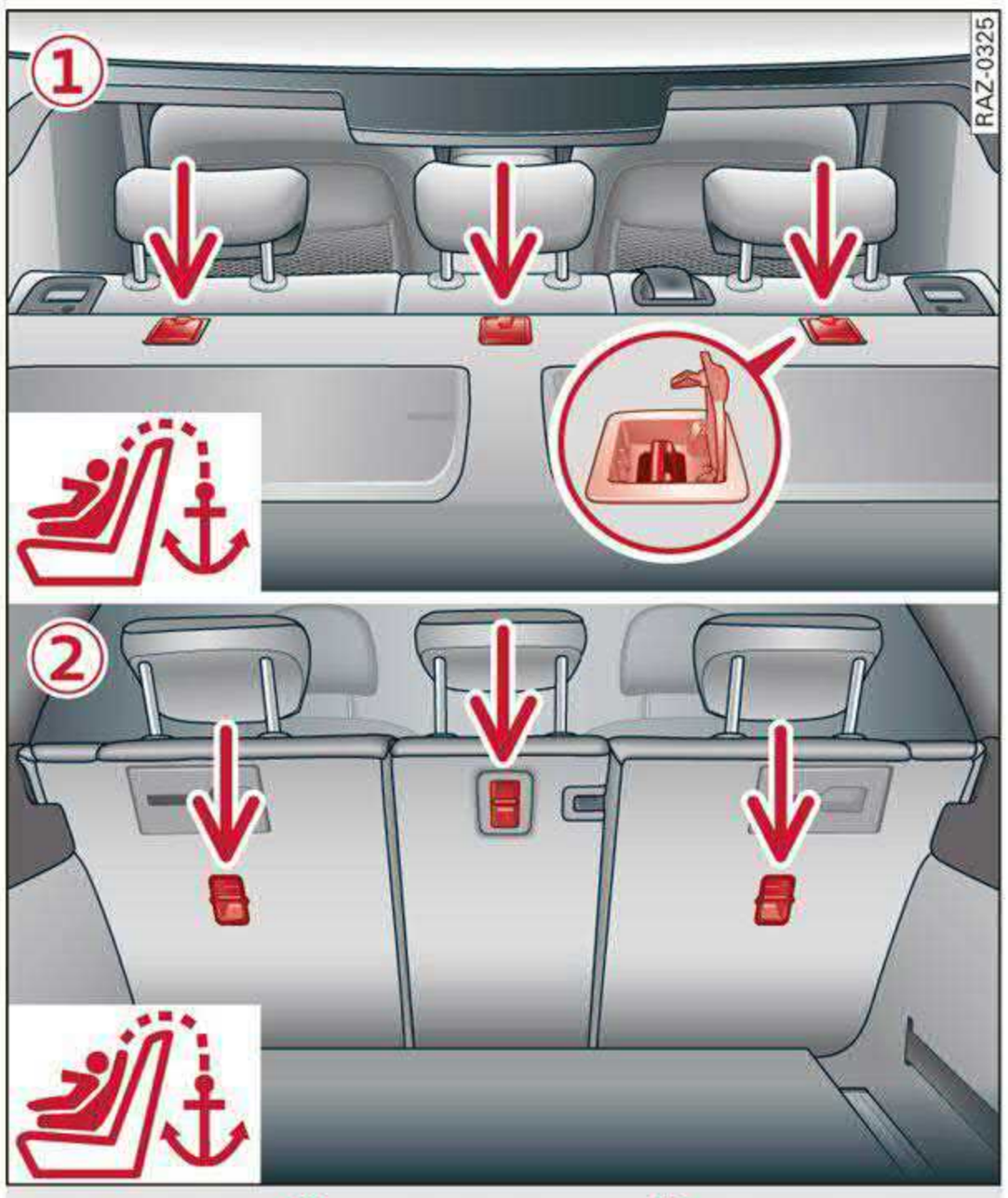


Fig. 71 Version ① rear shelf / Version ② rear backrest: top tether anchors for securing a child safety seat with an upper strap



Fig. 72 Version ① rear shelf / Version ② rear backrest: securing the upper strap on the top tether anchor

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 72*.

There is a top tether anchor behind every seat in the rear bench seat to additionally secure a child safety seat with an upper belt.

- ▸ Move the head restraint behind the child safety seat upward.
- ▸ Applies to: version 1: Fold the cover for the top tether anchor upward.
- ▸ Guide the upper belt on the child safety seat under the head restraint or along both sides of it and toward the rear (depending on the child safety seat model).
- ▸ Fasten the belt to the top tether anchor ⇨ *fig. 72*. While doing this, make sure the belt is not twisted and is not running over any sharp edges.
- ▸ Secure the child safety seat according to the child safety seat manufacturer instructions.
- ▸ Pull the belt tightly so that the child safety seat rests at the top of the seat backrest.
- ▸ If necessary, move the head restraint behind the child safety seat downward. ▶

WARNING

The top tether anchors in the vehicle are only designed for child safety seats equipped with an upper strap. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injury, never secure other child restraint systems, belts, or objects to the anchors.

Securing unused safety belts on the rear bench seat



Fig. 73 Rear bench seat: securing unused safety belts

If a child safety seat is used on the rear bench seat, the child must not be able to reach any safety belts that are not being used. Secure safety belts that are within reach of the child.

- If you secure a child safety seat to the LATCH anchors, fasten the safety belt on the seat where the child safety seat is installed using the seat's safety belt latch.
- Applies to: Sportback: If you secure a child safety seat on one of the outer seats, fasten the safety belt for the center seat in its latch.
- Activate the belt retractor lock on the fastened safety belts. To do this, pull the upper belt out completely and then allow it to retract. You will hear a clicking sound while the belt is retracting. It will not be possible to pull the safety belt out any farther.
- Make sure the fastened safety belt does not block access to the LATCH anchors. Otherwise, it may not be possible to secure the child safety seat to the LATCH anchors correctly.

WARNING

A child in a child safety seat could play with the unused safety belts and then become entangled in them, which increases the risk of fatal injury. Always secure unused safety belts so that they are not within reach of children in child safety seats.

Stowing and using

Power sources

When the ignition is switched on, you may be able to use the power sources for external devices, depending on the vehicle equipment.

12 volt sockets

You can connect electrical accessories to the 12 volt sockets. The power usage must not exceed 120 watts.

The 12 volt sockets are labeled with the 12V symbol. They are located in the front center console, in the rear* and on the side trim panel in the luggage compartment*.

USB ports

Applies to: vehicles with USB input

You can charge mobile devices using the USB ports. The USB ports are labeled with the ⇢ or ⇢ symbol or CHARGE ONLY.

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of fatal injury, store all connected devices securely when driving so that they do not move around inside the vehicle when braking or in the event of an accident.
- Incorrect usage can lead to serious injuries or burns. To reduce the risk of injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle with the vehicle key.

Note

- Read the operating manuals for the connected devices.
- To reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle electrical system, never attempt to charge the vehicle battery by connecting accessories that provide power to the power sources.
- Do not connect any device whose network class (voltage) does not match the network class designed for the socket.
- Disconnect the connectors from the power sources carefully to reduce the risk of damaging them.

Cup holders



Fig. 74 Rear center armrest*: cup holders

Your vehicle has cup holders in the front center console and in the rear center armrest*.

Cup holders in the rear center armrest*

- Fold the center armrest* downward.
- To open the cup holders, pull the top cover on the cup holders forward ⇨ *fig. 74*.
- To close the cup holder, fold the cover back until it clicks into place.

WARNING

- Do not put any hot beverages in the cup holder while the vehicle is moving. Hot beverages could spill, which increases the risk of injury.
- Do not use any breakable beverage containers (for example, made out of glass or porcelain). You could be injured by them in the event of an accident.

Note

Beverage containers in the cup holders should always have a lid. Otherwise, the liquid inside could spill and cause damage to vehicle equipment.

Storage areas and compartments

Depending on the vehicle equipment, there may be a variety of storage areas, compartments, and retainers at various locations in the vehicle. ▶

– Glove compartment: the glove compartment can be locked using the mechanical key ⇨ *page 34*.
– Storage compartments in the door trim panels
– Storage compartment in the center console
– Storage compartment under the front center armrest
– Storage compartment in the rear center armrest
– Storage compartment under the light switch
– Garment hooks above the rear doors
– Nets on the backrests of the front seats
– Storage compartments behind the rear head restraints: the storage compartments can be used to store lightweight pieces of clothing.
– Nets on the left/right luggage compartment trim panel
– Tie-downs on the left/right luggage compartment trim panel
– Bag hooks in the luggage compartment

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of injury, make sure all storage compartments are always closed while driving.
– Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Store objects securely while driving.
– Only use the storage compartments in the door trim panels to store small objects that will not stick out of the compartment and impair the function of the side airbags.
– Due to strength reasons, only secure objects up to 11 lbs (5 kg) with the tie-downs*. Heavier objects are not adequately secured. There is risk of personal injury.
– Applies to: vehicles with garment hooks: Only lightweight clothing should be hung from the garment hooks in the vehicle. Do not use clothes hangers to hang clothing. The pockets of the clothing must not contain any heavy, breakable, or sharp-edged objects. This could impair the effectiveness of the side curtain airbags.
– Make sure your view toward the rear is not blocked, for example by hanging clothing or objects in the vehicle.
– Applies to: vehicles with storage areas behind the rear head restraints: Do not store any heavy or hard objects or use to transport animals. Such objects endanger vehicle occupants and increase the risk of injury during sudden driving or braking maneuvers or in an accident.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with storage areas behind the rear head restraints: Make sure the heating grid strips for the rear window defogger are not damaged by abrasive objects.

Tips

Applies to: vehicles with storage areas behind the rear head restraints: To ensure the ventilation functions correctly, the ventilation slots between the rear window and the storage area must not be covered.

Luggage compartment

General information

All pieces of luggage or objects must be securely fastened in the luggage compartment. Note the following to maintain good vehicle handling:

- Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
- Stow heavy luggage as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
- Use non-elastic cords attached to the tie-downs to secure objects.

WARNING

– Applies to: vehicles with luggage compartment cover: The luggage compartment cover is not a surface for storing objects. Objects placed on the cover increase the risk of injury to all vehicle occupants during sudden driving or braking maneuvers or in the event of an accident.

– Applies to: vehicles with luggage compartment cover: The luggage compartment cover must always be securely fastened when in use to reduce the risk of an accident.
– Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Always stow objects securely in the luggage compartment and secure them at the tie-downs. Use straps suitable for heavy objects.
– If pieces of luggage or objects are secured to the tie-downs with unsuitable or damaged straps, this can increase the risk of injury during braking maneuvers or accidents.
– When transporting heavy objects, the vehicle characteristics will change due to the shift in the center of gravity, which increases the risk of an accident. You may need to adapt your driving style and speed to the current conditions.
– The cargo net is only strong enough to secure light objects. Heavy objects are not adequately secured. Attempting to secure heavy objects increases the risk of injury.
– Never exceed the permitted axle and load and vehicle weight ⇨ *page 278*.
– Never secure a child safety seat to the tie-downs.
– Never leave your vehicle unattended, especially if the luggage compartment lid is open. Children could enter the luggage compartment and close the luggage compartment lid from the inside. This creates the risk of fatal injury, since the children would be locked in and may not be able to escape by themselves.
– Do not allow children to play in or on the vehicle. Close and lock the luggage compartment lid as well as all other doors when you leave the vehicle.
– Never transport passengers in the luggage compartment. Every passenger must be correctly secured with the safety belts in the vehicle ⇨ *page 64*.
– Be careful when releasing the backrest and folding it forward. To reduce the risk of being pinched, pay attention and check when folding backrests forward.
– The backrest must be securely latched so objects cannot slide forward out of the luggage compartment during sudden braking.
– The backrest must be latched securely to ensure that the safety belt is protecting the center seating position.
– Always pull forward on the backrest to make sure it is check if it is correctly locked in place.

Note

– To reduce the risk of damage, move the rear head restraints down before folding the rear backrests forward ⇨ *page 63*.
– When folding the backrest forward, make sure the outer safety belts are in the belt guide recess so that they do not get pinched in the backrest lock and damaged. Other objects should be removed from the rear bench seat to protect the backrest from damage.
– To reduce the risk of damaging the front seats, make sure there is enough space between the front seat and the rear seat equipment when folding the center backrest forward.
– If you move the front seat back when the rear seat backrest is folded forward, you could damage the head restraints on the rear seat.
– Make sure that the heating grid strips for the rear window defogger are not damaged by abrasive objects.
– Applies to: vehicles with manual luggage compartment cover: Let the luggage compartment cover roll up slowly to reduce the risk of damage.
– Applies to: vehicles with partition net: Let the partition net roll up slowly to reduce the risk of damage.

Tips

– The tire pressure must be adapted to the load ⇨ *page 237*.
– You can purchase straps at specialty stores.

Manual luggage compartment cover

Applies to: vehicles with manual luggage compartment cover

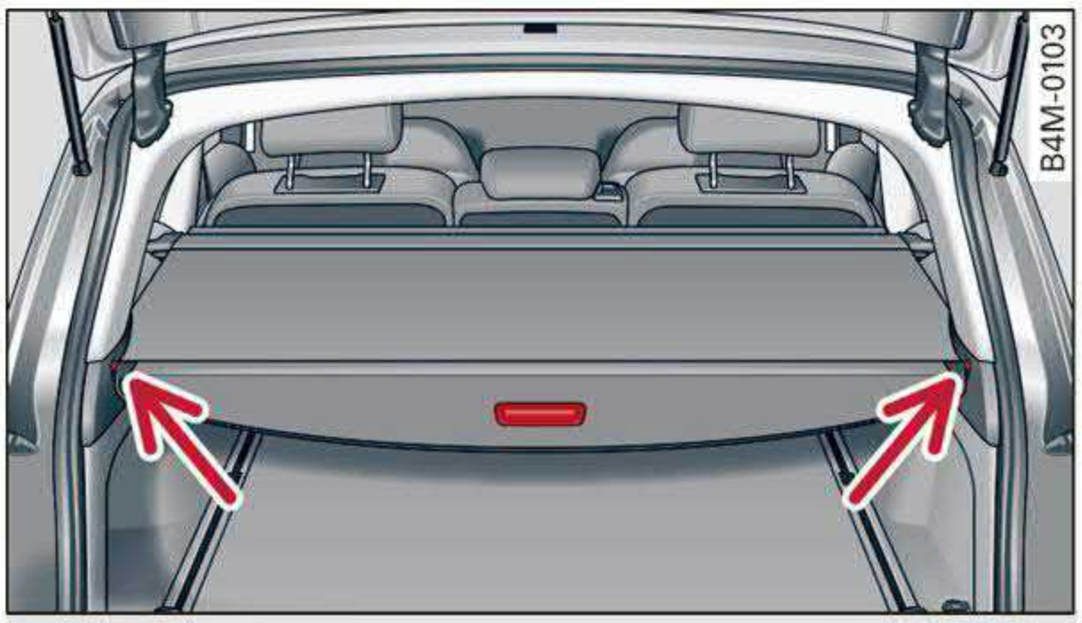


Fig. 75 Luggage compartment: cover attached

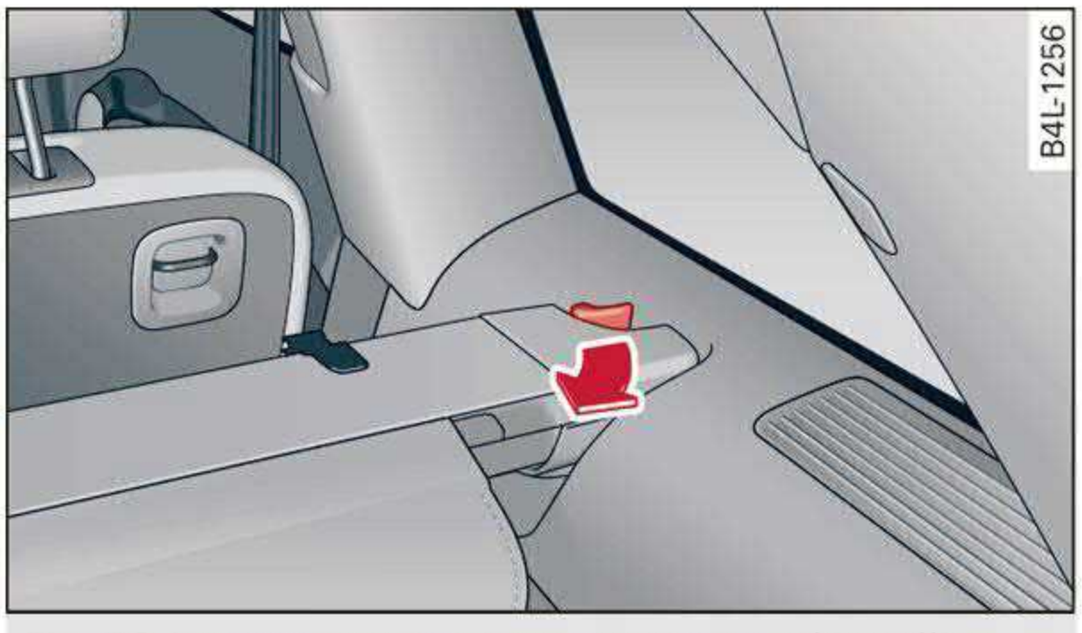


Fig. 76 Luggage compartment: removing and installing the luggage compartment cover

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 79*.

- ► To secure the luggage compartment cover, pull it out and hook it into the mounting eyelets on the side trim panel ⇨ *fig. 75*.
- ► To remove the luggage compartment cover, pull the lever firmly in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 76* and remove the cover upward.
- ► To install the luggage compartment cover, place the cover in the side trim panel mount on the left side.
- ► Press the cover down into the right mount until it locks into place.

Power luggage compartment cover

Applies to: vehicles with power luggage compartment cover



Fig. 77 Luggage compartment: cover attached

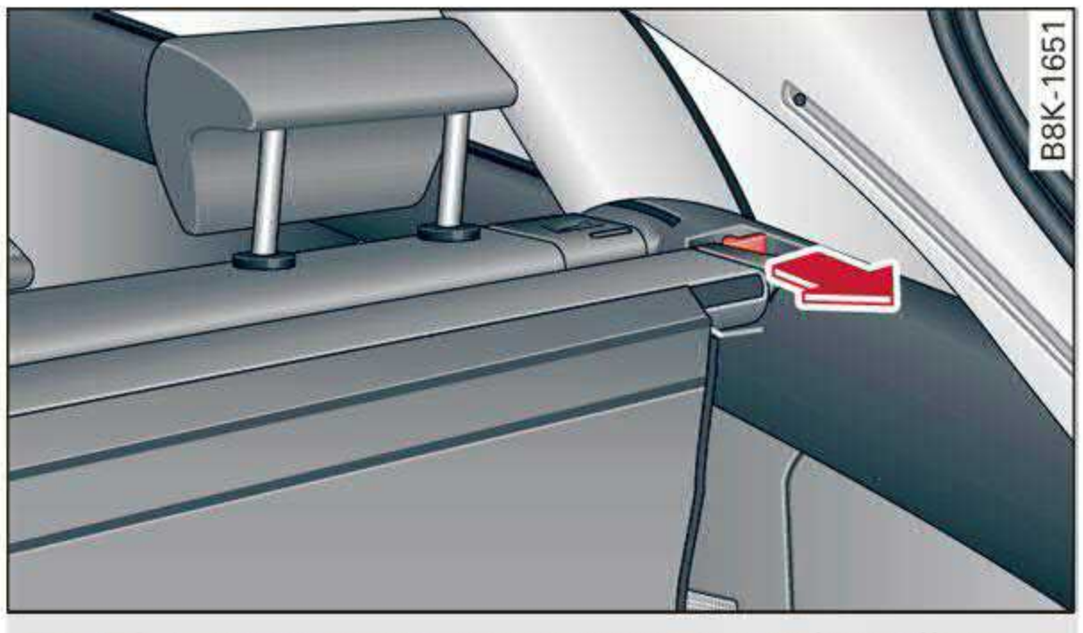


Fig. 78 Luggage compartment: removing and installing the luggage compartment cover

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 79*.

If you open the luggage compartment lid, the power luggage compartment cover will move into position Ⓐ or Ⓑ. You do not need to remove the cover to load and unload the luggage compartment.

- ► To secure or release the luggage compartment cover, pull the cover out and hang it in position Ⓐ in the guides in the side trim. You can only secure or release the cover when it is in position Ⓐ.
- ► To remove the luggage compartment cover, detach the cover and allow it to roll up.
- ► Pull the lever in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 78* and remove the cover upward.
- ► To install the luggage compartment cover, place it in the side trim panel mount on the left side.
- ► Press the cover down into the right mount until it locks into place.

8W1012721BB

Increasing the size of the vehicle interior

Applies to: vehicles with folding backrests

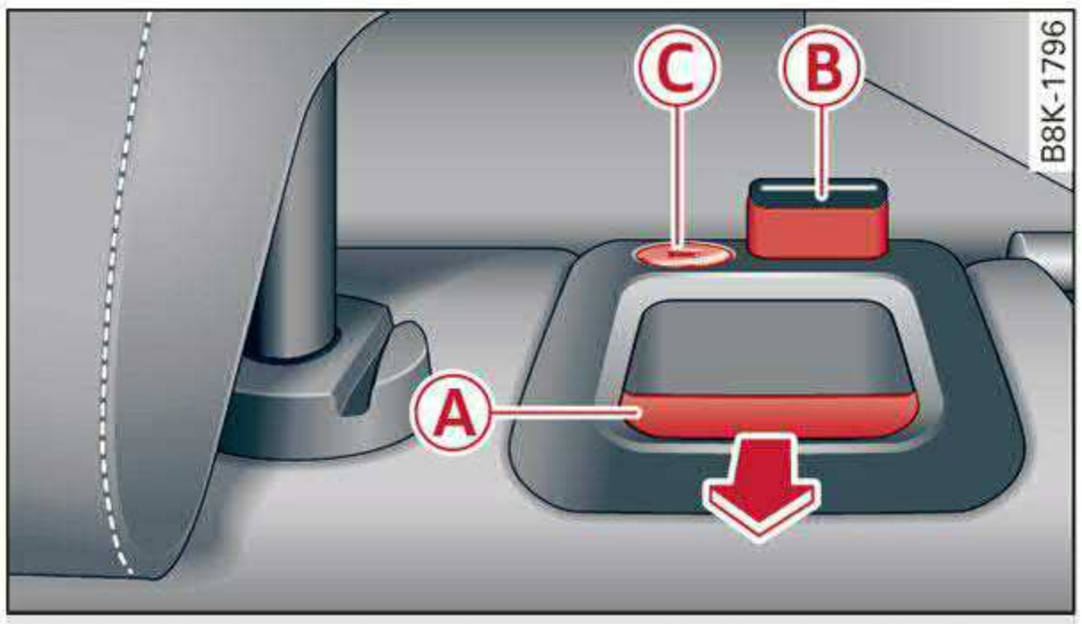


Fig. 79 Backrest: release lever, securing knob and lock*

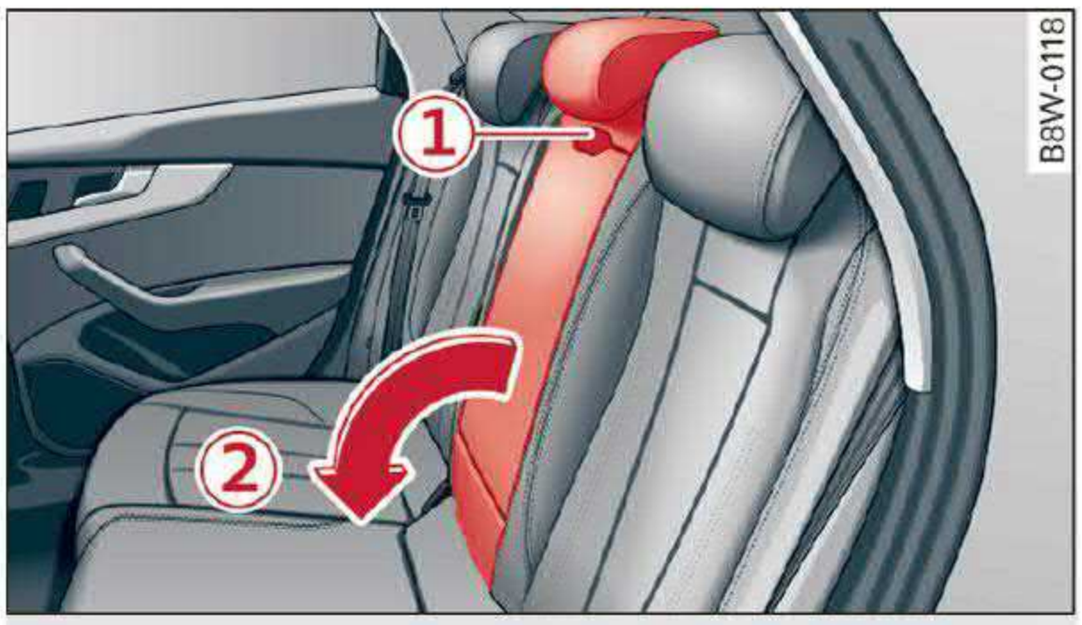


Fig. 80 Center backrest: folding the center backrest forward

The rear seat backrests can be folded forward either separately* or together.

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 79*.

Folding the outer rear backrests forward and backward

- ► Pull the release lever Ⓐ in the direction of the arrow and fold the backrest forward. Let the backrest latch into the lowest position.
- ► Fold the backrest back up again until it locks into place and the red marking Ⓑ is no longer visible.

Folding the center rear backrest forward and backward

- ► Pull on the upper release lever ① and fold the backrest forward ②.
- ► Fold the backrest backward until it locks into place.

Applies to: vehicles with lockable backrests in the rear and a lockable pass-through.

To prevent access to the luggage compartment from the vehicle interior, the backrest can be locked with the mechanical key Ⓒ when it is latched in place and the pass-through can be locked ⇨ *page 84*. You can only enlarge the luggage compartment if the backrest is not locked.

Increasing the size of the luggage compartment

Applies to: vehicles with release lever in the luggage compartment

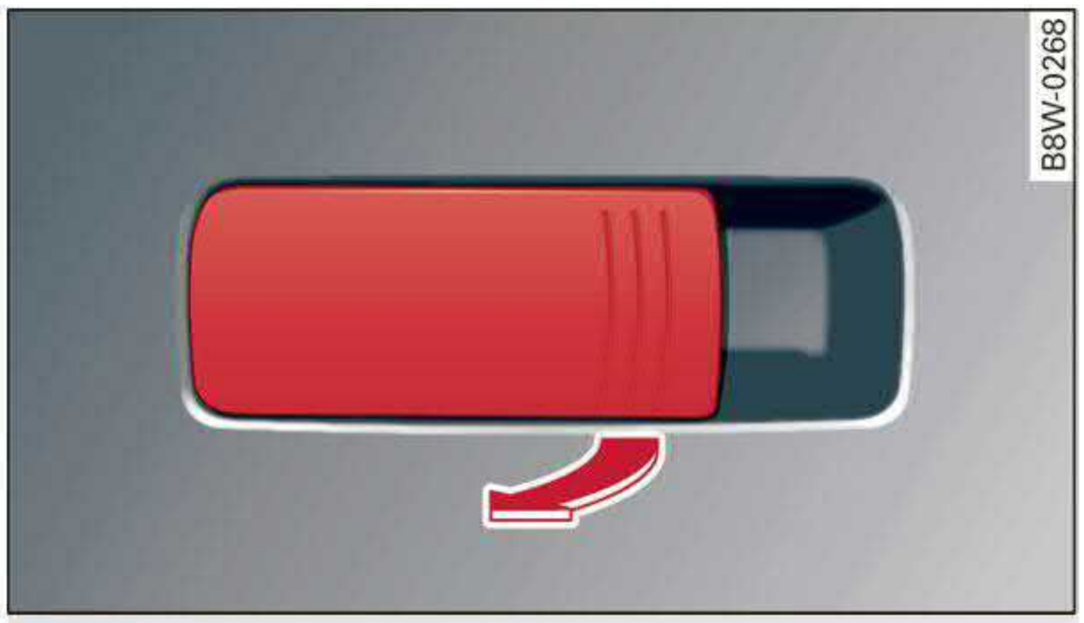


Fig. 81 Luggage compartment: release lever

The rear seat backrests can be folded forward either separately* or together.

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 79*.

- ► Pull the release lever ⇨ *fig. 81* in the direction of the arrow to fold the backrest forward.
- ► To set up the backrest again, fold it back until it locks or the red marking Ⓑ ⇨ *page 82, fig. 79* is no longer visible.

Partition net (upright backrest position)

Applies to: vehicles with partition net

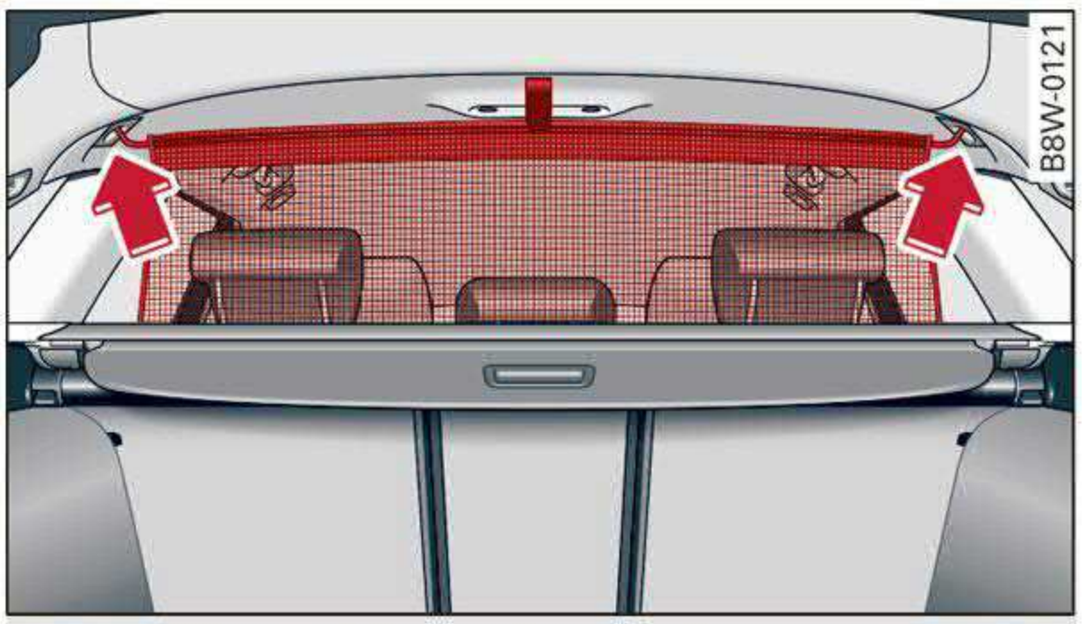


Fig. 82 Behind the backrest: hanging the partition net

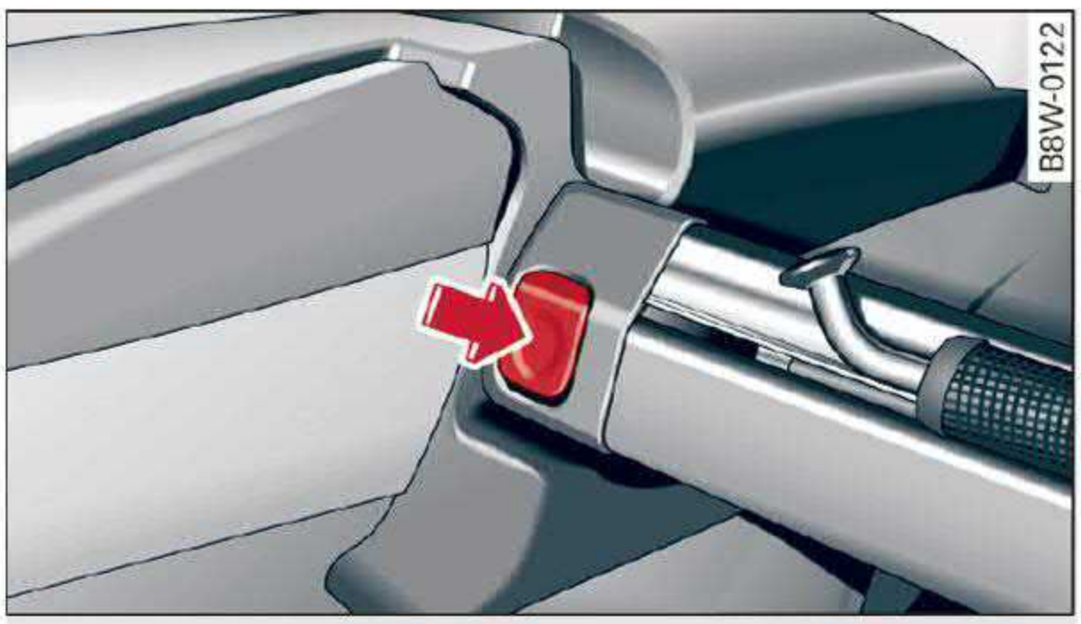


Fig. 83 Behind the backrest: removing the partition net

The partition net prevents objects from sliding from the luggage compartment into the passenger compartment.

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 79*.

- ▸ To set up the partition net, pull it upward.
- ▸ Attach the crossbrace to the mounting eyelets above the backrest ⇨ *fig. 82*.
- ▸ To remove the partition net, fold the backrest forward .⇨ *page 82*
- ▸ Press the left and right buttons on the partition net and lift the net upward to remove it ⇨ *fig. 83*.
- ▸ To install the partition net, fold the backrest forward .⇨ *page 82*
- ▸ Slide the left and right sides of the partition net into the mount.
- ▸ Press the partition net down diagonally at the left and right until it locks into place and the red markings on the buttons are no longer visible.

Partition net (backrests folded forward)

Applies to: vehicles with partition net

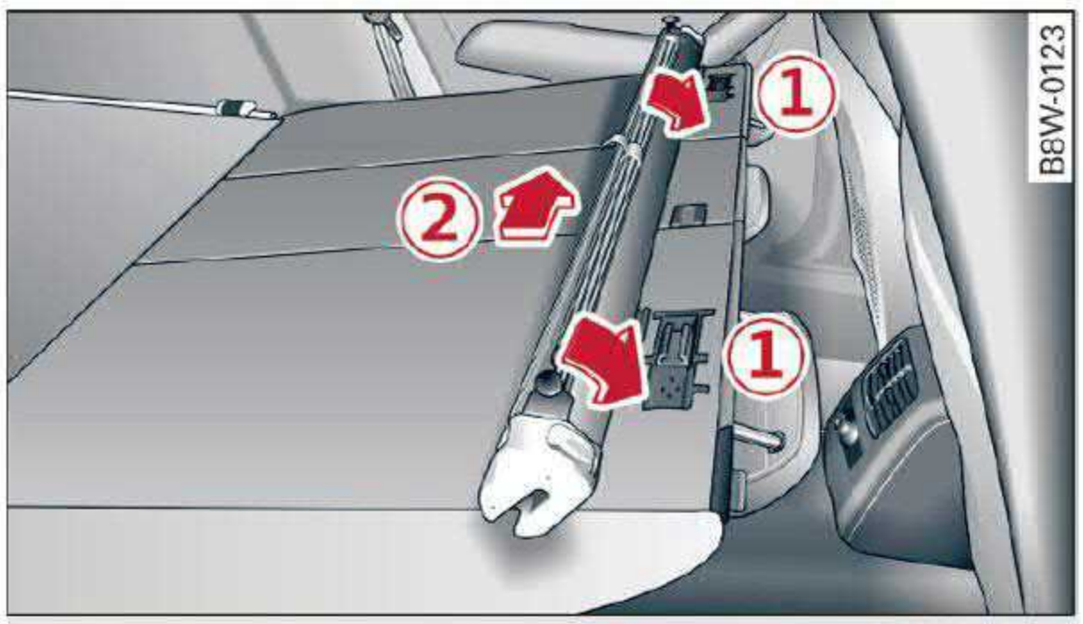


Fig. 84 Folded backrest: installing the partition net

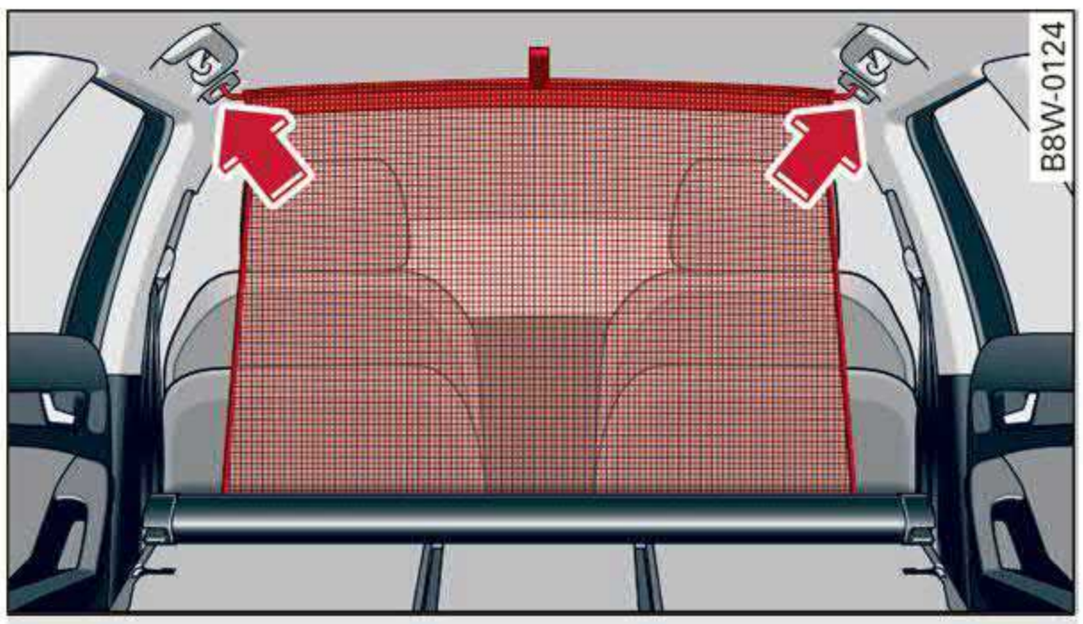


Fig. 85 Folded backrest: hanging the partition net

The partition net prevents objects from sliding from the luggage compartment into the passenger compartment.

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 79*.

- ▸ To install the partition net, fold the backrest forward .⇨ *page 82*
- ▸ Place the partition net on the recesses in the retaining rails ① and slide it all the way to the left ②.
- ▸ To secure the partition net, pull it upward and out and hook it into the mounting eyelets above the front seats ⇨ *fig. 85*.
- ▸ To remove the partition net, first slide it to the right and then lift it out of the retaining rails.

Note

You must remove the partition net before folding the backrest back into the upright position.

Tie-downs and luggage compartment net

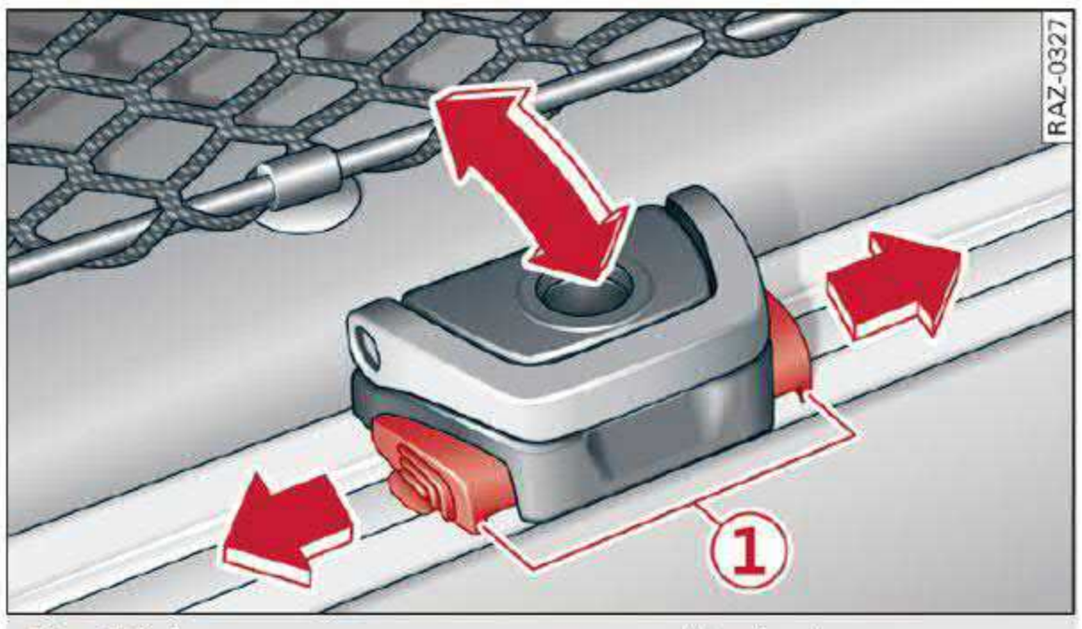


Fig. 86 Luggage compartment: movable tie-downs

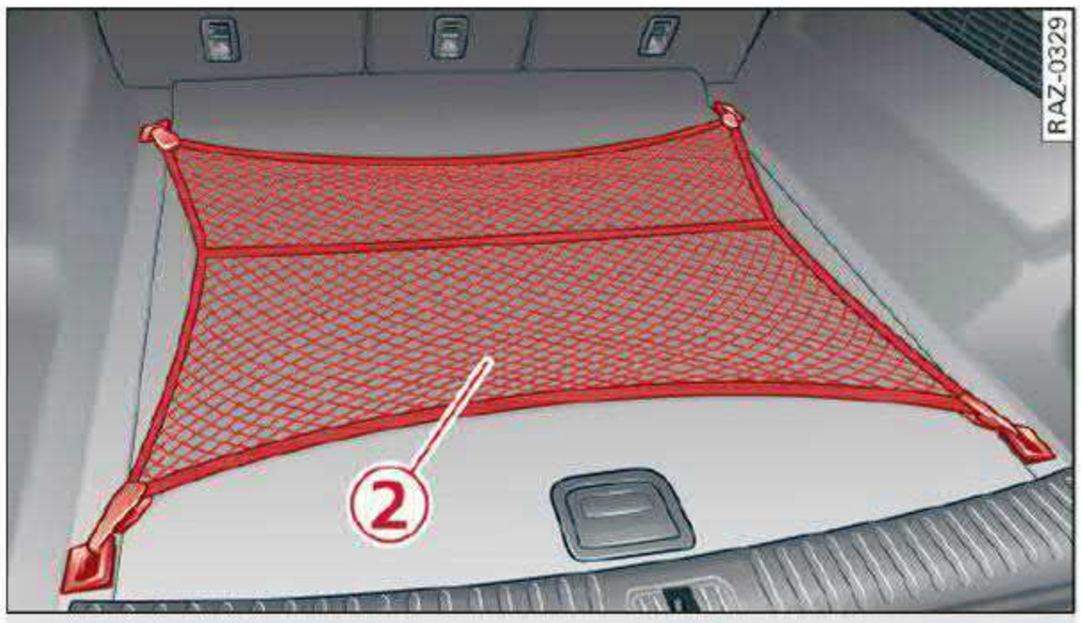


Fig. 87 Luggage compartment: cargo net stretched out

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 79*.

Tie-downs

There are tie-downs in the luggage compartment to secure pieces of luggage and objects.

- ▸ Use the tie-downs to secure the cargo.

Movable tie-downs

Applies to: vehicles with movable tie-downs

- ▸ To install a tie-down, press both buttons at the sides (1), insert the tie-down in the rail, and lock it in place.
- ▸ To slide a tie-down, press both of buttons at the sides and slide the tie-down to the desired position. The tie-downs must lock in place.
- ▸ To remove a tie-down, press both buttons at the sides and remove the tie-down from the rail.

Cargo net

Applies to: vehicles with luggage compartment net

Use the cargo net (2) to secure lighter objects in the luggage compartment

- ▸ Fold the clip for the tie-downs upward.
- ▸ Attach the hooks for the cargo net to the tie-downs.

Pass-through

Applies to: vehicles with pass-through

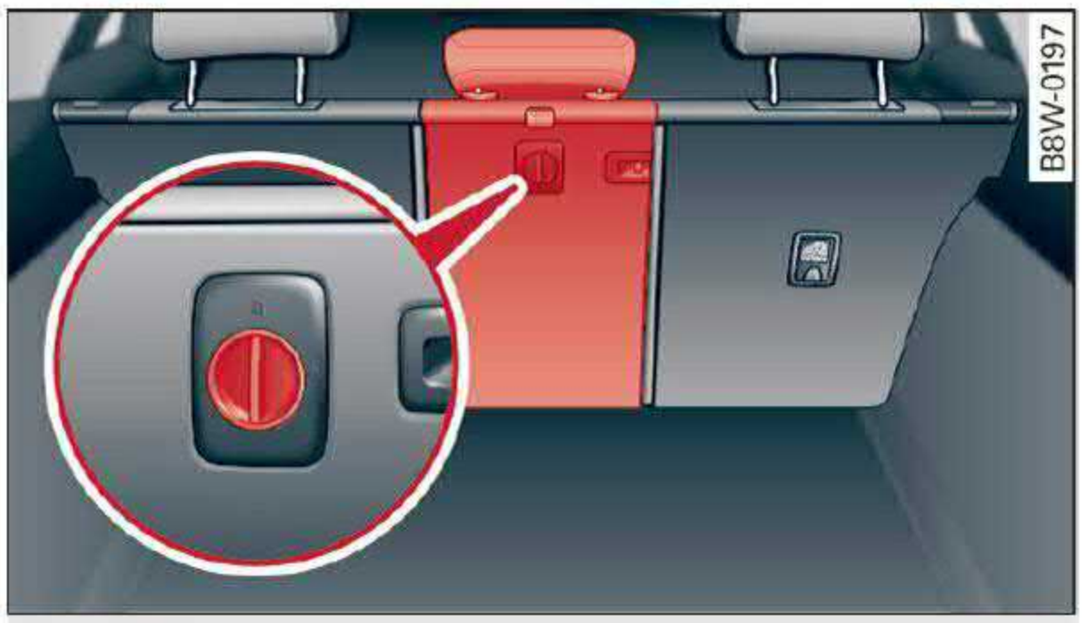


Fig. 88 Backrest: pass-through release

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 79*.

- ▸ To release the pass-through, turn the lock on the backrest.
- ▸ Fold the pass-through cover down.

Tips

The pass-through can be locked and unlocked from within the luggage compartment. This prevents any access to the luggage compartment from the vehicle interior.

Fixture set

Applies to: vehicles with a fixture set

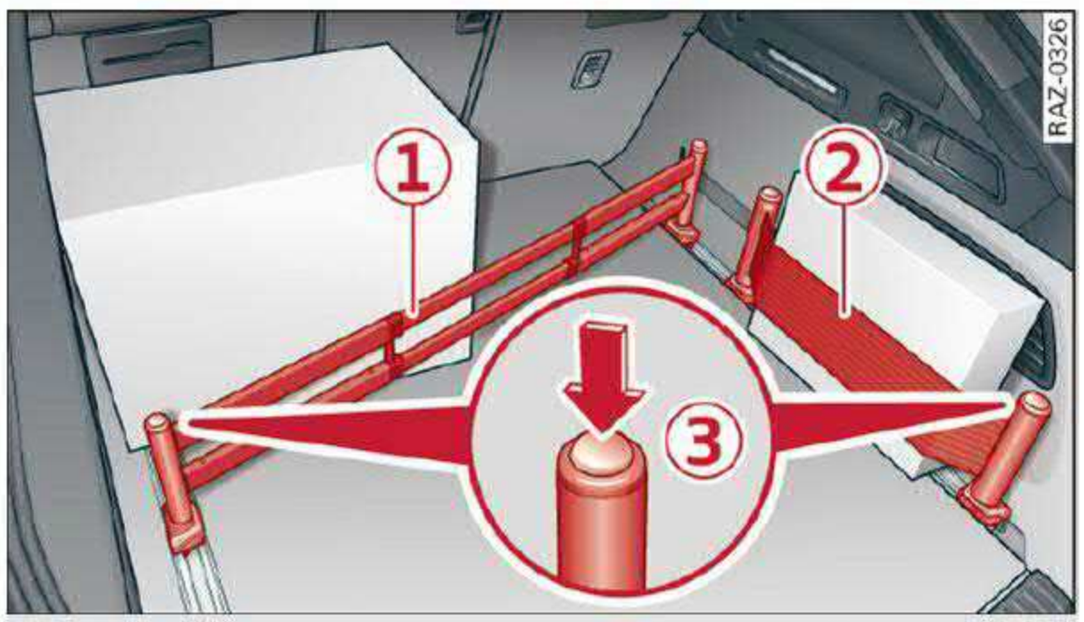


Fig. 89 Luggage compartment: securing attachments

The telescoping rod (1) and the securing strap (2) help to prevent objects from sliding around in the luggage compartment.

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 79*.

- ▸ Insert the movable tie-downs ⇨ *page 84*.

- ▸ Press the button ③ on the retainers and place them on the tie-downs. Make sure the brackets are locked into place.
- ▸ Slide the tie-downs into the desired position.
- ▸ Press the button to tighten the securing strap.

Tips

Store the movable tie-downs and the fixture set in the openings under the front cargo floor, if necessary.

Folding cargo mat

Applies to: vehicles with cargo mat

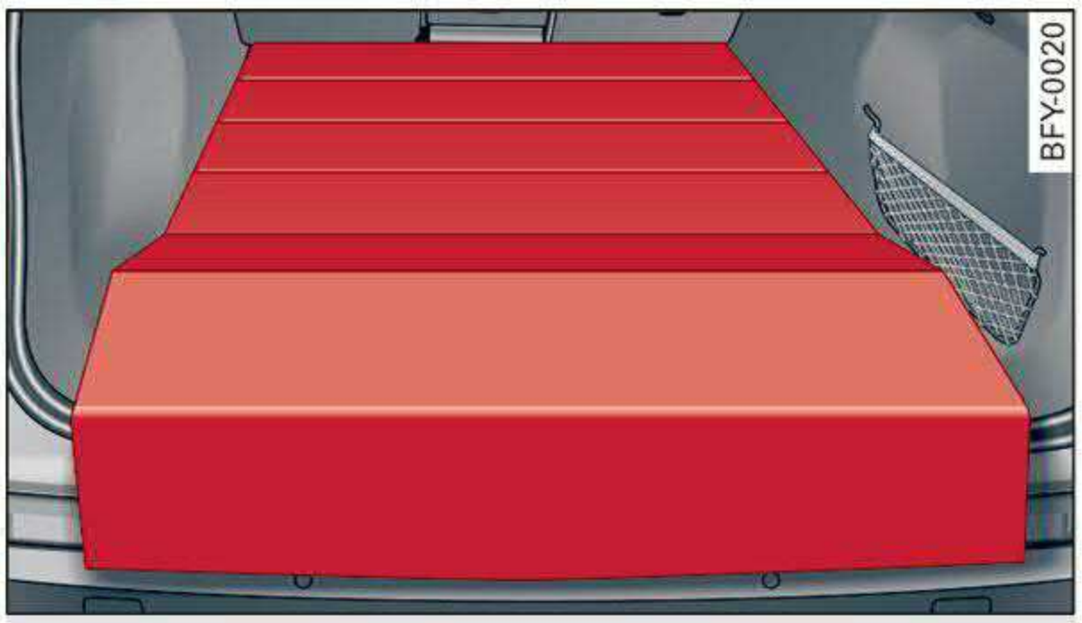


Fig. 90 Luggage compartment: cargo mat spread out lengthwise

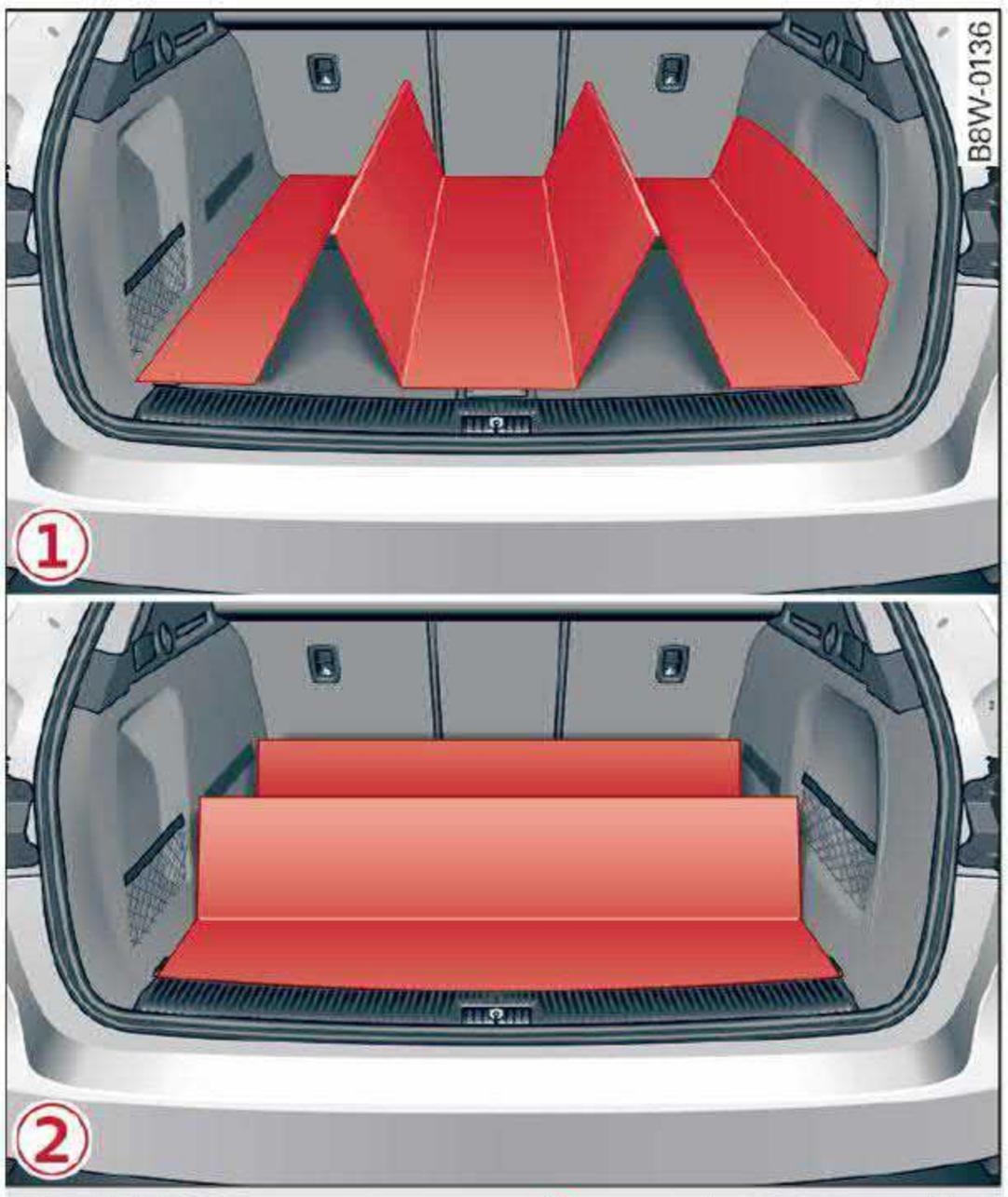


Fig. 91 Luggage compartment: ① crosswise cargo mat / ② lengthwise cargo mat

The cargo mat protects the luggage compartment and bumper from dirt and scratches. You can use both sides of the cargo mat.

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 79*.

- ▸ To protect the luggage compartment and bumper when loading and unloading objects, lay the cargo mat out lengthwise with the backrests folded down or upright ⇨ *fig. 90*.
- ▸ After loading or unloading, fold up the cargo mat and close the luggage compartment lid.
- ▸ To also protect the side trim panels, lay the cargo mat out widthwise.
- ▸ To divide the loading surfaces into separate sections ⇨ *fig. 91*, fold the cargo mat.
- ▸ Only store the cargo mat if it is dry.

You can save room by storing the cargo mat at the sides of the luggage compartment.

Reversible cargo floor

Applies to: vehicles with reversible cargo floor



Fig. 92 Luggage compartment: cargo area floor



Fig. 93 Luggage compartment: cargo area floor reversed

You can transport dirty and damp objects in the reversible cargo area floor. ▶

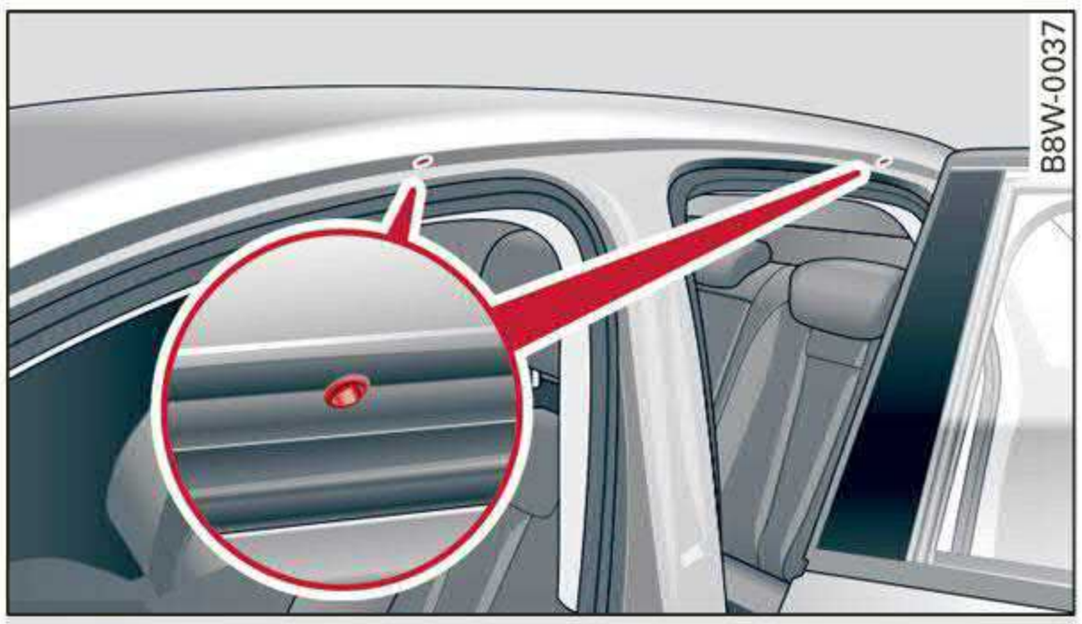
Reversing the cargo floor

- Lift up the cargo floor using the handle ⇨ *fig. 92*.
- Flip the cargo floor over and install it ⇨ *fig. 93*.

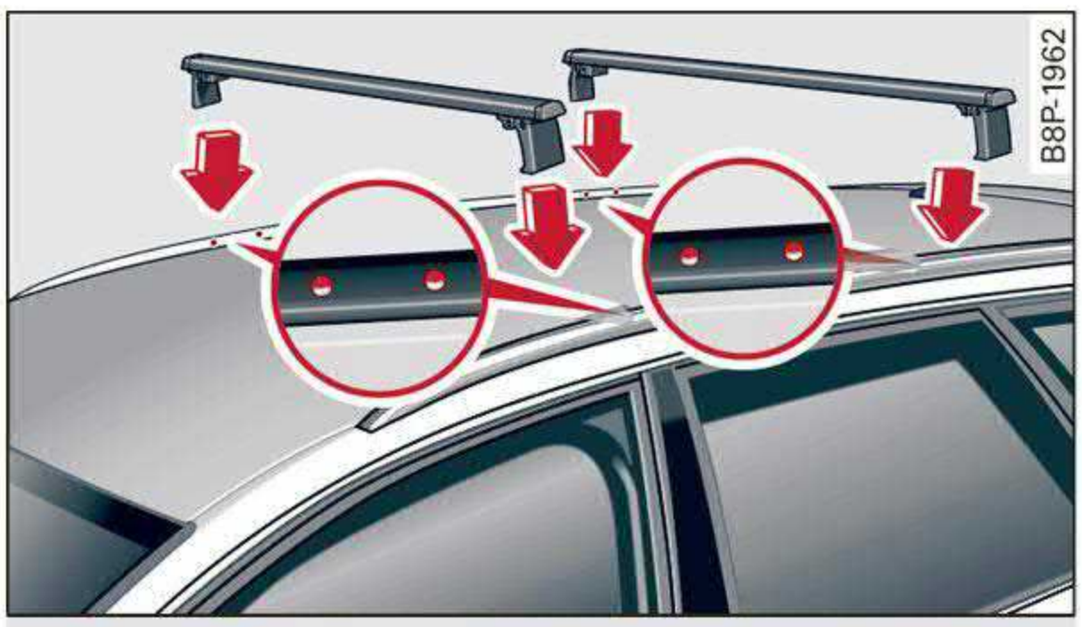
Roof rack

General information

Applies to: vehicles with roof rack mount



Applies to: sedan
Fig. 94 Roof: mounting points



Applies to: allroad
Fig. 95 Roof rail: mounting points

If luggage or cargo is to be carried on the roof, you must observe the following:

– These roof racks are the basis for a complete roof rack system. Only roof racks that are suitable for your vehicle may be used. Roof racks and attachments from the Audi Genuine Accessories program are recommended.
– Make sure the roof rack is mounted on the vehicle only at the specified locations.
– Note the permitted axle load, permitted total weight, and permitted roof load of your vehicle ⇨ *page 278*. The roof load is the total of the weight of the roof rack, the attachments and the cargo you are carrying. However, you must also note the permitted load of the carrier system being used.

WARNING

– Follow the installation instructions provided with the roof rack system. If you do not secure the roof rack system and objects on the roof correctly, they could come loose from the vehicle and cause an accident.
– The risk of an accident increases when using a roof rack system, because it changes the driving characteristics by shifting the center of gravity and/or the increasing the surface area exposed to wind. You may need to adapt your driving style and speed to the current conditions.

Note

Make sure that the open luggage compartment lid and the tilting/sliding sunroof* or panoramic glass roof* do not come into contact with objects on the roof.

For the sake of the environment

Energy usage will increase because of the increased wind resistance. Remove the roof rack when you are no longer using it.

Warm and cold

Climate control system

Description

Your vehicle has a deluxe automatic climate control system with 3 zones where the temperature, air distribution, and air supply can be set separately on the left front side, the right front side, and in the rear.

The climate control system warms, cools and removes humidity from the air in the vehicle interior. It is the most effective when the windows and panoramic glass roof* are closed. If there is a build-up of heat inside the vehicle, ventilation can help to speed up the cooling process.

In all heating mode functions, except for defrost, the blower only switches to a higher speed once the refrigerant has reached a sufficient temperature.

Pollutant filter

The pollutant filter removes pollutants such as dust and pollen from the air.

For the sake of the environment

Energy can be saved by switching off the A/C mode.

Tips

– To prevent interference with the heating and cooling output and to prevent the windows from fogging over, the air intake in front of the windshield must be free of ice, snow, and leaves.
– Condensation from the cooling system can drip and form a puddle of water under the vehicle. This is normal and does not mean there is a leak.
– The energy management system may temporarily switch off certain functions, such as the seat heating* or rear window defogger. These systems are available again as soon as the energy supply has been restored.
– The climate control settings are automatically stored and assigned to the vehicle key that is in use.

8W1012721BB

3-zone deluxe automatic climate control

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with 3-zone deluxe automatic climate control system

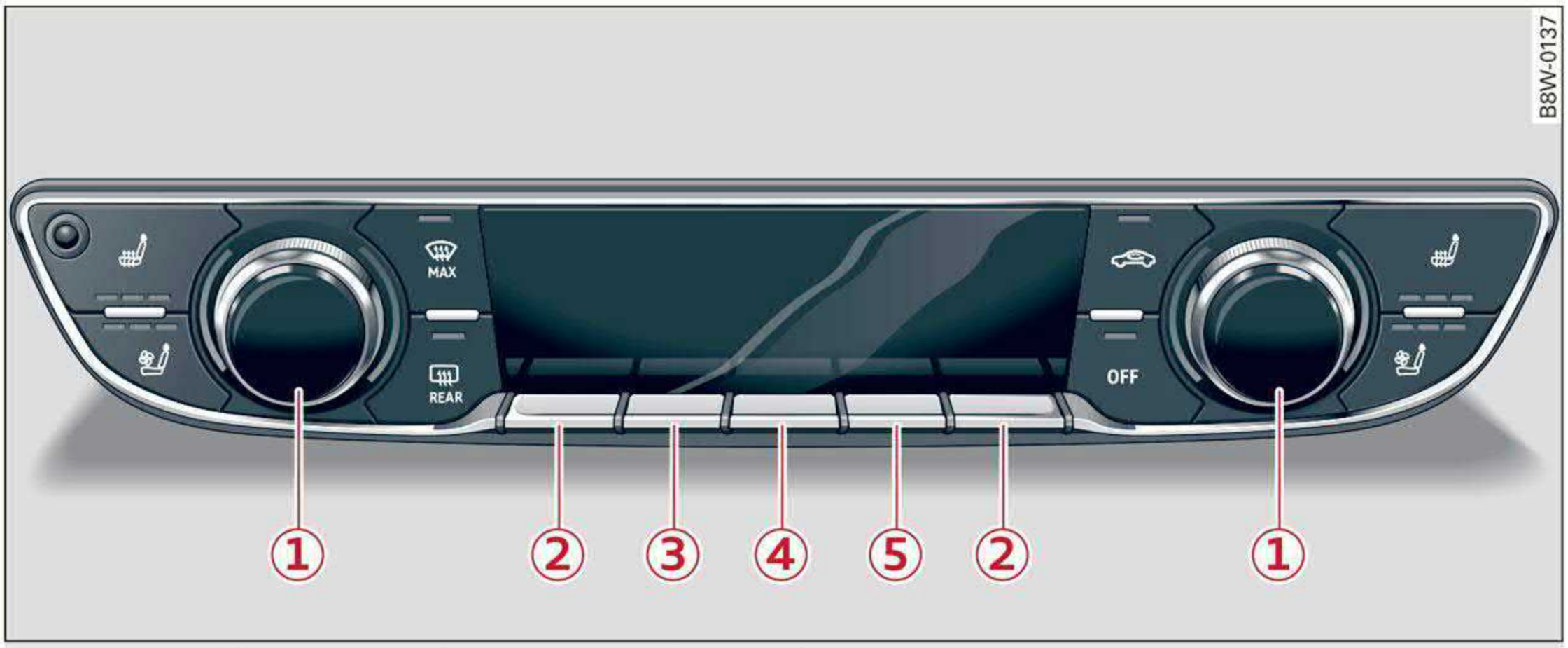


Fig. 96 3-zone deluxe automatic climate control: cockpit controls



Fig. 97 3-zone deluxe automatic climate control system: rear controls

Press the knobs, buttons or rocker switches to turn the functions on or off. When the function is switched on, the LED in the respective button or knob turns on ⇨ *fig. 96*.

Some rocker switches can be assigned with multiple functions. The various functions can be activated by pressing on the switch multiple times. On right-hand drive vehicles*, the functions of the rocker switches ③ and ⑤ are reversed.

The driver and front passenger settings can be adjusted separately. You can adjust the settings for the rear of the vehicle using the controls in the rear ⇨ *fig. 97*.

OFF Climate control system

The OFF button switches the climate control system on or off. It also switches on when you press another button or a knob. Airflow from outside is blocked when the climate control system is switched off.

A/C / A/C MAX* / A/C eco* Cooling mode

You can switch the respective cooling mode on and off with the rocker switch ③.

The cooling mode only functions with the blower turned on. The air is cooled and dehumidified in cooling mode. Otherwise the windows can fog ▶

up. The cooling mode switches off automatically at low outside temperatures.

If you activate A/C ON, the cooling mode will be automatically regulated. A/C OFF switches cooling mode off.

If you activate A/C MAX*, the cooling mode will operate with maximum output. To reduce unnecessary energy usage, only use this function briefly.

If you activate A/C eco*, the climate control system will operate in energy-saving mode.

Recirculation mode

In recirculation mode, the air inside the vehicle is circulated and filtered. This prevents the unfiltered air outside the vehicle from entering the vehicle interior ⇨ ⚠.

Pressing the button switches recirculation mode on or off manually. You can also switch the recirculation mode off by pressing the knob ① or the MAX button.

AUTO Automatic mode

Automatic mode maintains a constant temperature inside the vehicle. Air temperature, airflow and air distribution are controlled automatically. You can switch automatic mode on or off by pressing the knob ①.

Temperature

You can adjust the temperature between 60°F (+16°C) and 84°F (+28°C) by turning the knob ①. If outside of this range, **LO** or **HI** will appear in the climate control system display. In both settings, the climate control runs constantly at the maximum cooling or heating level. The temperature is not regulated.

The temperature can be adjusted in the rear using the rear controls ⇨ *fig. 97*.

Blower

You can adjust the volume of air generated by the blower to your preference using the rocker switch ④. The blower should always run at a low setting to prevent the windows from fogging and to ensure a continuous exchange of air inside the vehicle. To have the blower regulated automatically, press one of the knobs ①.

Air distribution

You can use the rocker switches ② to adjust the vents where the air will flow out of. Press the rocker switches ② repeatedly until the desired air distribution setting is displayed in the climate control system controls. To have the air distribution regulated automatically, press one of the knobs ①.

SYNC Synchronization

Use the rocker switch ⑤ to select the function. When synchronization is switched on, the settings for the driver's side are applied to the front passenger's side and the rear (except for seat heating/ventilation*). When the settings on the front passenger's side or in the rear are changed, the synchronization is automatically switched off and **3-ZONE** appears in the display.

SET REAR Function

Use the rocker switch ⑤ to select the function. When the function is switched on, you can adjust all settings for the rear using the climate control system controls in the cockpit. The rear climate control system controls cannot be operated at the same time. This function switches off automatically after a certain period of time or after leaving the menu.

Seat heating*

The seat heating temperature can be set at multiple levels. Press the button once to switch on the highest level. Press the button again to decrease the temperature one level at a time. The seat heating is off when all of the LEDs are off.

Seat ventilation*

The seat ventilation intensity can be set to multiple levels. Press the button once to switch on the highest level. Press the button again to decrease the intensity one level at a time. The seat ventilation is off when all of the LEDs are off.

MAX Defrosting

The windshield and side windows are defrosted or cleared of condensation as quickly as possible. ▶

The maximum amount of air flows mainly from the vents below the windshield. Recirculation mode switches off. The temperature should be set at +72°F (+22°C) or higher. The temperature is controlled automatically.

You can switch the defroster on or off using the MAX button. You can switch the function off by pressing a knob (1).

REAR Rear window defogger

The rear window defogger only operates when the engine is running. It switches off automatically after 10 to 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To prevent the rear window defogger from switching off automatically, press and hold REAR for more than three seconds. This is stored until the ignition is switched off.

Vents

You can open or close the center and rear vents in the cockpit and the vents in the rear center console using the ridged thumbwheels. The levers adjust the direction of the airflow from the vents.

Residual heat

You can activate the residual heat function when the ignition is switched off by pressing the knob (1) (left side). The residual heat from the coolant is used to heat the vehicle interior. The residual heat function switches off automatically after about 15 minutes.

WARNING

– You should not use the recirculation mode for an extended period of time, because no fresh air is drawn in and the windows can fog when cooling mode is switched off. This increases the risk of an accident.
– Individuals with reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature could develop burns when using the seat heating* function. To reduce the risk of injury, these individuals should not use seat heating*.

Note

To reduce the risk of damage to the seat heating* elements, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy pressure on one area of the seat.

Additional settings

Applies to: vehicles with 3-zone deluxe automatic climate control system

You can adjust additional settings.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Climate control**.

Auto recirculation

When switched on, automatic recirculation controls the recirculation mode automatically. You must press the MAX button if fog forms on the windows.

Steering wheel heating

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with steering wheel heating

▸ Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel to switch the steering wheel heating on and off.

Tips

The steering wheel heating settings are stored automatically and assigned to the vehicle key that is in use.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with steering wheel heating

Steering wheel heating: on/Steering wheel heating: off

This message appears if you switched the steering wheel heating on or off by pressing the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Steering wheel heating: malfunction! See owner's manual

If this message appears, there is a malfunction. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Fluids in the A/C system

Refrigerant in the A/C system

The sticker in the engine compartment provides information about the type and amount of refrigerant used in the vehicle's A/C system. The sticker is located in the front section of the motor compartment or at the front or back of the hood.

Symbol	Meaning
	Warning: the A/C system must only be serviced by qualified technicians.
	Refrigerant type
	Lubricant type
	Refer to the service information (only available for authorized Audi dealers or authorized Audi Service Facilities)
	The A/C system must only be serviced by qualified technicians.
	Flammable refrigerant
	Make sure all components are disposed of correctly and never install components in the vehicle that have been removed from old vehicles or taken from recycling.

Lubricant in the A/C system

The exact specification and amount of lubricant in the A/C system can be obtained from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility or at https://erwin.audiusa.com/erwin.

WARNING

To ensure secure and safe operation, the A/C system must only be serviced by qualified technicians.

Tips

- Never repair the A/C system evaporator with components from old vehicles or from recycling.
- New replacement evaporators for portable A/C systems must be certified and labeled as such, so that they comply with the SAE standard J2842 HFO-1234yf and R744.

8W1012721BB

Driving

Starting the vehicle

Convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key



Fig. 98 Center console: starting the engine

Requirement: the key must be in the vehicle.

Starting the engine

- ▸ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine will start.

Equipment that uses a lot of electricity is switched off temporarily when you start the engine. If the engine does not start immediately, the starting procedure stops automatically after a short time. If this is the case, repeat the starting procedure after approximately 30 seconds.

Stopping the engine

- ▸ Bring the vehicle to a full stop.
- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine will switch off.

Applies to: vehicles with steering lock: The steering is locked when you turn off the engine and open the driver's door. The steering lock helps prevent vehicle theft. “P” must be engaged on vehicles with an automatic transmission.

Stopping the engine in an emergency

If necessary in an emergency, the engine can also be stopped while driving using the emergency off function*.

- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button twice in a row or press and hold it one time.

Switching on and off

If you would like to switch the ignition on or off without starting the engine, follow these steps:

- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button without pressing the brake pedal.

Switching the ignition off automatically

To prevent the vehicle battery from draining, the ignition and possibly the exterior lighting may switch off automatically.

Requirements:

– The Start/Stop system must have stopped the engine.
– You must have left the vehicle for longer than 30 seconds.
– The ignition must be switched on.

Among other indicators, the system detects that you have left the vehicle based on the following factors:

– The driver's door has been opened.
– The driver's safety belt has been unbuckled.
– The brake pedal is not being pressed.

The ignition will also be switched off after 30 minutes or if you lock the vehicle from the outside.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of asphyxiation, never allow the engine to run in confined spaces.
– Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. Switching it off before the vehicle has stopped may impair the function of the brake booster and power steering. You would then need to use more force to steer and brake the vehicle. The fact that you cannot steer and brake as usual may increase the risk of accidents and serious injuries.
– Always select the “P” selector lever position when parking the vehicle; otherwise, the vehicle could roll away.

Note

– Avoid high engine speed, full throttle, and heavy engine load if the engine has not ▸

reached operating temperature yet. You could damage the engine.
– If the engine has been under heavy load for an extended period of time, heat builds up in the engine compartment after the engine is switched off and there is a risk of damaging the engine. For this reason, let the engine run at idle for approximately two minutes before shutting it off.

Tips

– Brief noises are normal when starting and stopping the vehicle and are no cause for concern.
– For up to 10 minutes after stopping the engine, the radiator fan may turn on again automatically or it may continue to run, even if the ignition is switched off.
– It may not be possible to start the vehicle in extremely low temperatures.
– Power will be fully available once the engine is at operating temperature.

Messages

Engine start system: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the engine start system. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Remote control key: key not detected. Is the key still in the vehicle?

The vehicle key was removed from the vehicle while the engine is running. If the vehicle key is no longer in the vehicle, you cannot switch the ignition on or start the engine once you stop it. You also cannot lock the vehicle from the outside.

Remote control key: hold back of key against the designated area. See owner's manual

The battery in the vehicle key may be drained or there may be a malfunction. To start the vehicle, you must also hold the vehicle key against the location shown ⇨ *page 92, fig. 98*.

If the malfunction remains, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

When driving

Starting to drive, stopping, and parking

Starting from a stop

▸ Press and hold the brake pedal.
▸ Start the engine.
▸ Select a gear.
▸ Release the parking brake.
▸ Release the brake pedal. The vehicle may roll.
▸ Press the accelerator pedal to accelerate.

Stopping and parking

▸ Bring the vehicle to a full stop and press and hold the brake pedal.
▸ Set the parking brake.
▸ Select the “P” selector lever position to secure the vehicle from rolling away.
▸ Turn the steering wheel when parking on inclines so that the wheels will roll into the curb if the vehicle starts moving.
▸ Switch off the ignition before leaving the vehicle.

On hills, activate the parking brake first and then shift into the "P" selector lever position. This prevents too much stress from being placed on the locking mechanism.

WARNING

– Always set the parking brake when leaving your vehicle, even if for a short period of time. If the parking brake is not set, the vehicle could roll away, increasing the risk of an accident.
– Do not leave your vehicle unattended while the engine is running, because this increases the risk of an accident.
– If the parking brake is set, it can release automatically when the accelerator pedal is pressed. To reduce the risk of an accident, do not inadvertently press the accelerator pedal and always shift into “P” when the vehicle is stopped. ▶

– If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the key with you. This is especially important when leaving persons or animals in the vehicle. Otherwise, the vehicle could start unintentionally, the parking brake could release, or electronic equipment could activate, which increases the risk of an accident.
– No persons or animals should be left in a locked vehicle. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to enter the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.
– If you do not begin driving immediately after releasing the brake pedal, your vehicle may begin to roll backward. Press the brake pedal or set the parking brake immediately.

Note

If you have to stop on an incline, always press the brake pedal to hold the vehicle in place to reduce the risk of the vehicle rolling backward. Do not try to hold the vehicle in place by pressing and holding the accelerator pedal. The transmission can overheat, which increases the risk of damage.

Hill hold assist

If you take your foot off of the brake pedal when driving on hills, the braking force will be held for several seconds. At that time, you can start driving without the vehicle rolling backward.

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed, the engine must be on, and the vehicle must be traveling uphill.

▸ To activate hill hold assist, press and hold the brake pedal for several seconds while the vehicle is stationary.

WARNING

– If you do not begin driving immediately after releasing the brake pedal, your vehicle may begin to roll backward. Press the brake pedal or set the parking brake immediately.
– The hill hold assist cannot hold the vehicle on inclines in every scenario (for example, on slippery or icy ground).

Gears and driving programs

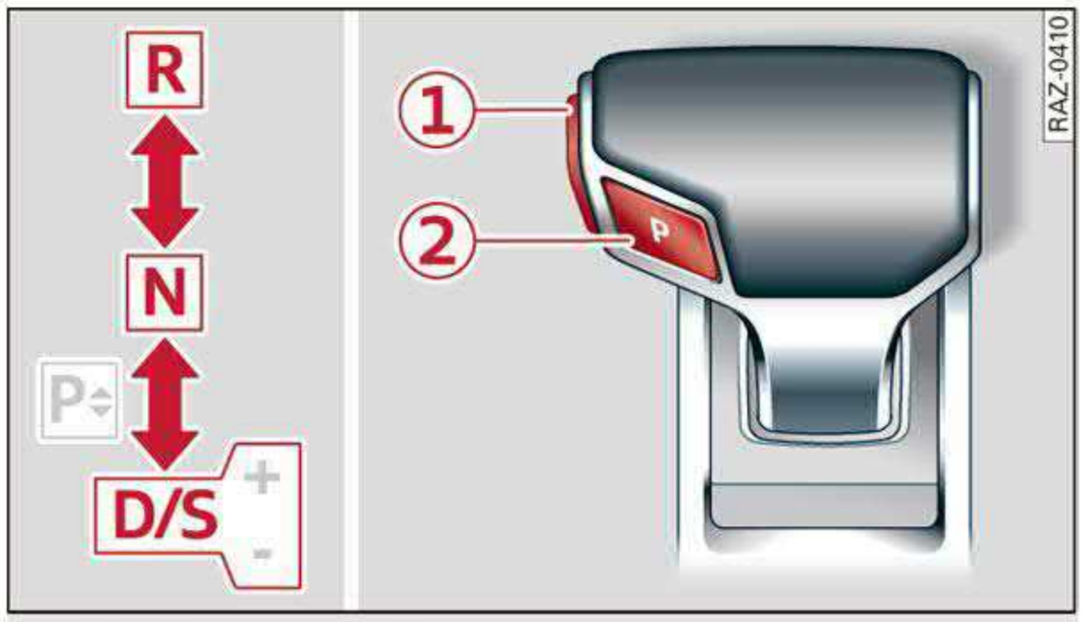


Fig. 99 Center console: selector lever

The automatic transmission shifts automatically depending on the selected gear and the current driving style. When driving with a moderate driving style, upshifting early and downshifting late will help to improve fuel economy. When driving with a sporty driving style, the transmission permits higher RPMs.

The gears are displayed next to the selector lever.

– **P** (Park)
– **R** (Reverse)
– **N** (Neutral)
– **D** (Drive)

Selecting a gear

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

– Bring the vehicle to a full stop and press the brake pedal.
– Press the release button (1) on the selector lever.
– To select the nearest gear, move the selector lever forward or back until you feel the first pressure point.
– To skip a gear (for example, move from “D” to “R”), move the selector lever past the pressure point in the desired direction.
– The label next to the selector lever for the selected gear will light up.

“N” (Neutral) gear

In the “N” gear, power is not transmitted to the driving wheels. Use the “N” gear in a car wash (with conveyor belts), for example. ▸

If you unintentionally select “N” while driving (faster than 1 mph (2 km/h)), you can also shift back to “D” without pressing the brake pedal.

For safety reasons, the vehicle cannot be locked when the transmission is in the "N” gear.

“P” (Park) gear

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

The vehicle is secured from rolling away by the parking lock when in the “P” gear.

– Bring the vehicle to a full stop and press the brake pedal.
– Press the “P” button ② on the selector lever.
– The “P” next to the selector lever will light up.

“P” engages automatically if you switch the engine off while the “D” or “R” gear is selected. If you switch the engine off in “N”, “P” will engage automatically after approximately 30 minutes.

If you want to switch from “P” to “D” or “R”, the engine must be running.

If you cannot shift out of “P”, for example because the vehicle has no power, you may need to use the emergency release for the parking lock ⇨ *page 97*.

Selecting a driving program

Various driving programs can be selected when in the “D” gear. The programs influence when the transmission shifts and how the accelerator pedal responds.

The selected driving program is displayed in the instrument cluster.

– **D** (Drive): normal driving mode
– **S** (Sport): sporty driving mode

If you select the **Dynamic** mode in Audi drive select*, the “S” driving program will be activated. When the ignition is switched off, the driving program may be reset to “D”.

To switch between the current driving program and “S”, push the selector lever toward the rear.

WARNING

– Before starting to drive, check if the desired gear is displayed next to the selector lever.
– Always secure your vehicle from rolling away. Press the brake pedal or shift to “P”. When leaving the vehicle, also set the parking brake.
– Power is still transmitted to the wheels when the engine is running at idle. To prevent the vehicle from “creeping”, you must keep your foot on the brake in all selector lever positions (except "P" and "N") when the engine is running.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, do not press the accelerator pedal when changing gears if the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.
– Never select the “R" or "P” gears while driving. Doing so could cause an accident.
– The vehicle can roll even if the ignition is switched off.

Tips

If you shift between “D” and “R” within one second, you do not need to press the brake pedal. This makes it possible to “rock” if it is stuck, for example.

8W1012721BB

Manual shifting



Fig. 100 Center console: shifting manually with the selector lever



Fig. 101 Steering wheel: shift paddles*

You can shift the gears manually when in “D” mode. The transmission must be in tiptronic mode.

Shifting with the selector lever

You can shift into manual shifting mode while the vehicle is stationary or while driving.

- ▸ To switch to manual shifting mode, tilt the selector lever toward the front passenger's side ⇨ *fig. 100*. “M” will be displayed in the instrument cluster.
- ▸ Upshifting: push the selector lever forward ⊕.
- ▸ Downshifting: push the selector lever toward the rear ⊖.
- ▸ To switch back to automatic mode, tilt the selector lever toward the driver's side.

Shifting with the shift paddles

Applies to: vehicles with shift paddles

- ▸ Upshifting: press the ⊕ shift paddle ⇨ *fig. 101*.
- ▸ Downshifting: press the ⊖ shift paddle.
- ▸ To switch back to automatic mode, press and hold the ⊕ shift paddle or push the selector lever toward the rear.

If you stop using the shift paddles temporarily, the transmission will switch back to automatic mode. To keep shifting manually, tilt the selector lever toward the front passenger's side.

Tips

- – The transmission only allows manual shifting when the engine speed is within the permitted range.
- – The transmission automatically shifts up or down before critical engine speed is reached.

Accelerator pedal

You can accelerate the vehicle using the accelerator pedal. If you press the accelerator pedal all the way down, the engine’s full power will be used and you will reach maximum acceleration, also called “kick-down”.

WARNING

The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could swerve on slick or slippery road surfaces when using kick-down, which increases the risk of an accident.

Manually releasing the parking lock

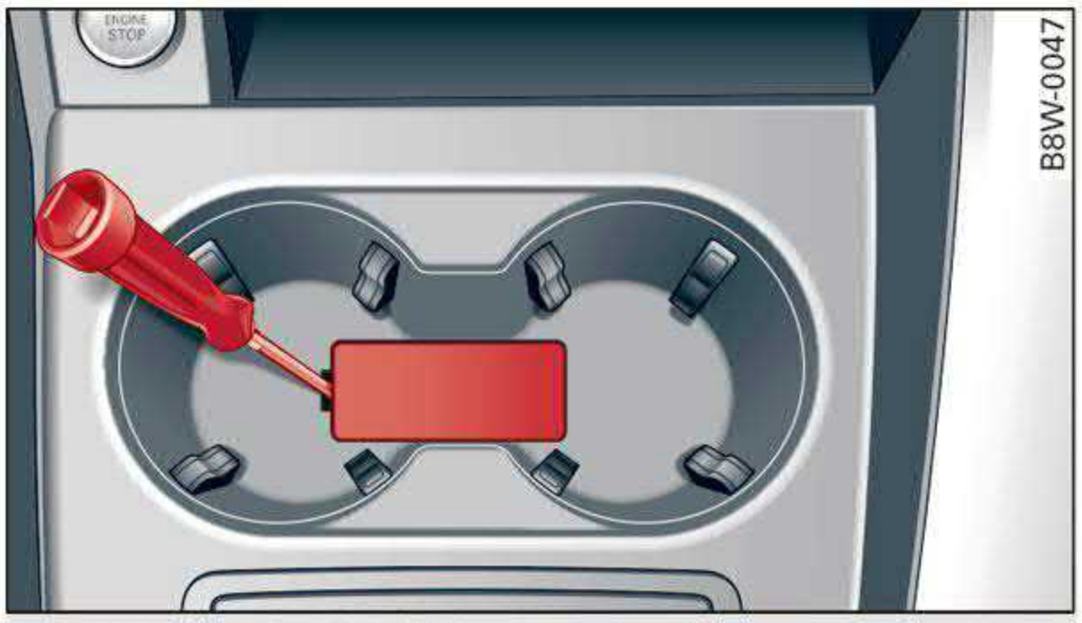


Fig. 102 Front cup holder: removing the cover

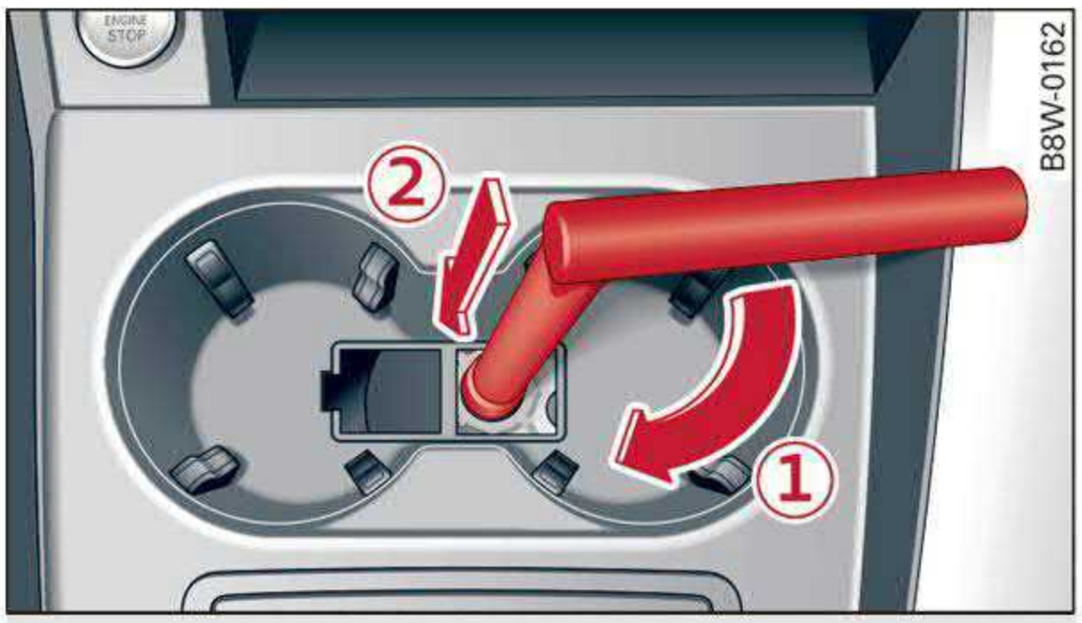


Fig. 103 Front cup holder: parking lock emergency release

The emergency release is located in the front cup holder under a cover.

You will need the screwdriver and the socket wrench from the vehicle tool kit in order to release ⇨ *page 253*. Use the flat side of the reversible screwdriver blade.

You need a narrow flat-head screwdriver to release.

Releasing the parking lock using the emergency release

- ▸ Set the parking brake to secure your vehicle from rolling away. If this is not possible, secure your vehicle from rolling using another method.
- ▸ Remove the rubber mat.
- ▸ Pry the cover off the opening using the screwdriver inserted in the slot.
- ▸ Insert the socket wrench from the vehicle tool kit into the opening.
- ▸ Turn the socket wrench clockwise until it stops ① and press it downward until it locks into place ②.
- ▸ Leave the socket wrench inserted.

Resetting the parking lock

- ▸ Press the brake pedal and start the engine.
- ▸ Keep the brake pedal pressed and engage the following selector lever positions one after the other: "N", "D", and back to "N".
- ▸ Turn the engine off again.
- ▸ Grasp the socket wrench with both hands and carefully pull it upward to remove.
- ▸ Reinsert the cover and rubber mat.

WARNING

- The parking lock may only be released using the emergency release if the parking brake is set. If it is not working, secure the vehicle from rolling using the brake pedal or other suitable means, such as blocking a front and a rear wheel. An unsecured vehicle may roll away, which increases the risk of an accident.
- Only activate the emergency release while on a level surface or a slight slope.
- To reduce the risk of an accident, you must not drive when the emergency release is activated.

Note

Due to the risk of damage, carefully remove the socket wrench when you reset the parking lock.

Messages

Transmission: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle

Do not continue driving. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in a safe location and secure it so it does not roll. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Transmission: too hot. Please stop vehicle

Do not continue driving. Select "P" and contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Transmission: too hot. Please adapt driving style ▶

The transmission temperature has increased significantly. Drive very cautiously or take a break from driving until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light turns off.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving. See owner's manual

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. You may continue driving. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility soon to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving with limited function. Please contact Service

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. This mode only shifts into certain gears or may no longer shift at all. The engine may stall. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving with limited function. No reverse gear

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. This mode only shifts into certain gears or may no longer shift at all. The engine may stall. You cannot engage the reverse gear. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving in D until engine is off

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. If you turn the engine off, you will not be able to select any other gears after restarting the engine. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Danger of rolling away! P not possible. Please apply parking brake

– The parking lock was released using the emergency release ⇨ *page 97*. Or
– The parking lock can no longer be engaged. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Selector lever: malfunction! You can continue driving. Please contact Service

There is a system malfunction in the selector lever. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

P button: malfunction! Auto P when engine off. Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the "P" button on the selector lever. The “P” gear is automatically engaged when you turn off the engine. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Selector lever: malfunction! Gear change only possible using both shift paddles

There is a system malfunction in the selector lever. You can continue driving with restricted function. The selector lever is not working. Gears can only be selected by tapping both shift paddles at the same time when the vehicle is stationary. The “P” gear is automatically engaged when you turn off the engine. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Move selector lever to automatic position

There is a malfunction in the tiptronic mode. End tiptronic mode by pushing the selector lever to the left into the "D/S" position.

Drive system

Breaking in

A new vehicle must be broken in within the first 1,000 miles (1,500 km) so that all moving parts work smoothly together, which helps to increase the service life of the engine and other drive components.

Do not drive higher than two-thirds of the maximum permitted engine RPM during the first 600 ▶

miles (1,000 km) and do not use full acceleration. The engine can be increased RPM gradually during the next 300 miles (500 km).

Efficient and environmentally-friendly driving

Your driving style greatly influences the amount of fuel and energy consumed, the environmental impact, and the wear on the engine, brakes, and tires. Note the following information for efficient and environmentally-conscious driving:

- Turn off electrical equipment that is not needed, for example seat heating*.
- Anticipate upcoming traffic situations while driving to avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
- Avoid driving at high speeds.
- Avoid adding extra weight to the vehicle if possible, for example by not leaving roof racks or bike racks installed when they are not needed.
- Make sure the tire pressure is correct.
- Have maintenance performed regularly on the vehicle.
- Do not drive with winter tires during the summer.
- Do not let the engine run while the vehicle parked.
- Use the Start/Stop system.
- Utilize the engine braking effect.
- Avoid driving short distances when possible.

Tips

The amount of noise produced by the vehicle can increase significantly when driving with a sporty style. Show respect to others around you and the environment with the way you operate your vehicle, especially at night.

Energy management

Your vehicle is equipped with an intelligent energy management system for distributing electricity. This significantly improves the starting ability and increases the vehicle battery life.

Tips

- If you drive short distances frequently, the vehicle battery may not charge enough while driving. As a result, convenience functions for electrical equipment may be temporarily unavailable.
- The vehicle battery will gradually drain if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time, or if electrical equipment is used when the engine is not running. To ensure that the vehicle can still be started, the electrical equipment will be limited or switched off.

Messages

Drive system: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle

There is a malfunction in the drive system. The brake booster and the power steering may stop working. Stop the vehicle immediately or as soon as possible and do not continue driving. Have the problem corrected by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Drive system: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the drive system. Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

Start/Stop system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

The Start/Stop system can help increase fuel economy and reduce CO_2 emissions.

In Start/Stop mode, the engine shuts off automatically when stopped, for example at a traffic light. The ignition and important assist systems such as power steering and the brake booster will remain available during the Stop phase. The engine will restart automatically when needed.

The Start/Stop system is automatically activated once the ignition is switched on. ▶

Switching the Start/Stop system off and on

The Ⓐ OFF button is located above the selector lever in the center console. The LED in the button turns on when the function is switched off.

▸ Press Ⓐ OFF to switch on or off.

If you switch the system off during a Stop phase, the engine will start again automatically.

Basic requirements

– The driver's door and hood must be closed.
– "P", "N", or "D" must be engaged.
– The steering wheel must not be turned far in either direction.
– The vehicle must have driven faster than 2 mph (3 km/h) since the last time it stopped.
– The vehicle is not in trailer mode.

Note

Always switch the Start/Stop system off when driving through water ⇨ *page 100*.

Tips

– Depending on the driving situation, the engine may already stop when **coasting** before the vehicle has come to a complete stop [1)].
– If you select the "D" position after shifting into reverse, the vehicle must be driven faster than 6 mph (10 km/h) in order for the Start/Stop system to become active again. This makes it possible to maneuver without stopping the engine.

Stopping and starting the engine

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

▸ Press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle has stopped. The Ⓐ indicator light appears in the instrument cluster once the engine stops automatically.
▸ The engine starts again when you remove your foot from the brake pedal. The indicator light turns off.

Tips

– Press the brake pedal during a Stop phase to keep the vehicle from rolling.
– The ignition will turn off if you press the START ENGINE STOP button during a Stop phase.
– If you leave the vehicle briefly during a Stop phase, the driver's door must be closed and the safety belt buckled for the engine to be able to restart.
– You can control if the engine will stop or not by reducing or increasing the amount of force you use to press the brake pedal. For example, if you only lightly press on the brake pedal in stop-and-go traffic or when turning, the engine will not switch off when the vehicle is stationary. If you press the brake pedal harder, the engine will switch off.

Starting and stopping the engine automatically

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

The system checks if certain conditions are met before and during the Stop phase, and determines if the engine stops and how long it remains stopped. For example, if power usage is high, the engine will not be stopped. Along with other conditions, the following factors influence the automatic engine start or stop:

– Environmental conditions (slopes, inclines, elevation, temperature)
– Battery (charge status, temperature, power usage)
– Engine temperature
– Assist systems
– Driving behavior

Depending on the engine, the indicator light may appear if the engine is not stopped.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

Drive system: please start the vehicle manually ▶

1) In certain countries.

This message appears when specific conditions are not met during a Stop phase. The Start/Stop system will not be able to restart the engine. The engine must be started with the START ENGINE STOP button.

Vehicle starting system: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the Start/Stop system. Drive the vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Service Facility as soon as possible to have the malfunction corrected.

Brakes

General information

You can apply the vehicle's brakes using the brake pedal.

Operating noise

Noises may occur when braking depending on the speed, braking force, and outside conditions such as temperature and humidity.

Braking effect

The response time from the brakes depends on the weather and environmental conditions. To ensure the optimal braking effect, the brake system is cleaned at regular intervals. This is done by applying the brake pads to the brake rotors for a short period of time when driving at high speeds when the windshield wipers are switched on.

If the brake system becomes damp, for example after driving in heavy rain, the braking effect may be delayed. Other factors that could temporarily increase the response time of the brakes include:

– Wet conditions
– Low temperatures, ice, and snow
– Roads covered in salt
– Dirty brake pads

Corrosion

Corrosion may form on the brake rotors if there is no heavy braking, if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time, or if the vehicle is not driven frequently or for long distances. In this case, braking heavily several times while driving at high speeds can clean the brake rotors ⇨ ⚠.

Brake pads

New brake pads do not achieve their full braking effect during the first 250 miles (400 km). They must be "broken in" first. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by pressing firmly on the brake pedal. Avoid heavy braking during the break-in period.

Brake pad wear depends largely on the way the vehicle is driven and on operating conditions. Brake pad wear increases when driving frequently in the city or short distances or when using a very sporty driving style.

Ceramic brakes

Applies to: vehicles with ceramic brakes

Ceramic brakes provide excellent deceleration rates.

The break-in period for new ceramic brakes may be significantly longer than for standard brake rotors. Due to the properties of the material, they may cause noises at lower speeds. Ceramic brakes also absorb more moisture in wet conditions. Therefore, there will temporarily be less braking force than when the brakes are dry. You can compensate for this by pressing the brake pedal harder.

⚠ WARNING

– Only apply the brakes for the purpose of cleaning the brake system when road and traffic conditions permit. You must not endanger other road users and increase the risk of an accident.
– Due to the risk of injury, only have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility work on the brake system. Incorrect repairs could impair the function.
– Never let the vehicle roll while the engine is stopped because this increases the risk of an accident.
– During automatic braking maneuvers, the brake pedal may move downward automatically. To reduce the risk of injury, do not place your foot under the brake pedal. ▶

Note

– Never let the brakes “rub” by pressing the pedal lightly when braking is not actually necessary. This can cause the brakes to overheat and increases braking distance and causes wear.
– Observe the important information for driving downhill ⇨ *page 104*. This especially applies when towing a trailer.

Tips

– If you retrofit your vehicle with a front spoiler, wheel covers or similar items, make sure that the air flow to the brakes is not obstructed. Otherwise the brake system can overheat.
– Also refer to the information about brake fluid ⇨ *page 222*.

Messages

BRAKE / Brakes: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle

There is a malfunction in the brake system. If ABS / and also turn on, there is a malfunction in the ABS, ESC, and braking distribution.

Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance. Read and follow the other safety precautions ⇨ ⚠.

BRAKE / Warning! No brake booster function

If the brake booster is not working, you have to use much more force when braking the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

BRAKE / Brake pads: wear limit reached. You can continue driving. Please contact Service

The brake pads are worn. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible to have the malfunction corrected.

Brake booster: limited functionality.You can continue driving. Please contact Service

There is a brake booster malfunction. The brake booster is available, but its effectiveness is reduced. The braking performance may be different compared to the usual performance. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Brake booster: deactivated. See owner's manual

The brake booster remains active for a brief period of time after switching off the ignition. Secure the vehicle from rolling by selecting “P” and setting the parking brake.

Other indicator lights

When you switch the ignition on, the indicator light BRAKE / turns on briefly to check the function. If the indicator light does not turn on, there is a system malfunction.

If BRAKE / stays on, there is a malfunction in the brake system.

– There was a heavy load on the brakes. Follow the instructions in the message to utilize the engine braking effect and to relieve the brakes.

WARNING

If a malfunction occurs in the ABS, ESC, and braking distribution, interventions that stabilize the vehicle will no longer be available. This could cause the vehicle to swerve, which increases the risk that the vehicle will slide. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Electromechanical parking brake

Operating the parking brake

The electromechanical parking brake is used to secure the vehicle from rolling away unintentionally.

The Ⓟ switch is located under the selector lever in the center console. It turns on when the parking brake is set. You can release the parking brake ▶

manually or automatically when you start to drive.

Setting and releasing the parking brake

- ▸ Setting: pull the Ⓟ switch.
- ▸ If PARK / Ⓟ appears, the parking brake is holding the vehicle. You can remove your foot from the brake pedal.
- ▸ Releasing: when the ignition is switched on, press and hold the brake pedal and press the Ⓟ button.

If the red indicator light flashes, the braking force has not built up enough or it has decreased. You can also secure the vehicle by selecting the “P” gear or pressing the brake pedal. Make sure the indicator light is off before you start driving.

Automatically releasing the parking brake when starting to drive

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed and the driver’s safety belt must be fastened.

- ▸ Press the accelerator pedal to start to drive.

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of an accident, always make sure the vehicle is situated safely while stationary.
- If the parking brake is set, it can release automatically when the accelerator pedal is pressed. To reduce the risk of an accident, do not inadvertently press the accelerator pedal and always shift into “P” when the vehicle is stopped.
- If the power supply fails, you cannot set the parking brake once it is released, or release it if it is set. In this case, park the vehicle on level ground and secure it by engaging the "P” gear. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tips

- On steep inclines, especially when in trailer mode, the vehicle may roll backwards unintentionally when starting to drive. To reduces the risk of this happening, pull and hold the Ⓟ switch while pressing the accelerator pedal. If enough drive power has built up at the wheels and the vehicle does not roll backwards, then release the switch to start to drive.
- If you leave the vehicle when “D” or “R” are engaged, the parking brake will be set automatically.
- Noises when the parking brake is set and released are normal and are not a cause for concern.
- The parking brake goes through a self-test cycle at regular intervals when the vehicle is stopped. Any noises associated with this are normal.

Emergency braking function

Emergency braking should only be used in an emergency, if the standard brake pedal is malfunctioning or obstructed. When the emergency braking function is activated, the braking effect is similar to a heavy braking maneuver.

- ▸ Pull and hold the Ⓟ switch while driving.
- ▸ An audio warning signal will sound and emergency braking will begin.
- ▸ If you press the accelerator pedal, emergency braking will be canceled.

WARNING

Heavy braking while driving through curves or in poor road or weather conditions can cause the vehicle to slide or the rear of the vehicle to swerve, which increases the risk of an accident.

Messages

BRAKE / Ⓟ Parking brake: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle. See owner's manual

BRAKE / Ⓟ Parking brake: malfunction! Please release parking brake

If one of the two messages appears, there is a malfunction in the parking brake. If the message appears while stationary, check if the parking brake is released and can be reset. If this is the case, switch the ignition off and back on. ▶

If the message continues to appear, if the parking brake cannot be released, or if the message appears while driving, then stop the vehicle on level ground and shift to “P”. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Parking brake: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. Do not park the vehicle on inclines and shift to “P”.

PARK BRAKE / Parking brake: warning! Vehicle parked too steep

The braking force may not be enough to secure the vehicle from rolling away. Park the vehicle in a place with less of an incline.

PARK BRAKE / Parking brake: applied

The parking brake is set. Press and hold the brake pedal to release the parking brake.

Take over!

The vehicle cannot be held in place automatically. Press the brake pedal to secure the vehicle from rolling away unintentionally.

Special driving situations

Driving uphill and downhill

When driving uphill, downhill, or at high altitudes, note the following information:

– Drive slowly and carefully.
– Do not try to turn around if you cannot safely drive on an incline or hill. Instead, drive in reverse.
– When driving down hills, you can activate the hill descent control if you press the brake pedal while driving in “D” gear. The automatic transmission will select a gear suitable for driving down the hill and will attempt to maintain the speed at which the vehicle was traveling at the time the brake pedal was pressed. Press the brake pedal if necessary. The hill descent control will switch off once the hill levels out or you press the accelerator pedal.
– Utilize the engine braking effect when driving downhill by selecting the “S” driving program ⇨ *page 95*. This especially applies when towing a trailer. This reduces the load on the brakes.
– Brake in intervals and do not press the brake pedal continuously.
– Use the hill hold assist ⇨ *page 105*.

WARNING

– Only drive on inclines that your vehicle is designed to handle. Do not exceed the hill climbing ability of your vehicle. Your vehicle could tip or slide.
– Do not drive at an angle on steep inclines and hills. If your vehicle is about to tip, you must immediately start steering in the direction of the downward slope to reduce the risk of an accident.
– Always be ready to brake when using the hill descent control function.

Offroad driving

Applies to: allroad

Your vehicle is not an offroad vehicle. Note the following points when driving offroad:

– Drive slowly and carefully.
– To reduce the risk of underbody damage, pay attention to the vehicle's ground clearance and drive across raised areas of the ground with the wheels on one side of the vehicle, instead of allowing the center of the vehicle to pass over the raised areas.
– To reduce the risk of becoming stuck, drive through sandy or swampy areas at a steady speed and without stopping, if possible.

If necessary, use the following functions:

– Audi drive select* mode **offroad** ⇨ *page 106*
– Hill descent assist* ⇨ *page 105*
– Limit ESC ⇨ *page 110*

WARNING

Only drive in terrain that is suitable for the vehicle and your driving ability. ▶

For the sake of the environment

Avoid actions that are damaging to the environment. Show respect for the natural environment and remain on marked routes.

Tips

Clean your vehicle after driving offroad. Dirt and stones falling off your vehicle can affect other road users.

Driving through water

If you must drive through water, follow these instructions:

– Check the stability of the ground, the current, and the water depth. If the ground is unstable, there is a strong current, or there are waves, the water must only reach **up to the lower edge of the body at the most**.
– Deactivate the Start/Stop system*.
– Drive carefully and no faster than at walking speeds to prevent the front of the vehicle from creating waves, because they could splash above the lower edge of the body. Oncoming vehicles could also create waves.
– Do not stop the vehicle while in the water.
– Drive in reverse.
– Do not turn the engine off.

WARNING

After driving through water, press the brake pedal carefully to dry the brakes so that the full braking effect will be restored.

Note

Vehicle components such as the engine, drive system, suspension, or electrical system can be severely damaged by driving through water.

Tips

If possible, avoid driving through salt water because it increases the risk of corrosion. Use fresh water to clean any vehicle components that come into contact with salt water.

Hill descent assist

Applies to: vehicles with hill hold assist

The button is located above the selector lever in the center console. It lights up when the system is turned on.

Hill descent assist can assist you when driving down hills by maintaining a constant vehicle speed by automatically braking all four wheels. You can adjust the speed using the accelerator and brake pedals. The regulation depends on the hill and the vehicle speed.

▸ Switching on: press .
▸ Switching off: press again.

Active regulation

Regulation begins shortly after you start driving and is possible at speeds up to approximately 19 mph (30 km/h) and on hills that have an approximately 6-60% grade. If these conditions are met, regulation will be activated and the indicator light will turn on.

Ready mode

If one of the requirements for active regulation is not met, the system will be in ready mode. The indicator light will turn on. Once the requirements are met again, the system will be able to provide active regulation again.

WARNING

– Be ready to apply the brakes at all times when using the hill hold assist.
– Always adjust the speed to the visibility, weather, road, and traffic conditions. The system cannot replace the driver's attention.
– The system cannot maintain a constant vehicle speed in all situations, for example when on smooth or slippery ground. This can increase the risk of an accident.

Tips

If you select the Audi drive select* **Offroad** mode, hill descent assist will switch on.

Driving dynamic

Audi drive select

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

Drive select makes it possible to experience different types of vehicle characteristics in one vehicle. With different driving modes, the driver can switch the setting, for example from sporty to comfortable. This allows you to adjust the settings to your personal preferences. This makes it possible to combine settings such as a sporty drivetrain setting with comfortable steering.

Selecting an Audi drive select mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

The drive select button is located above the selector lever in the center console.

- Press the left or right arrow key until the desired mode appears in the MMI. Or:
- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Audi drive select**.

You can change the driving mode when the vehicle is stationary or while driving. If traffic permits, briefly remove your foot from the accelerator pedal after changing modes so that the mode you have selected will be activated for the drive system.

The following modes may be available depending on the equipment:

Offroad – Provides assistance when driving offroad. The ESC will be restricted and the hill descent assist* will be activated. The vehicle will exit this mode after the ignition is switched off.

Comfort - Provides a comfort-oriented vehicle setup and is suited for long drives on highways.

Auto - Provides an overall comfortable yet dynamic driving feel and is suited for everyday use.

Dynamic - Gives the driver a sporty driving feel and is suited to a sporty driving style. The “S” driving program is selected.

Individual – Provides the option for personalized vehicle settings. Press to configure the mode ⇨ *page 106, Individual settings*.

Tips

When the ignition is being switched on, individual systems, such as the drive system, will be reset to a balanced setting. Select the current mode again to attain its full configuration.

Individual settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

The equipment in your vehicle will determine which settings you can adjust.

Drive

The drive system will react to accelerator pedal moves more quickly or in a more balanced manner. The shift points are located in higher or lower engine speed ranges on vehicles with automatic transmissions.

Depending on the setting, the drive power at the rear axle will be distributed with the sport differential* to be more sporty or moderate ⇨ *page 108*.

Steering

The power steering will adapt. Light steering is suitable for long trips on highways or smooth driving around curves, for example.

Suspension

The suspension adjusts to be tighter or more comfort-oriented when it comes to compensating for uneven spots on the road.

Engine sound

The engine sound adapts and can be subtle to sporty.

Suspension

Adaptive dampers

Applies to: vehicles with suspension control

The adaptive dampers are an electronically-controlled damping system. The firmness of the ▶

suspension will adapt to the driving conditions and the driving situation. The settings depend on the selected Audi drive select* mode.

Ground clearance

The vehicle height and clearance can be influenced by the following factors:

– Change in temperature
– Change in load

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury, make sure no one gets pinched when the vehicle level is changing, for example when cleaning the underbody or the wheel housings.

Note

Always make sure there is enough clearance above and below the vehicle. This is especially important for entrances with height restrictions, for example, before driving into underground garages. You could also scrape the ground when driving over the edges of curbs or on steep ramps, which could damage your vehicle.

Messages

Suspension: malfunction! You can continue driving

There is a malfunction. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering

Description

Electromechanical steering supports the driver's steering movements by electronically adapting the power steering depending on the vehicle speed. The settings depend on the selected Audi drive select* mode.

Dynamic steering

Applies to: vehicles with dynamic steering

The driving dynamic and driving stability are increased by the steering ratio based on the speed. At reduced speeds, steering is direct in order to provide agile steering behavior and keep the steering effort as minimal as possible when the driver is maneuvering the vehicle. This sets the steering to be less sensitive at higher speeds in order to provide improved vehicle control.

Messages

Steering: malfunction! Please stop vehicle

The power steering may have failed. Adapt your driving style immediately to compensate for the fact that it may be more difficult to turn the steering wheel, and stop your vehicle in a safe location as soon as possible. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering: malfunction! You can continue driving

There is a malfunction in the steering system. Steering may be more difficult or more sensitive. Adapt your driving style. Have the steering system checked immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Please note that the red indicator light may turn on after restarting the engine. Do not continue driving if it does.

Dynamic steering: correcting steering wheel position

The steering is reinitializing. The steering wheel will move easily after starting the vehicle. Reinitialization might be necessary if the steering wheel was moved while the engine was switched off. The display turns off if the initialization was successful.

Tips

– If there is a malfunction, the steering wheel may be crooked when driving straight.
– If the or indicator light only stays on for a short time, you may continue driving.

All wheel drive (quattro)

Description

Applies to: vehicles with all wheel drive

The all-wheel drive system distributes the driving power variably to the front and rear axle to improve the driving characteristics. It works together with selective wheel torque control, which can activate when driving through curves ⇨ *page 109*.

Applies to: vehicles with quattro ultra: If the driving situation does not require all wheel drive, then the rear section of the drivetrain will decouple to save fuel. The system constantly determines and anticipates if all wheel drive is needed. This allows the rear drivetrain to recouple shortly before it is needed.

The all-wheel drive system is designed for high engine power. Your vehicle is exceptionally powerful and has excellent driving characteristics both under normal driving conditions and on snow and ice. Always read and follow safety precautions ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- Even in vehicles with all wheel drive, you should adapt your driving style to the current road and traffic conditions to reduce the risk of an accident.
- The braking ability of your vehicle is limited to the traction of the wheels. In this way, it is not different from a two wheel drive vehicle. Do not drive too fast because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Note that on wet streets, the front wheels can “hydroplane” if driving at speeds that are too high. Unlike front wheel drive vehicles, the engine RPM does not increase suddenly when the vehicle begins hydroplaning. Adapt your speed to the road conditions to reduce the risk of an accident.

Sport differential

Applies to: vehicles with sport differential

The sport differential distributes the drive power to the rear axle based on the situation. The goal is a high level of agility and ability to accelerate on curves. The vehicle is very responsive to steering. The settings depend on the selected Audi drive select* mode.

Messages

All wheel drive: malfunction! You can continue driving. Please contact Service

Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Sport differential: malfunction! Please contact Service

Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

All wheel drive: too hot. Please adapt driving style. See owner’s manual

The transmission temperature has increased significantly due to the sporty driving manner. Drive in a less sporty manner until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light switches of.

Sport differential: temperature too high. Please adapt driving style

The transmission temperature has increased significantly due to the sporty driving manner. Drive in a less sporty manner until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light switches of.

WARNING

Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility if the sport differential is faulty or malfunctioning. The repair must be performed by trained personnel using the correct oil in order to ensure safety.

Electronic Stabilization Control

Description

Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) supports driver safety. It reduces the risk of slipping and improves driving stability. ESC detects critical situations, such as if the vehicle is oversteering or understeering, or if the wheels are spinning. The brakes are applied or the engine torque is reduced in order to stabilize the vehicle.

If the indicator light blinks while driving, the ESC is actively regulating.

If the indicator light turns on, the system has switched the ESC off. In this case, you can switch the ignition off and then on to switch the ESC on again. The indicator light turns off when the system is fully functional.

If the indicator light turns on, ESC was limited or switched off manually ⇨ *page 110*.

The following systems are integrated in the ESC:

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking when braking. The vehicle can still be steered even during hard braking. Apply steady pressure to the brake pedal. Do not pump the pedal.

A pulsing in the brake pedal indicates that the system is acting to stabilize the vehicle.

Brake assist

The brake assist system can decrease braking distance. It increases braking power when the driver presses the brake pedal quickly in emergency situations. You must press and hold the brake pedal until the dangerous situation is over. Depending on the activated driver assistance systems, the brake assist system may react with increased sensitivity.

Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)

ASR reduces drive power when the wheels begin spinning and adapts the power to the road conditions. This will increase the driving stability.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)

The EDL applies the brakes to wheels that are slipping and transfers the drive power to the other wheels. This function is not available at higher speeds.

In extreme cases, EDL automatically switches off to keep the brake on the braked wheel from overheating. The vehicle is still functioning correctly. EDL will switch on again automatically when conditions have returned to normal.

Power steering

The ESC can also support vehicle stability through steering.

Selective wheel torque control

Selective wheel torque control is used when driving on curves. Braking is targeted toward the wheels on the inside of the curve as needed. This allows more precise driving in curves.

Automatic post-collision braking system

The automatic post-collision braking system can help to reduce the risk of sliding and of additional collisions after an accident. If the airbag control module detects a collision, the vehicle is braked by the ESC.

The vehicle does not brake automatically if one of the following occurs:

– The driver presses the accelerator pedal, or
– The braking force generated by the pressed brake pedal is greater than the braking force that would be initiated by the system
– The ESC, the brake system, or the vehicle electrical system is not functioning

WARNING

– The ESC and its integrated systems cannot overcome the limits imposed by natural physical laws. This is especially important on slippery or wet roads. If the systems begin acting to stabilize your vehicle, you should immediately alter your speed to match the ▶

road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.
– Please note the risk of a collision increases when driving fast, especially through curves and on slippery or wet roads, and when driving too close to objects ahead. There is still a risk of accidents because the ESC and its integrated systems cannot always prevent collisions.
– Accelerate carefully when driving on smooth, slippery surfaces such as ice and snow. The drive wheels can spin even when these control systems are installed and this can affect driving stability and increase the risk of a collision.

Tips

– The ABS and ASR only function correctly when all four wheels have a similar wear condition. Different tire sizes can lead to a reduction in engine power.
– You may hear noises when the systems described are working.

Operation

The OFF button for controlling the ESC is located in the center console, in front of the selector lever.

The ESC is automatically switched on when the ignition is switched on. It may make sense in some situations to limit the ESC so that the wheels can spin:

– Rocking the vehicle to free it when it is stuck
– Driving in deep snow, on unpaved ground, or with snow chains
– Applies to: allroad: Driving downhill while braking on loose ground
– Applies to: allroad: Driving with axle articulation

Limiting ESC (Sport/Offroad mode)

– To limit the ESC, press the OFF button briefly. The OFF indicator light turns on.
– To completely reactivate the ESC stabilization function, press the button again. The indicator light turns off.

When ESC is limited, allroad models switch to Offroad mode. All other model versions switch to Sport mode. Sport mode is particularly suited for driving on an even road surface. Offroad mode is designed for uneven terrain or loose ground.

Switching off ESC

– To switch off the ESC, press and hold the OFF button for more than three seconds. The OFF and ESC OFF indicator lights turn on.
– To completely reactivate the ESC stabilization function, press the button again. The indicator lights turn off.

WARNING

– When the ESC is switched off or limited, there will be no vehicle stabilization or it will be limited. The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could swerve, especially on slick or slippery road surfaces, which increases the risk of an accident.
– Because of the increased risk of an accident, only drive with the ESC switched off or limited when it is necessary. Reactivate the ESC as soon as possible.

Tips

– If the ESC is limited, switched off, or malfunctioning, systems with an automatic braking intervention function may not be fully available.
– If malfunctions occur in other systems or certain driver assist systems are active, the ESC must be switched on by the system. The ESC may switch on automatically and cannot be operated with the button.

Messages

ABS / Stabilization control (ESC/ ABS): malfunction! See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the ABS or EDL. This also causes the ESC to malfunction. The brakes still ▶

function with their normal power, but ABS is not active.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Trailer towing

Driving with a trailer

General information

Your vehicle is primarily intended for transporting people and luggage. However, if you drive with a trailer, follow the technical requirements, the operation and driving tips, and the legal regulations.

Driving with a trailer affects the vehicle's energy usage, performance, and wear. It also requires higher concentration from the driver.

WARNING

Do not transport any people in a trailer due to the risk of fatal injury.

Technical requirements

Certain requirements must be met when towing a trailer.

Trailer hitch

Only use a trailer hitch with a removable ball hitch mount and ball hitch. The trailer hitch must be permitted for the vehicle, the trailer and the permitted total weight of the trailer being pulled. Above all, it must be securely and safely attached to the vehicle trailer.

Never mount a trailer hitch on the bumper. The trailer hitch must be mounted in a way that does not impair the function of the bumper. Do not make any changes to the exhaust system and the brake system.

Check regularly if the trailer hitch is securely mounted. Always follow the instructions given by the trailer hitch manufacturer.

Trailer brakes

If the trailer has its own brake system, then follow the manufacturer specifications. However, the brake system on the trailer must never be connected to the vehicle brake system.

Engine cooling system

Driving with a trailer means a higher load on the engine and the cooling system. The cooling system must be designed for additional load and contain enough coolant ⇨ (!).

Note

Longer inclines cannot be driven without a suitable cooling system, especially if the outside temperatures are high. Otherwise, this increases the risk of engine damage.

Operating instructions

Towing capacity

Your vehicle can only be operated with class 1 or class 2 trailers.

Load distribution

Poor cargo load and distribution can negatively impact vehicle handling. Load the trailer based on the following criteria as much as possible:

– Store objects in the vehicle luggage compartment, if possible. The vehicle should always carry the heaviest possible load and the trailer should have the lightest possible load.
– Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heavy objects are as close to the axle as possible.
– Secure objects so that they do not slide.
– Utilize the maximum permitted tongue weight if possible.

Tires

Set the tire pressure on your vehicle for a “full load”; see the tire pressure sticker ⇨ *page 237*. If necessary, also adjust the tire pressure on the trailer according to the manufacturer's specifications.

The trailer and the vehicle should be equipped with winter tires when driving in winter temperatures.

Outside mirrors

If you cannot see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard exterior mirrors, then you must attach additional exterior mirrors. Adjust ▶

them so you have a sufficient visibility behind you.

Exterior lighting

Follow the legal regulations for lighting on your trailer that are applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Before you start driving, check all lighting equipment on the trailer while it is hitched to the vehicle.

The headlight range control automatically adjusts the light range of the headlights.

Safety chains

Make sure the safety chains are correctly applied when pulling a trailer. The chains should hang enough so that the trailer can drive around curves. However, they must not touch the ground.

Note

Attachments retrofitted on the vehicle may cause damage, especially on the trailer hitch ball head. In cases of damage, have the function checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Tips

- Block the wheels with chocks when parking on inclines if the trailer is loaded.
- Having the vehicle inspected between the inspection intervals is recommended if you tow a trailer frequently.
- Avoid driving with a trailer during the vehicle break-in period.

Driving with a trailer

Driving with a trailer requires extra caution.

Speed

Adhere to the legal speed limits. Follow the legal regulations that are applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle.

As the speed increases, the driving stability of the trailer decreases. Therefore you should not exceed the maximum legal speed limit when there are unfavorable road, weather, and/or wind conditions. This especially applies when driving downhill.

Hill

When you start driving uphill or downhill, trailers may tilt or sway sooner than when driving on a level surface. If small swaying movements have already occurred, you can stabilize the trailer by firmly braking immediately. Never attempt to “straighten out” the trailer by accelerating.

Downshift before driving on hills to utilize the engine braking effect ⇨ ⚠.

Brakes

When using a trailer with overrun brakes, first brake gently then quickly. This reduces the risk of jerking while braking if the trailer wheels lock up.

Engine coolant temperature

Pay attention specifically to the coolant temperature display when there are high outside temperatures, and when driving on long inclines ⇨ *page 13*. Shift to a higher gear in a timely manner.

WARNING

Constant braking causes the brakes to overheat and can substantially reduce braking performance, increase braking distance, or cause complete failure of the brake system.

8W1012721BB

Assist systems

General information

Safety precautions

WARNING

– As the driver, you are always completely responsible for all driving tasks. The assist systems cannot replace the driver's attention. Give your full attention to driving the vehicle, and be ready to intervene in the traffic situation at all times.
– Activate the assist systems only if the surrounding conditions permit it. Always adapt your driving style to the current visual, weather, road, and traffic conditions.
– Keep in mind that Audi pre sense front can apply the brakes unexpectedly. Always secure any cargo or objects that you are transporting to reduce the risk of damage or injury.
– For the assist systems to be able to react correctly, the function of the sensors and cameras must not be restricted. Note the information on sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 115*.

Tips

– Pay attention to applicable local regulations relating to driving tasks, leaving space for emergency vehicles, vehicle distance, speed, parking location, wheel placement, etc. The driver is always responsible for following the laws that are applicable in the location where the vehicle is being operated.
– You can cancel a steering or braking intervention by the system, by braking or accelerating noticeably, steering, or deactivating the respective assist system.
– Always check the assist systems settings before driving.

System limitations

WARNING

– The use of an assist system cannot overcome the natural laws of physics. A collision cannot be prevented in certain circumstances.
– Warnings, messages, or indicator lights may not be displayed or initiated on time or correctly, for example, if vehicles are approaching very fast.
– Corrective interventions by the assist systems, such as steering or braking interventions, may not be sufficient or they may not occur. Always be ready to intervene.

Tips

– Due to the system limitations when detecting the surrounding area, the systems may warn or intervene unexpectedly or too late in certain situations. The assist systems may also interpret a driving maneuver incorrectly and then warn the driver unexpectedly.
– The systems may not function as expected in unusual driving situations, such as driving offroad, on unpaved roads, on loose ground, on inclines, or on grooves in the road.
– The systems may not function correctly in unclear traffic situations, such as turning lanes, exit ramps, construction zones, rises or dips that obstruct visibility, intersections, toll stations, or city traffic.
– The detection of the surrounding area can be limited, for example by vehicles driving ahead or by rain, snow, heavy spray, or light shining into the camera.
– If accessories have been mounted on the steering wheel, the ability for the steering systems to react may be limited.

Surrounding area detection

Sensor and camera coverage areas

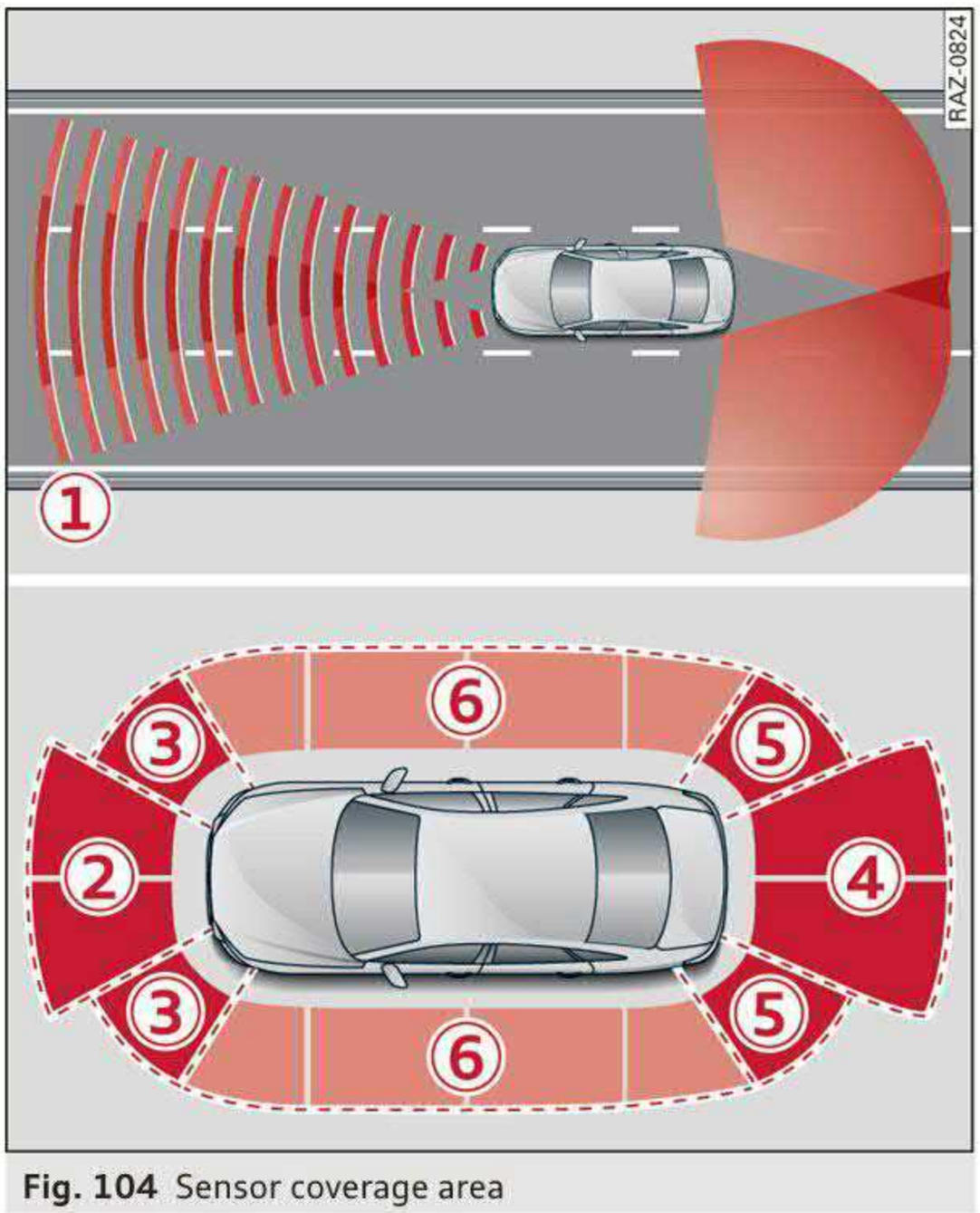


Fig. 104 Sensor coverage area

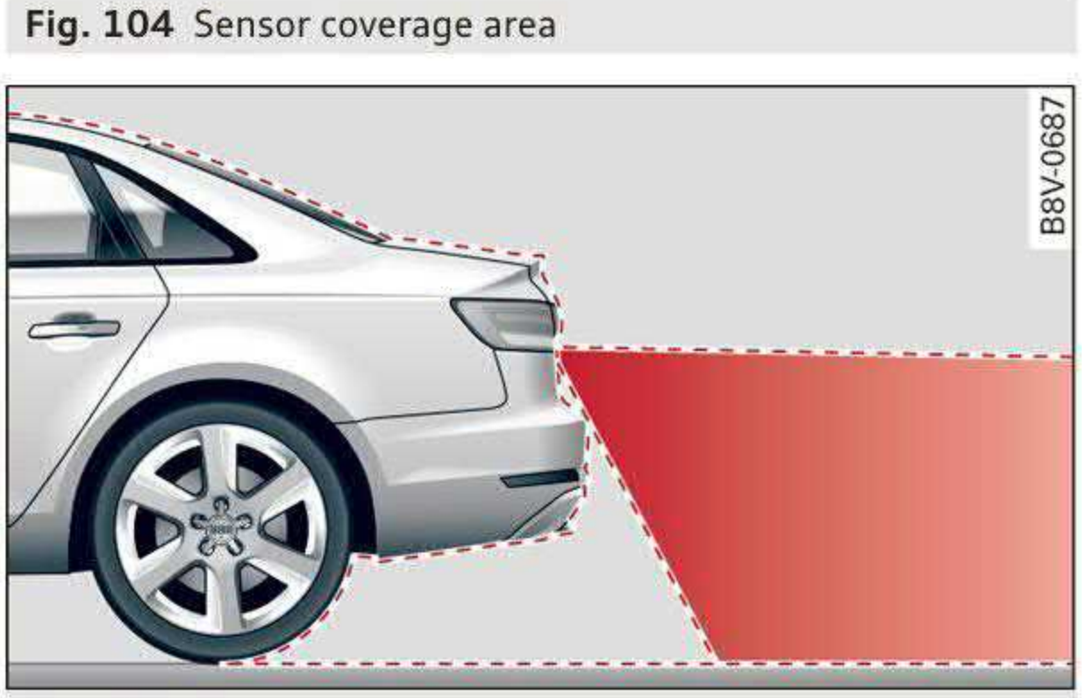


Fig. 105 Rearview camera coverage area

The assist systems analyze the data from various sensors and cameras installed in the vehicle. Do not use any assist systems if there is damage in there area of the sensors and cameras or on the vehicle underbody. Damage can impair the function of the sensors and cameras or cause malfunctions. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

Radar sensors

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the area surrounding the entire vehicle may be detected ⇨ *fig. 104* (1).

The wheel sensors on the rear corners of the vehicle are positioned so that the adjacent lanes to the left and right are detected on roads with a normal lane width.

Ultrasonic sensors

Depending on vehicle equipment, various areas may be displayed in the MMI using the ultrasonic sensors ⇨ *fig. 104*.

The range of the displays depends on the location of the ultrasonic sensors:

(2) Approximately 4 ft (1.20 m)
(3) Approximately 3 ft (0.90 m)
(4) Approximately 5.2 ft (1.60 m)
(5) Approximately 3 ft (0.90 m)
(6) Approximately 3 ft (0.90 m)

The side area (6) is detected and evaluated when passing. There may have been changes to the surrounding area after switching the ignition off and on again, after opening the doors, or if the vehicle is left stationary for a period of time. In this case, the area will appear black until the area has been detected and evaluated.

Cameras

Use the camera image on the display to assist you only if it shows a good, clear picture. Keep in mind that the image in the display is enlarged and distorted. Under certain circumstances, objects may appear different and unclear on the display.

The rearview camera can only detect the area marked in red ⇨ *fig. 105*. Only this area is displayed on the center display. ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Sensors and cameras have spots in which the surrounding area cannot be detected. Objects, animals, and people may only be detected with limitations may not be detected at all. Always monitor the traffic and the vehicle's ▶

surroundings directly and do not become distracted.

Note

– Obstacles may disappear from the measurement range when approaching them, even if they were already detected.
– In some situations, the ability of the sensors and cameras to detect and display certain objects may be limited.
– Objects located above the coverage area, such as bumpers on parked cars, garage doors that are partially open, or objects that are hanging
– Low obstacles
– Narrow objects, such as barrier chains, foliage, poles, or fences
– Projecting objects, such as trailer draw bars
– Objects with certain surfaces and structures, such as fabric

Tips

– The sensors and cameras and the areas around them must not be obstructed because this can impair the function of the systems that depend on them. Make sure that the sensors and cameras are free of snow, ice, and other deposits. Do not use any accessories, stickers, or other objects that extend into the range of the sensors and cameras.
– On vehicles that have factory-installed license plate brackets on the front of the vehicle, the brackets may only be replaced with ones that are the same size and made of the same material. Do not install any license plate brackets on the front of vehicles that do not have factory-installed brackets. Otherwise, the function of the system could be impaired.
– The function of the sensors and cameras may be limited when light and visibility conditions are poor, for example when driving into a tunnel, when there is glare, or when there are reflective objects.
– External ultrasonic sensors, such as those in other vehicles, can interfere with the sensors.
– The coverage areas of the sensors ⇨ *fig. 104* are diagrams and do not represent a true-to-scale image of the sensor ranges.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 275*.

Locations of the sensors and cameras

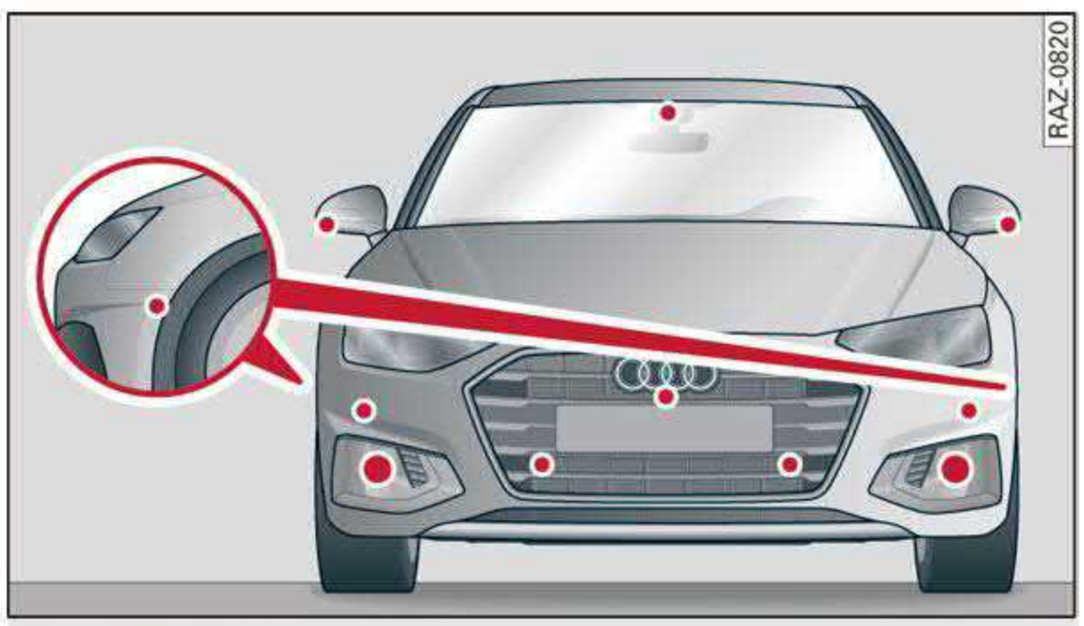


Fig. 106 Front area: sensors and cameras

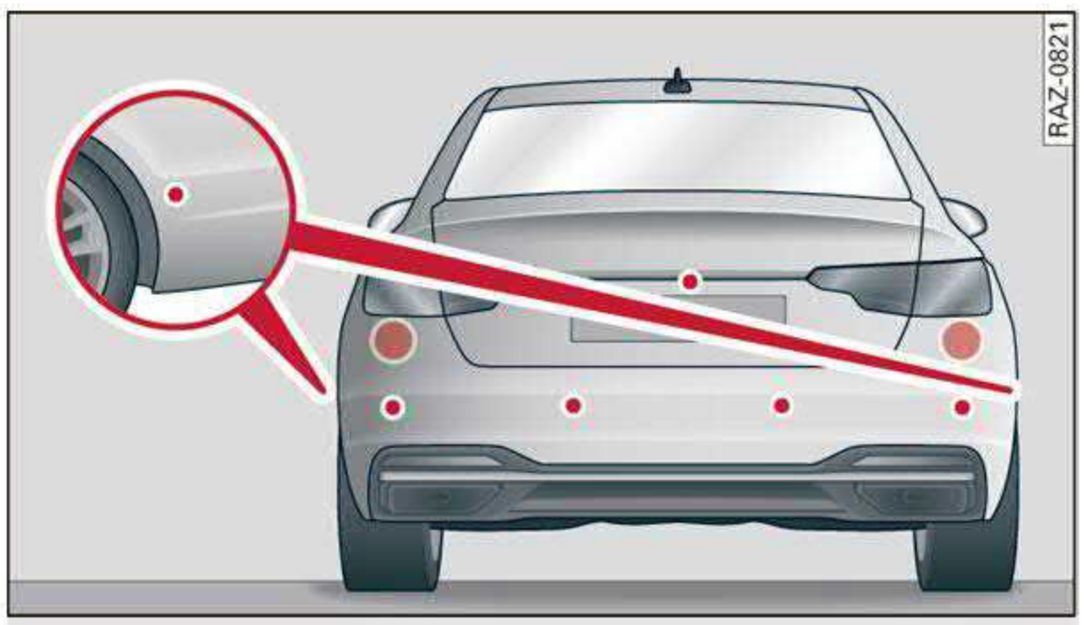


Fig. 107 Rear area: sensors and cameras

Front area

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following sensors and cameras may be installed:
– Camera behind the windshield
– Peripheral cameras on the exterior mirrors
– Front peripheral camera in the radiator grille
– Front and side ultrasonic sensors
– Front radar sensors at the corners of the bumper ▶

Rear area

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following sensors and cameras may be installed:

– Rearview camera in the luggage compartment lid
– Radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle
– Rear and side ultrasonic sensors

Tips

– The locations of the sensors may differ slightly depending on vehicle equipment.
– Some sensors are installed under vehicle components and cannot be seen from the outside.

Driving information

Speed warning system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system

The speed warning system helps the driver to stay below a specified maximum speed. A warning threshold can be set in the MMI for this purpose.

Once the speed slightly exceeds the stored threshold, the speed warning system will alert the driver with an indicator in the instrument cluster and a warning tone. Once the speed drops below the stored maximum speed, the indicator will turn off.

Setting a threshold is recommended if you would like to be reminded when you reach a certain maximum speed. Situations where you may want to do so include driving in a country with a general speed limit or if there is a specified maximum speed for winter tires.

Tips

Regardless of the speed warning system, you should always monitor your speed using the speedometer and make sure you are adhering to the legal speed limit.

Setting the warning threshold

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > **Speed warning**.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system

MPH / Km/h Manually set warning threshold XX mph (km/h) exceeded

The stored speed was exceeded.

Camera-based traffic sign recognition

Description

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

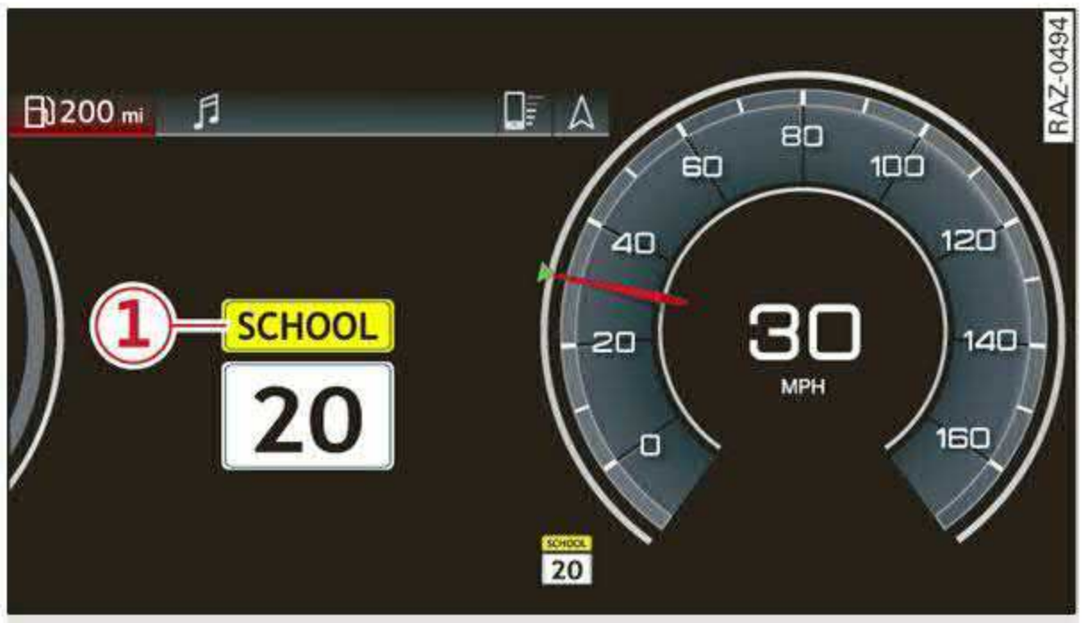


Fig. 108 Instrument cluster: traffic sign recognition

The traffic sign recognition shows the traffic signs detected by the front camera in the instrument cluster display and in the head-up display*. Data from the navigation system is also included in the display. Up to three traffic signs can be displayed in the instrument cluster at once. The speed limit that is currently applicable is displayed in the status line. If necessary, it will be hidden if the system detects that turning right is prohibited at a red light. The display in the head-up display* can be switched off ⇨ *page 23*.

Within the limits of the system and depending on the market, speed limit restrictions (1) in school zones, highways, construction zones, or at night may be displayed.

Limitations

The traffic sign recognition is subject to certain system limitations and may be unavailable or only partially available in the following situations:

– When visibility is poor, such as in snow, rain, fog, or heavy spray
– When there is glare, for example from oncoming traffic or the sun
– At high speeds
– If the camera's visual field ⇨ *page 115* is covered, for example by dirt or stickers. Cleaning information ⇨ *page 247*
– If the traffic signs are completely or partially covered, for example by trees, snow, dirt, or other vehicles ▶

– If traffic signs do not conform to the standard format
– If traffic signs are damaged or bent
– If traffic signs are displayed on sign holders with electronic signs
– If the traffic signs or the roadways have changed, and the navigation data is no longer up-to-date

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and respect the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.
– Under some circumstances, traffic sign recognition may not detect traffic signs correctly or detect them at all. As a result, the system may not display the correct speed limit or any speed limit.

Tips

– Traffic sign recognition does not adapt your vehicle's speed to match the speed limit.
– The display in the instrument cluster is based on the units of measurement used for speed in the country where the vehicle is being operated. As a result, a display of **50** in the instrument cluster can mean either mph or km/h, depending on the country.

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

Accessing traffic sign recognition

► Select in the instrument cluster: vehicle functions tab > **Traffic signs**.

Setting a traffic sign based speed warning

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > **Speed warning**.

You can select a warning threshold. If it is exceeded, then the current detected speed limit will be shown in the display with an exclamation point for the duration that it is exceeded and it will blink for a short time.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

Traffic sign recognition: unavailable. Camera view limited due to environm. conditions

The camera's visual field is covered. Clean the windshield.

Traffic sign recognition: currently limited. See owner's manual

This message appears if navigation system data is not available, for example on newly-constructed roads. The speed limit display will be temporarily limited, which increases the risk of an incorrect display. If this message continues to appear, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

No traffic sign information available

Depending on the area, there is no valid navigation data and no speed limits were detected. This may also appear if there is a recommended speed, but no speed limit (for example when driving on and off the expressway).

Malfunction! See owner's manual

The system may not function correctly so it has been switched off. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Function currently unavailable. See owner's manual

If this message appears on vehicles without camera-based traffic sign recognition, then the traffic light information function is currently unavailable. See ⇨ *page 121*.

8W1012721BB

Traffic light information

Description

Applies to: vehicles with traffic light information

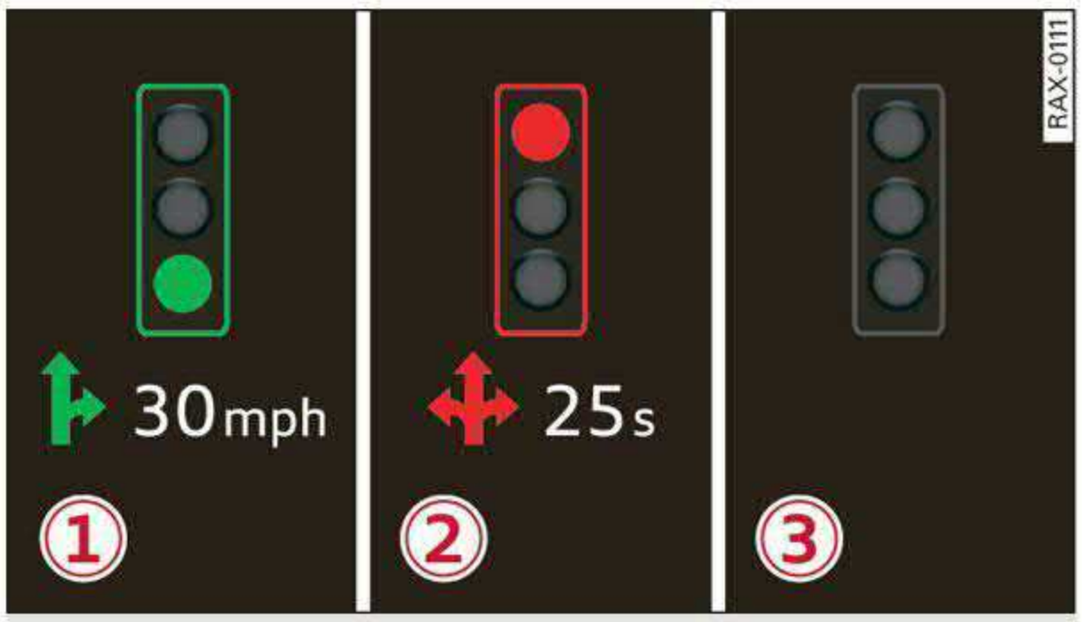


Fig. 109 Instrument cluster: traffic light information display

The traffic light information gives you a speed recommendation in order to reach the next traffic light when it is green ①, or it informs you of the wait time at the next red light ②. Once traffic light data is received, the traffic light information will be displayed in the instrument cluster and in the head-up display*. If the vehicle is in an area with traffic light information but cannot receive a traffic light signal, then a gray traffic light symbol will be displayed ③.

General information

The traffic light information is subject to system limitations and may be unavailable or only partially available in the following situations:

- If the permitted speed limit is exceeded
- If driving below a certain speed limit
- If the next traffic light is less than approximately 100 feet (30 m) away
- If the estimated wait time at a red light is less than four seconds
- If there is no traffic light data available
- If emergency response vehicles or public transit systems are active
- If traffic lights are in construction zones or being serviced
- If there are warnings from the camera-based traffic sign recognition*
- If the camera-based traffic sign recognition* is malfunctioning or not available
- If the data connection has been interrupted
- If data transmission is deactivated in the privacy settings
- If the subscription has expired

If this is the case, the menu item will be grayed-out or it will not be possible to select it.

WARNING

- When traffic light information is shown, also always pay attention to the traffic situation, the distance to other vehicles, and the area around the vehicle. The driver is always responsible for assessing the traffic situation.
- Always adapt your speed to the current weather, road and traffic conditions. The displayed information must never cause you to ignore legal traffic regulations and pose a safety risk.
- Regardless of the traffic light information, you should always monitor your speed using the speedometer and make sure you are adhering to the legal speed limit.
- The traffic light information does not adjust your vehicle's speed to the speed recommendation shown in the display.
- Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.

Tips

- Traffic light information was only available in select cities at the time this manual was printed.
- Traffic light information is not available nationwide.
- The functions depend on the navigation data* being up-to-date and correct identification by the traffic sign recognition*.
- Incorrect values from the camera-based traffic sign recognition* or outdated navigation system* map data can result in missing or incorrect display images.
- Certain traffic lights can automatically adjust to the current traffic situation. If this occurs, the display of traffic light information can change suddenly.

▶

– The traffic signs on the road always take priority over the display. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
– Units of measurement and language settings are displayed based on how they were set in the MMI system settings ⇨ *page 206*.

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with traffic light information

Switching traffic light information on and off

The system and be switched on and off in the MMI.

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > **Traffic light information**.

Accessing traffic light information

► Select in the instrument cluster: vehicle functions tab > **Traffic signs**.

Tips

If another tab or another function is selected in the instrument cluster, the traffic light information will appear in the status bar on the instrument cluster.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with traffic light information

Malfunction! See owner's manual

The system could not be configured, for example due to a network malfunction. Switch the ignition off and shut down the vehicle to restart the system. Wait several minutes until the vehicle has shut down completely and then switch the ignition back on.

Function currently unavailable. See owner's manual

There is a temporary system malfunction. Check if one or more of the following situations applies and correct the issue if necessary:

– Traffic light information is switched off
– Data transmission is deactivated
– The vehicle is not equipped with traffic sign recognition.
– There is no valid license
– Traffic light information is not available in that area

Lap timer

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

You can record and evaluate lap times with the lap timer. You can operate the lap timer using the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 12*.

Opening the lap timer

► Select in the instrument cluster: Vehicle functions tab > ☰ button > **Lap times**.

An additional indicator appears in the head-up display*.

WARNING

Your focus should always be on driving your vehicle safely. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. To reduce the risk of an accident, only use the lap timer functions in such a way that you always maintain complete control over your vehicle in all traffic situations.

Tips

You can retrieve information from the trip computer while the lap timer stopwatch is running.

Lap times and timing

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

Requirement: the lap timer must be open ⇨ *page 121*.

Timing laps

► To start timing manually, select **Start lap 1** in the menu.
► To start timing automatically as soon as you begin to drive, select **Start lap 1 by driving off** or **Start by driving off** in the menu. ▶

- To start timing a new lap after driving a lap, select **New lap** in the menu. This starts timing the next lap at the same time.

After completing a lap, the difference between the last lap and the previous best lap time will be indicated with a "–" or "+".

Pausing timing and displaying a split time

- To insert a pause, select **Pause** in the menu.
- To resume timing, select **Resume** in the menu.
- To display a split time, select **Split time** in the menu. The split time appears for approximately ten seconds in the instrument cluster. The current lap timing will continue running.

Canceling lap timing

The timing of the current lap will stop. The lap time will be erased and will not be included in the statistics.

- Select **Cancel lap** in the menu.

Resetting the time

- Select **Reset lap times** in the menu.

Tips

- A maximum of 99 lap times can be measured.
- If timing is paused, you can continue it later even if you switch the ignition off.
- Saved lap times cannot be individually deleted from the total results.
- The saved lap timer values will remain after switching the ignition off.

Lap statistics

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

Displaying lap statistics

You can display the number of laps driven, the fastest lap "+", the slowest lap "–", and the average time "Ø" in the instrument cluster.

- Select in the instrument cluster: Vehicle functions tab > button > **Lap statistics**.
- Turn the thumbwheel down or up to display the individual lap times.
- To return to the lap timing that was started, select the button > **Lap times**.

Resetting lap statistics

Requirement: the lap statistics menu must be displayed.

- To reset the lap statistics, press and hold the left thumbwheel until the message **No lap times have been recorded yet.** appears.

Tips

The lap statistics list the lap times for the last 30 laps. The fastest and slowest lap times out of up to 99 measured laps are also displayed.

Driver assistance

Cruise control system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

The cruise control system assists the driver in maintaining a constant speed above approximately 15 mph (20 km/h). The system maintains the desired speed by braking and accelerating.

WARNING

- Always pay attention to the traffic around your vehicle when the cruise control system is in operation. As the driver, you are always responsible for controlling your vehicle speed and the distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.
- For safety reasons, cruise control should not be used in the city, in stop-and-go traffic, on winding roads, and when road conditions are poor (such as ice, fog, gravel, heavy rain, and conditions that could lead to hydroplaning), because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Switch the cruise control off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, highway exits, or in construction zones.
- To reduce the risk of an accident, you should only resume the stored speed if it is suitable for the current traffic conditions.

Note

Before driving downhill a long distance on a steep hill, decrease your speed and select a lower gear. This makes use of the engine braking effect and reduces the load placed on the brakes.

Tips

The brake lights turn on when the brakes are applied automatically.

Switching the system on

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system



Fig. 110 Lever: switching on the cruise control system

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

- To switch the system on, pull the lever toward you to position (1).

The CRUISE or indicator light and the corresponding message will appear in the instrument cluster.

WARNING

If the brakes are malfunctioning (for example, overheating) while the cruise control system is switched on, the regulating functions may shut off automatically.

Preselecting or activating a cruise control speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

When the vehicle is stationary, you can preselect the cruise control speed or activate the speed while driving.

Requirement: the system must be switched on.

- To preselect a cruise control speed when the vehicle is stationary, tap the lever toward (+)/(-) ⇨ *page 123, fig. 110*.
- To activate the cruise control speed, pull the lever toward position (1) while driving.
- To set the current driving speed as the cruise control speed, press the button (A) on the lever.

The active cruise control speed is indicated with the CRUISE or indicator light in the instrument cluster. ▶

An additional indicator appears in the head-up display*.

Changing the cruise control speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

- To increase or decrease the cruise control speed in small increments, tap the lever up to the first level toward (+)/(-) ⇨ *page 123, fig. 110*.
- To increase or decrease the cruise control speed in larger increments, tap the lever up to the second level toward (+)/(-).
- To increase or decrease the cruise control speed continuously, tap and hold the lever at the first or second level toward (+)/(-).

Overriding or deactivating the cruise control speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

You can override or deactivate the cruise control system. When you deactivate the system, your cruise control speed will be stored and you can resume that speed.

Requirement: the system must be switched on and activated.

Overriding

- To temporarily override the cruise control speed, press the accelerator pedal.
- Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system will adjust back to the stored cruise control speed.

If you override the cruise control system for a long period of time, the cruise control system will be deactivated. The CRUISE or indicator light will be displayed and the cruise control speed will be saved.

Deactivating

- To deactivate the cruise control speed, press the lever toward (2) (not locked into place) ⇨ *page 123, fig. 110*, or
- Press the brake pedal.

WARNING

Resting your foot on the accelerator pedal could override the cruise control. This will prevent braking interventions by the system.

Switching the system off

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

When you switch the system off completely, the cruise control speed will be deleted.

Requirement: the system must be switched on.

- To switch the system off, press the lever toward (2) (locked into place) ⇨ *page 123, fig. 110*, or
- Switch the ignition off.

Message

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

CRUISE / Speed control system: currently unavailable. See owner's manual

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, the cruise control system has been deactivated. There is a temporary malfunction, for example the brakes are overheating. Switch the cruise control system on again later.

Efficiency assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist

Efficiency assist can assist the driver with predictive information in order to reduce fuel consumption. Depending on vehicle equipment, the system may access data from the navigation system, the camera behind the windshield, and the radar sensors.

Adjusting the efficiency assist

You can adjust efficiency assist functions individually. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

– **Predictive messages** ⇨ *page 125*.
– **Predictive control** ⇨ *page 126*.

Situation symbols

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following symbols may be shown. The symbols indicate the situation to which the efficiency assist is responding.

Some symbols only appear if **Predictive messages** are switched on, and some symbols only appear if **Predictive control** is switched on and Audi adaptive cruise control* is actively regulating the vehicle.

Symbol	Description
	**Slow down** (predictive messages only)
	**Adjustment to curves along route** (predictive control only) Additional symbols are shown in the **Driver assistance** display.
MPH	**Speed limit**
km/h	**Speed limit**
	**Exit** ahead
	**Intersection** ahead
	**Traffic circle** ahead

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.

Tips

– The functions depend on the navigation data* being up-to-date and correct identification by the traffic sign recognition*.
– The system only detects traffic signs that specify a speed limit.
– The display in the instrument cluster is based on the units of measurement used for speed in the country where the vehicle is being operated. As a result, a display of 50 in the instrument cluster can mean either km/h or mph, depending on the country.
– Except for the road network, which is recorded in the navigation system's map information, certain functions may not be available.
– Certain settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Predictive messages

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist

The symbol  appears in the instrument cluster display if efficiency assist recommends removing your foot from the accelerator pedal.

Additional symbols that indicate the situation to which the efficiency assist is reacting are shown in the **Driver assistance** display ⇨ *page 125, Situation symbols*.

Requirements

– The cruise control system* or Audi adaptive cruise control* must not be actively regulating.
– The vehicle speed must be at least 20 mph (30 km/h).
– The remaining distance until the situation is reached must be large enough to allow the system to react to the situation.

Switching messages on and off

Depending on vehicle equipment, you may be able to switch the predictive messages on or off.

Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Efficiency assist** > **Predictive messages**.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.
– Pay attention to traffic and the area around your vehicle when efficiency assist is switched on. The driver is always responsible for assessing the traffic situation.

Tips

– The traffic signs on the road always take priority over the display. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated. ▶

– When a route is planned using the navigation system*, then system displays messages based on an assumed route. Without route guidance, the system displays messages based on an assumed route.
– The wording of the message may vary depending on the selected Audi drive select* mode and the selected gear. No messages are displayed when in the "S" driving program.

Predictive control

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control and efficiency assist

With predictive control[1)], efficiency assist adapts the set speed in adaptive cruise control ① ⇨ *page 128* based on detected speed limits and the upcoming route. Once the system no longer detects any incidents ahead, adaptive cruise control will accelerate back up to the last speed that the driver set. After switching on the ignition, the availability of predictive control is indicated by a message when the adaptive cruise control is first activated.

The displays depend on the vehicle equipment.

Requirements

– Adaptive cruise control is actively regulating ⇨ *page 129*.
– The system can only react to speed limits that are 15 mph (20 km/h)[2)] or higher.

Overriding control

The driver can override the predictive control to the route ahead at any time by pressing the accelerator or brake pedal. If the system changes the vehicle speed to adapt to speed limits, you can change the speed using the lever ⇨ *page 129, fig. 116*.

Setting predictive control

You can switch off predictive control functions or adjust them individually. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > **Audi adaptive cruise control** > **Predictive control**.

Possible settings:

Set speed limit – Adjusts to speed limits. You can also set **With tolerance** if desired. In this scenario, you may fall below or exceed the set speed in favor of increased efficiency.

Adjustment to curves along route – Regulates based on the route ahead, for example by controlling the speed at which the vehicle drives through curves.

Messages

If  and a message with **Predictive control** is displayed when there is a malfunction, the efficiency assist functions are unavailable or limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 116* and try to turn on the systems again later.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.
– Pay attention to traffic and the area around your vehicle when predictive control is switched on. The driver is always responsible for assessing the traffic situation.
– The system does not consider “right of way” rules and does not respond to traffic lights, so lack of driver attention in these situations can increase the risk of an accident.
– The speed when driving through curves may be different from what you as a driver would do or may not be suitable for the weather ▶

1) This is not available in some countries.
2) Analog instrument cluster: 20 mph (30 km/h)

and road conditions. If necessary, apply the brakes and reduce the selected speed to be maintained in the **Adjustment to curves along route** setting to reduce the risk of an accident.

Tips

– Predictive control can exceed or drop below the maximum permitted speed. The driver is responsible for adhering to the permitted speed limit.
– The traffic signs on the road always take priority over the display. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
– If a speed limit is detected, the marking ① ⇨ *page 128* of the set speed limit will be adjusted even if Audi adaptive cruise control is not actively regulating.
– Control by the system depends on which adaptive cruise control driving program is set or on the selected Audi drive select* mode.
– After switching on the ignition and first driving onto a freeway or similar road without a speed limit, the system will regulate the speed to 80 mph (130 km/h)[1)]. Then the system adjusts to the last speed set by the driver.
– There is no adaptation to speed limits when driving through highway interchanges and when driving on or off the expressway.
– The system can fail to provide control or the control may be faulty if the values from the camera-based traffic sign recognition* are incorrect or the navigation system map data is outdated.
– When route guidance is switched on, the system adapts to the route provided by the navigation system. Driving without route guidance or leaving a route can result in faulty control.

1) In certain countries

Audi adaptive cruise control

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

Depending on vehicle equipment, Audi adaptive cruise control may consist of the following functions:

Within the limits of the system, the **adaptive speed and distance control** assists the driver in controlling the speed and the set distance to the vehicle driving ahead. If the system detects a vehicle driving ahead, the adaptive cruise control can brake and accelerate your vehicle within the limits of the system. On open roads with no traffic, it functions like a cruise control system. The stored speed is maintained. When approaching a vehicle driving ahead, the adaptive cruise control system automatically brakes to match that vehicle's speed and then maintains the set distance as much as possible. As soon as the system does not detect a vehicle driving ahead, adaptive cruise control accelerates up to the stored speed.

In **stop-and-go traffic**, the vehicle may brake to a full stop and then may also start driving again automatically under certain conditions.

Applies to: vehicles with traffic jam assist: In **traffic jams or in stop-and-go traffic**, the **traffic jam assist** can assist the driver to stay within the lane detected by the system ⇨ *page 134*.

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist: **Predictive control** can adjust the set speed based on traffic and road conditions ⇨ *page 126*.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.

Tips

For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 275*.

8W1012721BB

Limitations

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

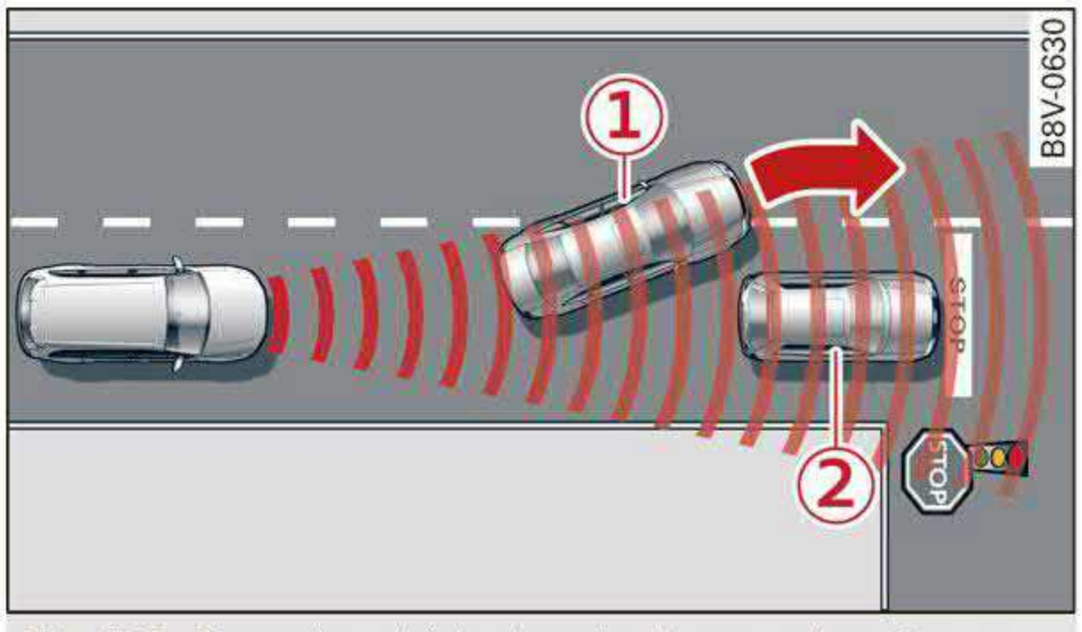


Fig. 111 Example: vehicle changing lanes and stationary vehicle

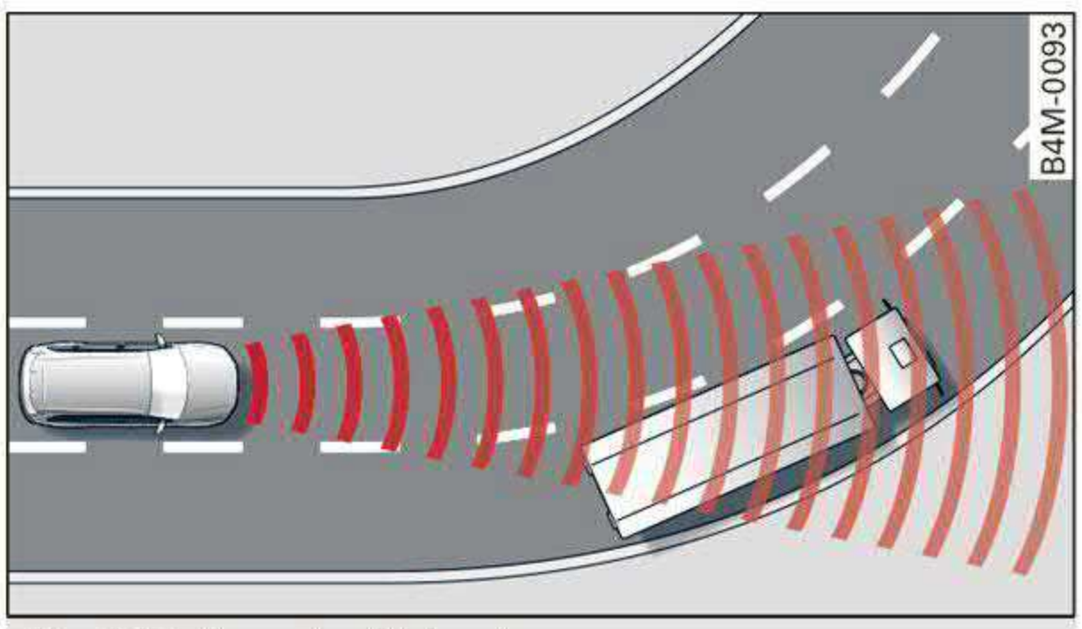


Fig. 112 Example: driving into a curve

In some situations, the adaptive cruise control function is limited and you must assume control of the vehicle when necessary, for example by applying the brakes.

– When driving into a curve ⇨ *fig. 112* and out of a curve, the system may react to a vehicle in the neighboring lane and apply the brakes. You can override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal briefly.
– The system works with the various sensors and cameras in the vehicle. Vehicles can only be detected once they are within the area and range covered by the sensors ⇨ *page 115, fig. 104*.
– When driving around tight curves, a vehicle driving ahead that was previously detected may no longer be detected, and the system may accelerate unexpectedly.
– The system does not react to a stationary vehicle in the same lane if it expects that you can easily drive around the stationary vehicle by turning the steering wheel.
– The system cannot react to stationary objects, such as vehicles at the end of a traffic jam, especially when traveling at high speeds.
– The system has a limited ability to detect vehicles that are a short distance ahead, off to the side of your vehicle, or moving into your lane.
– Objects that are difficult to detect, such as motorcycles, vehicles with high ground clearance, or vehicles with an overhanging load, may be detected late or not detected at all.
– The system does not respond to people, animals, or objects that are crossing or approaching from the opposite direction.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.

Display overview

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 113 Instrument cluster: display in speedometer

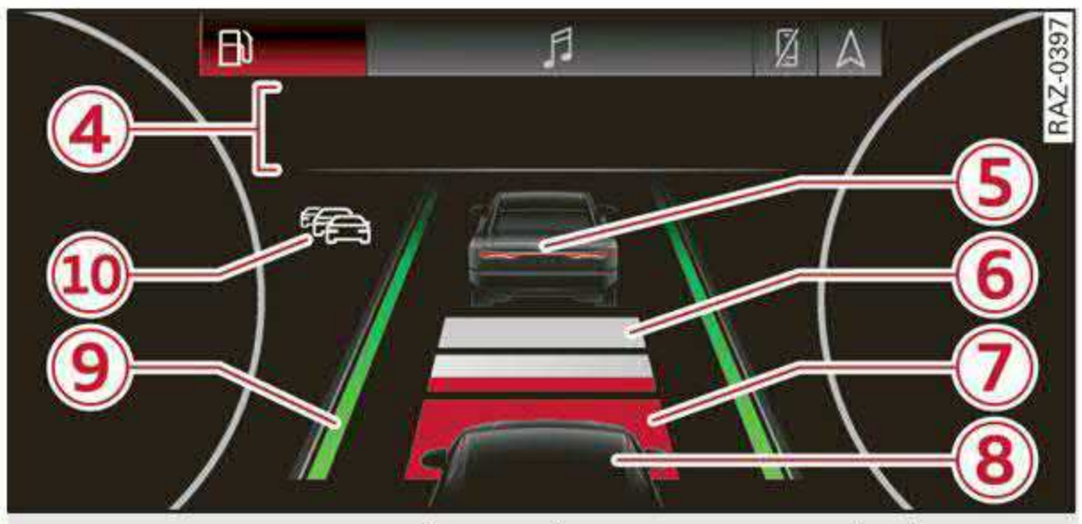


Fig. 114 Instrument cluster: driver assistance display

Indicator lights and messages in the speedometer ① - ③ inform you about the driving situation and the settings. In the **Driver assistance** display ④ - ⑩, you can find more detailed information about the system. The displays depend on the country and equipment. ▶

Display in the speedometer

① Marking for the set speed
② Current vehicle speed
③ Available speed range for the adaptive cruise control (example)

Image in the Driver assistance display

The display only appears when the **Driver assistance** display is open in the on-board computer ⇨ *page 15*.

④ Messages and settings
⑤ Detected vehicle driving ahead
⑥ Set target distance
⑦ If you fall below the set distance, the distance bars turn red from the bottom upward.
⑧ Your vehicle
⑨ Availability of Audi active lane assist
⑩ Availability of traffic jam assist

Indicator lights

– The speed/distance control is active. No vehicles were detected ahead. The stored speed is maintained.

– The speed/distance control is active. A vehicle was detected ahead. The system controls the speed and distance from the vehicle driving ahead, and accelerates and brakes automatically.

- The speed/distance control is active but the vehicle is not **ready to drive**. A vehicle was detected ahead. Your vehicle is stationary and will not start driving automatically.

- The speed/distance control is active but the vehicle is not **ready to drive**. No vehicles were detected ahead. Your vehicle is stationary and will not start driving automatically.

– The automatic braking is not enough to maintain a sufficient distance to a vehicle driving ahead. You must intervene ⇨ *page 133, Driver intervention request*.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.

Operating Audi adaptive cruise control

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 115 Operating lever: operating adaptive cruise control



Fig. 116 Operating lever: changing the speed

Switching on

► To switch on the adaptive cruise control, pull the lever up to position ① until it engages.

Storing the speed and activating regulation

If you have switched the system on, you can set the current speed as the “regulated speed” and activate regulation:

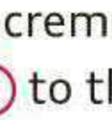
► Press the SET button ②. The set speed is indicated with a marking in the speedometer ① ⇨ *page 128, fig. 113* and shown in the instrument cluster ⇨ ⚠.
► To save the speed while the vehicle is stationary, also hold the brake pedal down. ▶

You can set any speed between 15 mph (20 km/h)[1] and the maximum possible speed range ③[2] ⇨ *page 128, fig. 113*.

Pausing cruise control

The control can be stopped at any time:

- ► While driving or when the vehicle is stationary: Press the lever away from you in the direction of the arrow. Or
- ► While driving: Press the brake pedal.

The  indicator light turns off.

Resuming regulation

The previously set speed can be resumed at any time after a pause.

- ► To resume cruise control while driving, pull the lever toward you in the direction of the arrow.
- ► To resume cruise control when stationary, pull the lever toward you in the direction of the arrow while pressing the brake pedal.

Changing the speed

- ► To increase or decrease the set speed in smaller increments, briefly tap the lever toward ⊕ or ⊖ to the first level.
- ► To increase or decrease the set speed in larger increments, briefly tap the lever toward ⊕ or ⊖ to the second level.
- ► To increase or decrease the set speed quickly, hold the lever toward ⊕ or ⊖ until the marking in the speedometer ① ⇨ *page 128, fig. 113* has reached the desired speed.

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist: **Predictive control** can adjust the set speed automatically based on traffic and road conditions ⇨ *page 126*.

Preselecting a speed

You can also preselect the speed when adaptive cruise control is not active by moving the lever in the desired direction ⊕/⊖. Activate the previously selected speed by pulling the lever toward you in the direction of the arrow.

Switching off

If you do not want to use the adaptive cruise control for a long period of time, you can switch it off.

- ► Push the lever away from you into position ⓪ until it clicks into place.

The indicator light and the set speed will turn off.

WARNING

- – Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.
- – The activated adaptive cruise control is only an assist system, and the driver is still responsible for controlling the vehicle. The driver is especially responsible for braking, steering, starting to drive, and controlling the speed and the distance from other vehicles.
- – Turn on the adaptive cruise control only if the surrounding conditions permit it. Always adapt your driving style to the current visual, weather, road, and traffic conditions.
- – Switch adaptive cruise control off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, on expressway exits or in construction zones. This prevents the vehicle from accelerating to the stored speed when in these situations.
- – If you press the SET ② button when driving at speeds below 15 mph (20 km/h)[1], the minimum possible speed that the system can maintain will be set. If no vehicle is detected ahead of you, the vehicle will accelerate up to that speed.

Tips

- – Always keep your hands on the steering wheel so you can be ready to steer at any time. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated. ▶

1) Analog instrument cluster: 20 mph (30 km/h)

2) Depends on the country and engine

– If you switch the ignition or the adaptive cruise control system off, the set speed is erased for safety reasons.
– When adaptive cruise control is switched on, the ESC and ASR automatically switch on.
– The system cannot be switched off or it may be interrupted if the road exceeds the maximum possible grade for safe operation.

Setting the distance

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 117 Operating lever: setting the distance

If you adjust the speed, you must also change the time gap to the vehicle driving ahead. The higher the speed, the greater the distance that is needed.

- ▸ Tap the rocker switch to display the distance that is currently set.
- ▸ To increase or decrease the distance in increments, tap the switch again toward (+) or (-).

The newly-set distance will be shown briefly, for example with the indicator light. In the **Driver assistance** display, a graphic display is shown instead of the indicator lights ⇨ *page 128, fig. 114*. The display matches the functions of the indicator lights.

When approaching a vehicle driving ahead, the adaptive cruise control system brakes to match that vehicle's speed and then adjusts to the set distance. If the vehicle driving ahead accelerates, then the adaptive cruise control will accelerate up to the speed that you have set.

The following distances can be set:

Symbol	Meaning
	The time between is approximately 1 second. This setting corresponds to a distance of approximately 92 feet (28 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h).
	The time between is approximately 1.3 seconds. This setting corresponds to a distance of approximately 118 feet (36 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h).
	The time between is approximately 1.8 seconds. This setting meets the general recommendation of “half the speed shown on the speedometer”. This corresponds to a distance of approximately 164 feet (50 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h).
	The time between is approximately 2.4 seconds. This setting corresponds to a distance of approximately 219 feet (67 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h).
	The time between is approximately 3.6 seconds. This setting corresponds to a distance of approximately 328 feet (100 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h).

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.

Tips

– When setting the distance, the driver is responsible for adhering to any applicable legal regulations.
– Depending on the selected driving program and distance, driving behavior when accelerating may vary from moderate to sporty ⇨ *page 133, Adjusting adaptive cruise control*.
– The distances provided are specified values. Depending on the driving situation and how the vehicle ahead is driving, the actual ▶

distance may be more or less than these target distances.

Overriding control

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 118 Operating lever: decreasing the distance

Requirement: adaptive cruise control must be switched on.

Overriding control

You can completely override the control, for example when passing or if you would like to accelerate more quickly.

- ▸ To accelerate manually, pull the lever toward you in the direction of the arrow and hold it there, or press the accelerator pedal.
- ▸ To resume the usual cruise control, release the lever or remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

When you are in the **Driver assistance** display, the message **Overridden** will appear.

Decreasing the distance

The function decreases the set distance and provides assistance, for example when merging when a lane is ending.

- ▸ To further reduce the distance to the vehicle ahead temporarily, pull the lever toward yourself in the direction of the arrow and hold it in that position.
- ▸ To resume the system control, release the lever.

The adaptive cruise control reduces the distance and, if necessary, accelerates the vehicle above the set speed.

WARNING

- – Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.
- – Resting your foot on the accelerator pedal could override the cruise control. Braking interventions and corrective actions by the system may not occur.

Driving in stop-and-go traffic

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control



Applies to: vehicles with safe start monitor

Fig. 119 Instrument cluster: safe start monitor

Stopping with adaptive cruise control

The adaptive cruise control system also assists you in stop-and-go traffic. Within the limits of the system, your vehicle may brake and remain at a stop if a vehicle driving ahead stops.

Starting to drive with adaptive cruise control

As long as the message **ready to drive** and is displayed, your vehicle will begin driving when the vehicle ahead starts to move ⇨ ⚠.

If you are stopped for several seconds, your vehicle will no longer drive autonomously for safety reasons, and the message will turn off.

- ▸ To extend **ready to drive** mode for several seconds or reactivate, pull the lever briefly towards you in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *page 132, fig. 118*.
- ▸ To resume manual control of the vehicle, tap the accelerator pedal.

Safe start monitor

Applies to: vehicles with safe start monitor

The vehicle can still start to drive even if certain obstacles are detected when starting to drive ⇨ ⚠. For example, if an obstacle is detected by ▶

the sensors or cameras, the indicator light will warn you of the danger.

If you are in the **Driver assistance** display, the display (1) ⇨ *fig. 119* and the message **Warning!** will also appear. An audio signal will also sound. Your vehicle will drive more slowly when starting. This may also occur in some situations when there is no apparent obstacle.

- ▸ Press the brake pedal to slow your vehicle down.

WARNING

- – Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.
- – If the message **ready to drive**[1)] appears, your vehicle will start driving even if there is an obstacle between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead. To reduce the risk of an accident, always make sure there are no obstacles between your vehicle and the vehicle driving ahead.

Tips

For safety reasons, the adaptive cruise control will only be active if

- – The driver's safety belt is fastened
- – All doors and the hood are closed
- – Your vehicle is not stopped for a long period of time

Driver intervention request

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

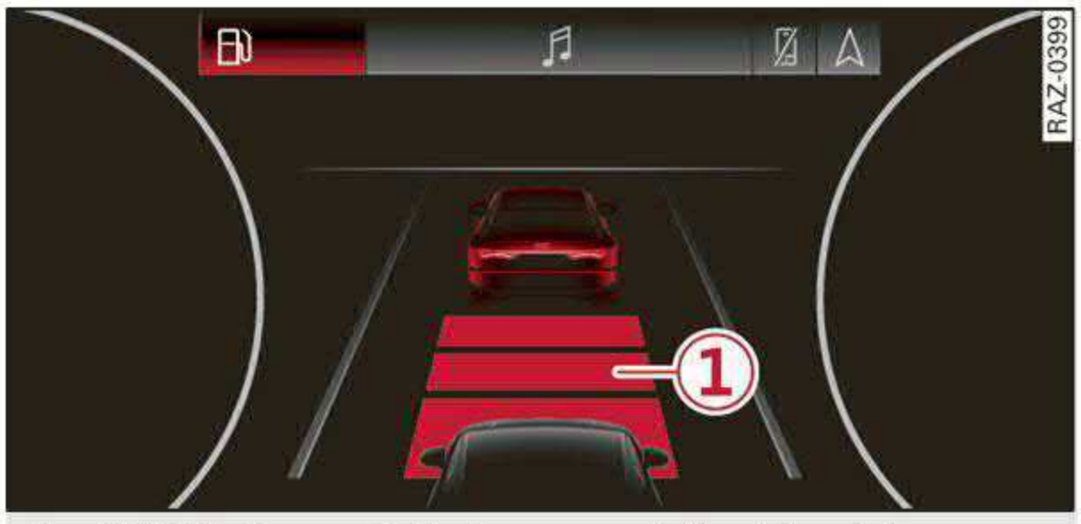


Fig. 120 Instrument cluster: request for driver intervention

The request for driver intervention instructs you to take over if the adaptive cruise control braking function is not able to maintain a sufficient distance to the vehicle driving ahead. The system will warn you of the hazard with the indicator light and the message **Distance!**. An audio signal will also sound.

The display (1) only appears when the **Driver assistance** display is open in the on-board computer ⇨ *page 15*.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.

Adjusting adaptive cruise control

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

You can adjust the system individually. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE**> **Driver assistance** > **Audi adaptive cruise control**.

Possible settings:

Applies to: vehicles without Audi drive select

Driving program – Depending on the selected driving program and distance, the vehicle handling will be adjusted from **Sport** to **Moderate**.

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

Vehicle handling will be adjusted based on the set distance and the selected Audi drive select mode ⇨ *page 106*.

Store last distance - The last distance that was set will be stored after the ignition is switched off. If the distance is not stored, distance (time distance of approximately 1.8 seconds) is automatically preset every time the ignition is switched on.

1) This is not available in some countries.

Predictive control – When predictive control is switched on, the system reacts automatically to situations ⇨ *page 126*.

Tips

Certain settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

If , or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the adaptive cruise control or traffic jam assist functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 116, fig. 106* and try to turn on the systems again later.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Please take over!

This message appears if the vehicle rolls back when starting on a slight incline, even though the systems are active. Press the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling or starting to move.

Traffic jam assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with traffic jam assist



Fig. 121 Turn signal lever: button for traffic jam assist and Audi active lane assist

Traffic jam assist supports the driver when driving in traffic jams or in heavy traffic.

In a speed range under 40 mph (65 km/h), the system can help to keep the vehicle within a lane calculated by the system. Within the limits of the system, the system controls the steering automatically when adaptive cruise control is switched on. Since traffic jam assist is only an assist system, the driver must always keep his or her hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer. The driver can override the control at any time by actively steering.

The system is designed for driving on expressways and highways.

Requirements for using traffic jam assist:

- The traffic jam assist is preselected in the MMI settings: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > **Traffic jam assist**.
- Adaptive cruise control must be switched on and active ⇨ *page 129*.

If you open the **Driver assistance** display in the on-board computer ⇨ *page 15*, the indicator light and the message **Traffic jam assist available** will turn on when a traffic jam is detected.

Activating or deactivating traffic jam assist

- To activate or deactivate traffic jam assist, press the ⇨ *fig. 121* button.

Always switch off traffic jam assist in the following situations:

– When increased attention is needed from the driver
– In construction zones
– In city driving
– On stretches of road with curves
– In unclear traffic situations such as at intersections or toll stations

Indicator lights

Traffic jam assist is available.

and - traffic jam assist is switched on. Vehicles driving ahead were detected. Your vehicle adapts while driving. ▶

- Traffic jam assist switches off if the driver does not take over steering after multiple driver intervention requests. The system brakes the vehicle until it is stationary.

Steering intervention request

If no steering activity is detected or the steering power from the system is not sufficient, the driver steering intervention request will alert the driver using audio and visual signals. Take over the steering and keep your hands on the steering wheel so that you will be ready to steer at any time.

If the driver does not take over steering, adaptive cruise control (with traffic jam assist) will be switched off. The system brakes the vehicle until it is stationary.*

WARNING

- Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.
- The activated traffic jam assist is only an assist system, and the driver is still responsible for controlling the vehicle. The driver is especially responsible for braking, steering, starting to drive, and controlling the speed and the distance from other vehicles.
- Turn on the traffic jam assist only if the surrounding conditions permit it. Always adapt your driving style to the current visual, weather, road, and traffic conditions.
- Switch the traffic jam assist off temporarily when driving in turning lanes or highway exits. This prevents the vehicle from accelerating to the stored speed when in these situations.

Tips

- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
- Pay attention to applicable local regulations relating to driving tasks, leaving space for emergency vehicles, etc. The driver is always responsible for following the laws that are applicable in the location where the vehicle is being operated.
- If traffic jam assist was deactivated through the MMI, you can continue operating the Audi active lane assist using the ⇨ *fig. 121* button ⇨ *page 137*. The traffic jam assist functions are no longer available.
- You are not necessarily guided to the center of your lane.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with traffic jam assist

If , , or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the traffic jam assist functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

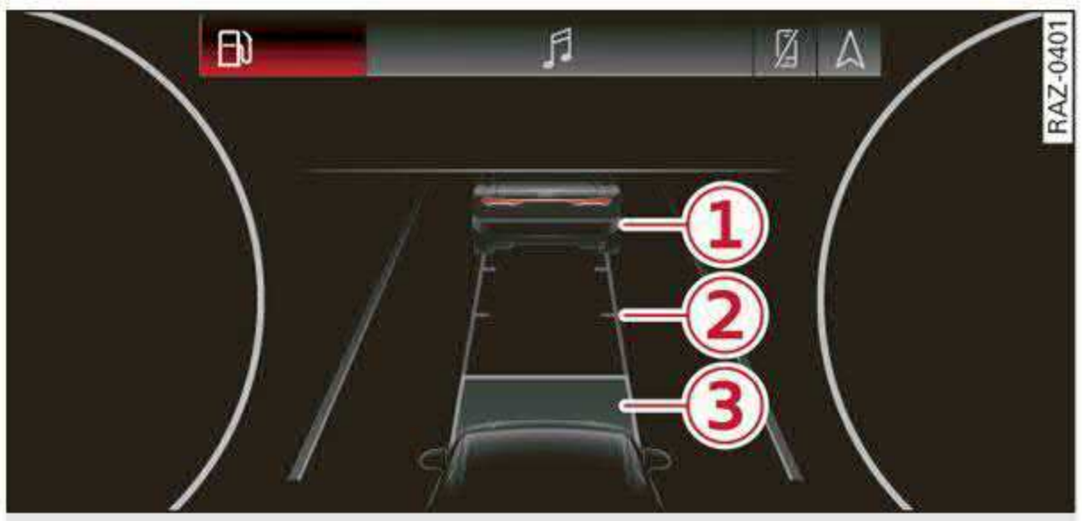
A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 116, fig. 106* and try to turn on the systems again later.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Distance warning

Description

Applies to: vehicles with distance warning



Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise control:
Fig. 122 Instrument cluster: display of the current distance



Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control
Fig. 123 Instrument cluster: distance warning

General information

At speeds above approximately 40 mph (65 km/h), this function measures the distance to the vehicle ahead as time. If the distance falls below the warning threshold and remains there, the system will warn you of the hazard with the indicator light.

Image in the Driver assistance display

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

The display only appears if the **Driver assistance** display is selected in the on-board computer ⇨ *page 15* and the adaptive cruise control is not actively controlling the vehicle.

① Detected vehicle driving ahead

② Use the markings to help you estimate the distance to an obstacle. Each marking represents approximately one second.

③ Set warning threshold. Depending on the settings, the display will be colored in from the bottom to the top.

④ The actual distance is smaller than the set distance and you will be informed about the danger.

Adjusting the distance warning

The system can be switched on or off in the MMI and you can customize the distance warning threshold. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

– Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > **Distance warning**.

Messages

If or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the distance warning functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 116* and try to turn on the systems again later.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.

Tips

– The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.

– You may fall below the warning threshold briefly when passing or when quickly approaching a vehicle driving ahead. There is no warning in this scenario. A warning is given only if you fall below the warning threshold for an extended period of time.

Audi active lane assist

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

The active lane assist can detect lane marker lines within the limits of the system. If you are approaching a detected lane marker and it appears likely that you will leave the lane, the system can warn you with corrective steering and a steering wheel vibration, if necessary.

The system functions in the speed range of approximately 40 mph - 155 mph (65 km/h - 250 km/h).

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

If the conditions are met, traffic jam assist switches on at speeds under approximately 40 mph (65 km/h) ⇨ *page 134*.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.

Display and warning

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

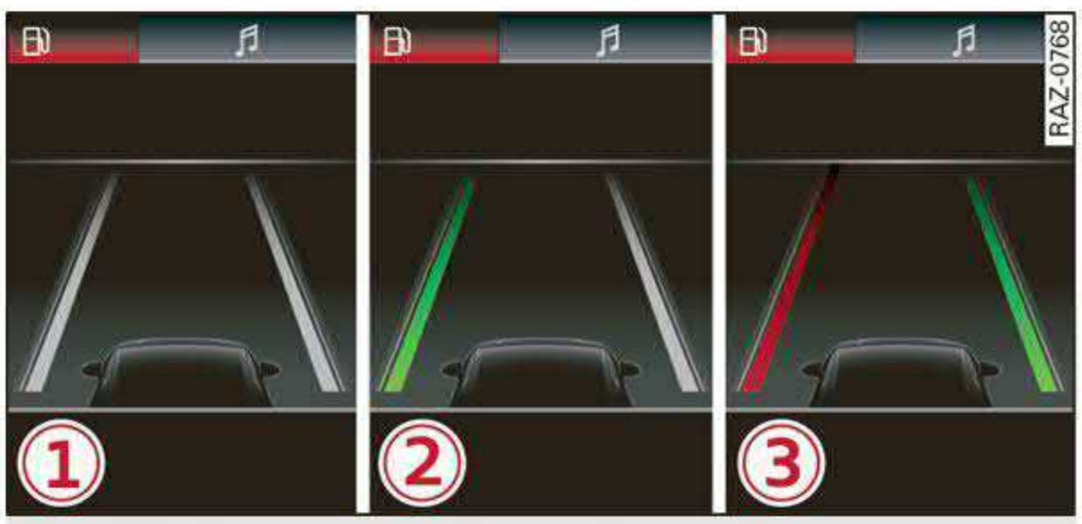


Fig. 124 Instrument cluster (multi-color display): driver assistance display

The availability, readiness to provide warnings, and the warnings are indicated with indicator lights. Active lane assist is ready to provide warnings if an object is detected on at least one side of the lane where your vehicle is traveling.

The displays depend on the vehicle equipment.

Driver assistance display		Indicator lights		
Multi-color display	**Monochrome display**	**Audi virtual cockpit**	**Instrument cluster (analog)**	**Meaning**
① White lines	Dark gray lines			Active lane assist is activated, but is not ready to provide warnings.
② Green lines	Light gray line			Active lane assist is activated and ready to provide warnings.
③ Red line	Blinking line			Active lane assist will warn you before the vehicle leaves a lane. The steering wheel will also vibrate lightly.

If the system is switched on but is not ready to provide warnings, one of the following could be the cause:

– There is no lane marker line
– The necessary lane marker lines have not been detected (for example, in a construction zone or because the lines are obstructed by snow, dirt, water, or lighting)
– The speed is below the activation speed
– The lane is too narrow or too wide
– The curve is too narrow
– The driver's hands are not on the steering wheel
– Visibility is obstructed by a rise or dip. ▶

Steering intervention request

If no steering activity is detected or the steering power from the system is not sufficient, the driver steering intervention request will alert the driver using audio and visual signals. Take over the steering and keep your hands on the steering wheel so that you will be ready to steer at any time. The system may no longer be ready to provide warnings after a short time, and it will only become active again later.

If the driver takes over steering, active lane assist will be switched off.

Behavior when a turn signal is active

Applies to: vehicles with side assist: The system will not warn you if you activate a turn signal before crossing the lane marker line. In this case, it assumes that you are changing lanes intentionally.

Applies to: vehicles with side assist: If the side assist system classifies a lane change as critical due to other vehicles traveling with your vehicle or approaching your vehicle when your turn signal is activated, there will be a noticeable steering correction shortly before your vehicle leaves the lane. This will attempt to keep your vehicle in the lane.

WARNING

- Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.
- The system warns the driver that the vehicle is leaving the lane using corrective steering. The driver is always responsible for keeping the vehicle within the lane.
- Corrective steering may not occur at all in certain situations, such as during heavy braking. Always be ready to intervene.

Tips

- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel so you can be ready to steer at any time. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
- The system does not provide any corrective steering or steering wheel vibrations if it detects that you are passing another vehicle.
- The image in the **Driver assistance** display only appears if it was opened in the onboard computer ⇨ *page 15*.

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist



Fig. 125 Turn signal lever: switching Audi active lane assist on and off

Active lane assist switches on automatically as soon as the ignition is switched on [1].

▸ To switch the system on or off, press the button ⇨ *fig. 125*. The respective indicator light in the instrument cluster will turn off or on.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.

Adjusting Audi active lane assist

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

You can adjust active lane assist individually. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > **Audi active lane assist**

Possible settings: ▶

[1] In certain countries

– **Steering correction** – With the **Early** setting, steering correction occurs continuously in order to help the driver keep the vehicle in the center of the lane. In the **Late** setting, the steering correction will only occur shortly before a wheel crosses a detected lane marker line.
– **Vibration warning** – You can select if you would also like to be warned using a vibration in the steering wheel.

Tips

Certain settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

If  or  is displayed when there is a malfunction, the active lane assist functions may be unavailable or limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. The weather conditions may be too poor or the camera may be covered. Clean the area in front of the camera ⇨ *page 116* and try to turn on the systems again later.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Audi pre sense

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

Within the limits of the system, the Audi pre sense functions can initiate measures in certain driving situations to protect the vehicle occupants and other road users. Depending on the vehicle equipment, various Audi pre sense systems may be installed:

– **Audi pre sense basic** can react during emergency and dangerous braking maneuvers and unstable driving situations (such as oversteering or understeering).
– **Audi pre sense front** can detect an impending frontal collision with vehicles ahead and react with warnings, braking interventions, and preemptive safety measures for the vehicle occupants.
– **Audi pre sense city** can detect an impending collision with vehicles and pedestrians and react with warnings, braking interventions, and preemptive safety measures for the vehicle occupants.
– **Audi pre sense rear** monitors the rear traffic behind your vehicle and can react to an impending rear impact.
– The **swerve assist** can help you to steer the vehicle around an obstacle during an evasive maneuver that is detected as critical.
– The **turn assist** can detect vehicles in the opposite lane and react with braking maneuvers.

Audi pre sense safety measures

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

Depending on the vehicle speed and the vehicle equipment, the following functions may be initiated in certain situations:

– Visual and audio warnings
– Reversible tensioning of safety belts
– Closing the windows and panoramic glass roof
– Adjusting the seats

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.

Tips

– Depending on the dangerous situation that is detected and the selected Audi drive select* mode, all preemptive safety measures may not be initiated under certain circumstances. Certain functions can be adjusted or skipped if necessary.
– Audi pre sense may be restricted or unavailable under certain circumstances, for example if:
  – There are passengers with unfastened safety belts ▶

– It has only been several seconds since the ignition was switched on The indicator light turns on.
– When driving in reverse
– The front passenger's airbag is switched off
– There is an airbag control module malfunction
– System functions may not be available if the ESC is limited or switched off, or if there is a malfunction.

Audi pre sense basic

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense basic

Audi pre sense basic is automatically active at speeds of approximately 20 mph (30 km/h) and higher. The system can trigger the Audi pre sense preemptive safety measures during emergency braking and dangerous braking maneuvers as well as in unstable driving situations, such as oversteering or understeering.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.

Audi pre sense front

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense front

The **Audi pre sense front** system uses the data from the radar sensors and calculates the probability of a rear-end collision. Within the limits of the system, an impending collision with the front of the vehicle can be detected in both urban and rural speed ranges.

Early warning/acute warning

The system can recognize various dangerous situations. The **early warning** occurs if:

– A vehicle driving ahead brakes suddenly
– Your own vehicle approaches a significantly slower vehicle or stationary vehicle in the direction of travel

The message **Audi pre sense** or **Audi pre sense** and a warning tone will warn you about the danger.

If there is an impending collision with vehicles, there may also be an **acute warning** in the form of sharp braking. You will also be warned by an indicator in the instrument cluster display. When this warning occurs, it may only be possible to avoid a collision by swerving or braking strongly.

Automatic deceleration

If you do not react to the acute warning, Audi pre sense can brake the vehicle to a full stop within the limits of the system if the vehicle is traveling at low speeds. This reduces the vehicle speed in the event of a collision.

Automatic braking force increase

If Audi pre sense determines that you are not braking strongly enough when a collision is imminent, it can increase the braking force based on the situation.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.
– Audi pre sense front cannot overcome natural physical laws. It is a system designed to assist and it cannot prevent a collision in every circumstance. The driver must always intervene. The driver is always responsible for braking at the correct time. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.
– Audi pre sense front does not react to certain objects, such as people/cyclists, animals, crossing or oncoming vehicles, bars, railings, or railcars.
– Audi pre sense front may be limited or unavailable when driving in curves.
– Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Store objects securely while driving.

Tips

Certain pre sense front functions will switch off when the ESC is restricted or switched off ▶

⇨ *page 110*, when there is a malfunction, or when the hill hold assist* is switched on ⇨ *page 105*.

Audi pre sense city

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense city

Audi pre sense city uses data from the camera and calculates within the limits of the system the probability of a collision with vehicles and pedestrians.

Audi pre sense city is active at speeds of approximately 6 mph (10 km/h) and higher.

It can warn about pedestrians at speeds up to approximately 50 mph (85 km/h) and vehicles at speeds up to approximately 155 mph (250 km/h).

Automatic deceleration is possible at speeds up to 50 mph (85 km/h).

Early warning/acute warning

The system can recognize various dangerous situations. The **early warning** occurs if:

– A vehicle driving ahead brakes suddenly
– Your own vehicle approaches a vehicle in front of you that is traveling at a significantly slower speed or that is stationary
– A pedestrian is standing in the lane or is moving into the lane

A warning tone and the message **Audi pre sense** or **Audi pre sense** (depending on vehicle equipment) will warn you about the danger.

If there is an impending collision with vehicles, there may also be an **acute warning** in the form of sharp braking. You will also be warned by an indicator in the instrument cluster display. When this warning occurs, it may only be possible to avoid a collision by swerving or braking strongly.

Automatic deceleration

If you do not react to the acute warning, Audi pre sense can brake the vehicle to a full stop within the limits of the system if the vehicle is traveling at low speeds. This reduces the vehicle speed in the event of a collision.

Automatic braking force increase

If Audi pre sense determines that you are not braking strongly enough when a collision is imminent, it can increase the braking force based on the situation.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.
– Audi pre sense city cannot overcome natural physical laws. It is a system designed to assist and it cannot prevent a collision in every circumstance. The driver must always intervene. The driver is always responsible for braking at the correct time. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.
– Audi pre sense city does not react to certain objects, such as animals, crossing or oncoming vehicles, bars, railings, or railcars.
– Audi pre sense city may be limited or unavailable in curves or when it is dark.
– Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Store objects securely while driving.

Tips

Certain pre sense front functions will switch off when the ESC is restricted or switched off ⇨ *page 110*, when there is a malfunction, or when the hill hold assist* is switched on ⇨ *page 105*.

Audi pre sense rear

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense rear

Within the limits of the system, **Audi pre sense rear** uses data from radar sensors in the rear area of the vehicle and calculates the probability of a rear-end collision with the vehicle behind you.

Audi pre sense preemptive safety measures can be initiated if the risk of a collision with the vehicle behind you is detected. ▶

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.
– Audi pre sense rear does not react to pedestrians, animals, crossing objects, and objects not detected as vehicles.

Tips

Audi pre sense rear functions may also switch off if there is a malfunction in the side assist system.

Swerve assist

Applies to: vehicles with swerve assist

The swerve assist can help you to steer the vehicle around an obstacle detected in a critical area. If you avoid an obstacle after the acute warning, then the swerve assist assists you by applying slight steering adjustment to correct your steering wheel angle as long as you are actively steering. Swerve assist is available at speeds between approximately 20 mph (30 km/h) and 90 mph (150 km/h).

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.
– Swerve assist does not react to pedestrians, animals, crossing objects, and objects not detected as vehicles.

Tips

– System functions may not be available if the ESC is limited or switched off, or if there is a malfunction.
– An indicator in the instrument cluster will inform you when there is an intervention.

Turn assist

Applies to: vehicles with turn assist

When your vehicle is turning

The turn assist can assist you with a braking intervention when starting to drive or when driving slowly, to reduce the risk of your vehicle colliding with an oncoming vehicle when you are making a left turn[1)]. The braking intervention causes your vehicle to stay in its lane. The function is only available when the turn signal is turned on and at speeds up to maximum of 6 mph (10 km/h).

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.
– The turn assist does not react to pedestrians, animals, crossing objects, and objects not detected as vehicles.

Tips

– System functions may not be available if the ESC is limited or switched off, or if there is a malfunction.
– An indicator in the instrument cluster will inform you when there is an intervention.

Adjusting Audi pre sense

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

You can adjust the Audi pre sense functions to your preferences. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > **Audi pre sense**.

Possible settings:

The pre sense functions can be switched on and off.

Prewarning[2)] - The prewarning can be switched off or the Audi pre sense warning time can be set (**Early**/**Medium**/**Late**). ▶

1) When making a right turn in countries with left-hand drive vehicles.
2) In certain countries

Set the warning time for the early warning to **Early** at first. If this causes undesired early warnings to appear, then set the warning time to **Medium**. The **Late** warning time should only be set in special circumstances.

Tips

- If Audi pre sense is switched off, it switches on again automatically once the ignition is switched on again.[1)]
- Switch Audi pre sense off when you are not using public streets, when loading the vehicle onto a vehicle carrier, train, ship, or other type of transportation, or when towing the vehicle. This can help to prevent an undesired intervention from the Audi pre sense system.
- Certain settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

If  or  is displayed when there is a malfunction, the Audi pre sense functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 116* and try to turn on the systems again later.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Side assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with side assist

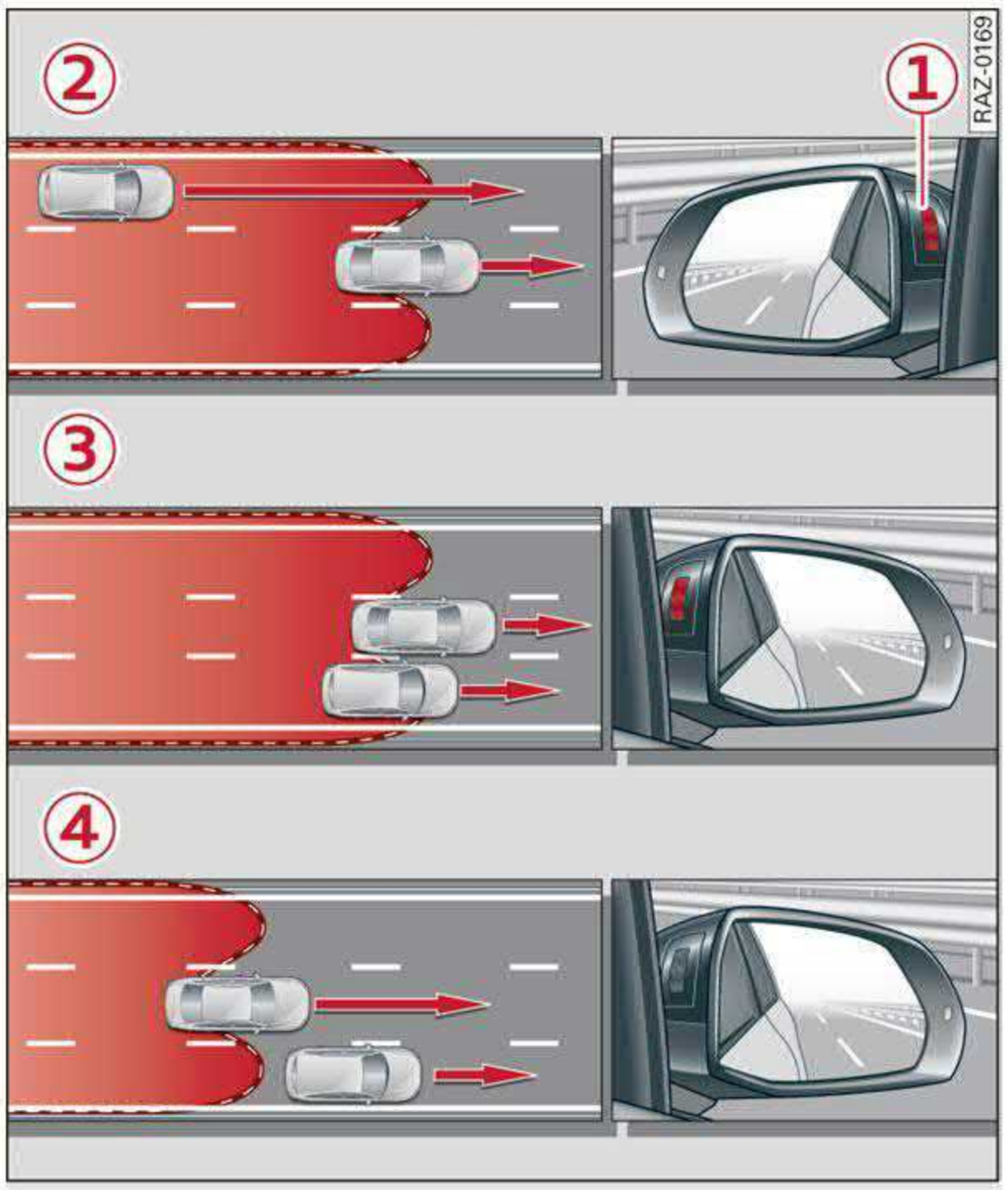


Fig. 126 Examples: driving situations and exterior mirror display

General information

Side assist monitors the blind spot and traffic behind your vehicle and provides assistance when you are changing lanes. If the system detects an object approaching and classifies it as critical, the display ① in the exterior mirror on that side of the vehicle will turn on,

Driving situations

The side assist warning is active at speeds above approximately 9 mph (15 km/h) and can help in situations such as the following:

② Your vehicle is being passed. The faster another vehicle approaches from behind, the sooner the display in the outside mirror will turn on.

③ There are vehicles traveling in the same direction as you in a lane adjacent to yours. The display in the exterior mirror will turn on ▶

1) In certain countries

when the detected object is in the “blind spot”, at the latest.

④ You are slowly passing another vehicle. If the difference in speed between the two vehicles is less than 9 mph (15 km/h), the display in the exterior mirror will turn on.

Information stage

If you do not activate a turn signal, the system will inform you about objects classified as critical by turning on the display in the respective exterior mirror. The display remains dim in the information stage so that you are not distracted while looking forward.

Warning stage

Once you activate a turn signal, the system will inform you about objects classified as critical by turning on the display in the respective exterior mirror.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the display may also provide a warning when the turn signal is not activated: if driver assist systems detect that your vehicle is about to leave a lane, the display will blink to warn you about objects classified as critical. You can also be warned with corrective steering ⇨ *page 137, Audi active lane assist*.

System limitations

The system uses the data from the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle ⇨ *page 116, fig. 107*. They are designed to detect the left and right adjacent lanes when the road lanes are the normal width. In some situations, the system may react to vehicles in your own lane or lanes that are not directly adjacent to yours, or to objects on the side of the road. In this case, the display will turn on even though there is no vehicle in the critical area. These situations may include:

– Driving on the edge of your own lane
– Narrow lanes
– Curves
– High barriers on the side of the road

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.
– The display may not appear on time when vehicles are approaching or being passed very quickly.

Tips

– If the window glass in the driver's door or front passenger's door has been tinted, the display in the exterior mirror may be incorrect.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 275*.

Adjusting side assist

Applies to: vehicles with side assist

You can adjust the side assist to your preferences. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > **Side assist**.

Possible settings:

The system can be switched on and off. If the system is switched on, the displays in the exterior mirrors will turn on briefly each time the ignition is switched on.

Brightness – Change the brightness only when side assist is switched on, so that the selected setting can be checked in the exterior mirror displays. Adjust the brightness to a level where the display will not interfere with your view ahead. Because the display brightness automatically adapts to the ambient light, it may have already been adjusted to the highest or lowest setting during the automatic adaptation.

Tips

– If you switch side assist on or off, the exit warning will also switch on or off. ▶

– Certain settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with side assist

If  or  is displayed when there is a malfunction, the side assist and exit warning system functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. Clean the sensor area in the vehicle rear and try to turn the systems on again later.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Exit warning

Description

Applies to: vehicles with exit warning system

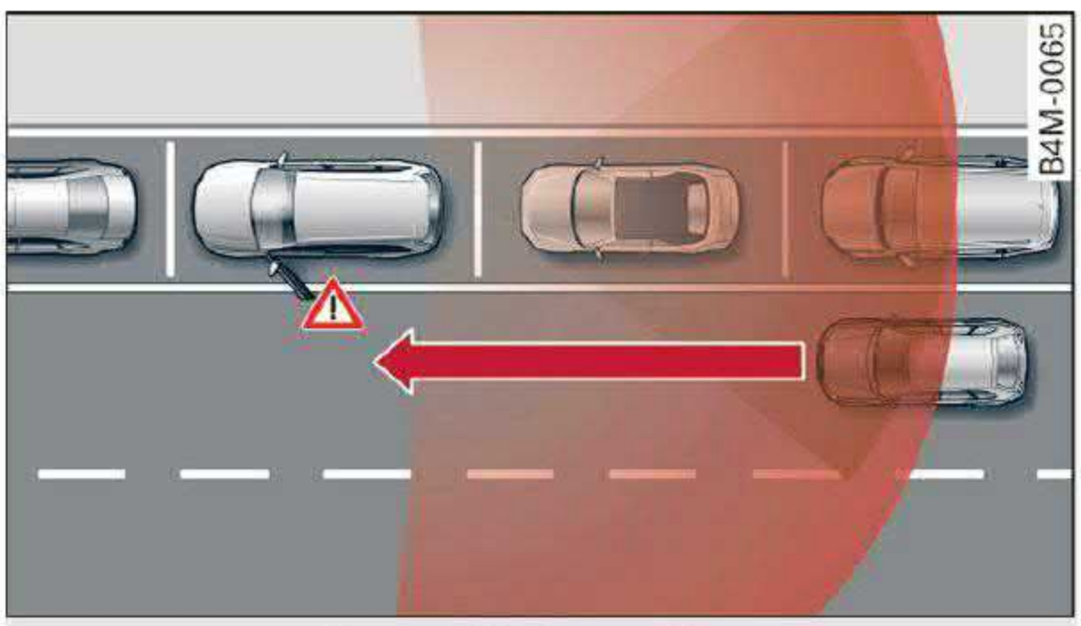


Fig. 127 Approaching traffic detected

Fig. 128 Front door: exit warning

General information

Within system limits, the exit warning system can detect traffic approaching from behind such as vehicles, and provide assistance based on this information when you are exiting the vehicle ⇨ *fig. 127*. The system uses the data from the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle.

Displays and warnings

If a door is opened while the vehicle is stationary, the warning strip ① on that door and the display ② on that side of the vehicle will blink if another road user is detected in a critical situation, If another road user that is classified as critical is approaching while a door is already open, the displays on that door will turn on.

The same messages apply for the exit warning system and side assist ⇨ *page 145*.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.
– Always pay attention to traffic and to the area around your vehicle. The exit warning system does not replace the attention of the vehicle occupants. The vehicle occupants are always responsible for opening the doors and exiting the vehicle.
– The exit warning system does not respond to people and cannot warn you about every type of approaching objects, such as cyclists. Always monitor the traffic as well as the vehicle's surroundings with direct eye contact.
– The display may not appear in time when vehicles are approaching very quickly.
– The exit warning system does not react to stationary objects or pedestrians.
– The exit warning system will not provide alerts if your vehicle is pulled too far into the parking space so that it is hidden by adjacent vehicles.

Tips

– The exit warning is switched on or off by the side assist warning ⇨ *page 144*.

– The exit warning system can be available for up to approximately three minutes after unlocking the vehicle and opening the door as well as after switching off the ignition. Then the displays flash briefly and the system switches off.
– The display brightness for the exit warning system cannot be adjusted.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 275*.

Parking and maneuvering

Introduction

Depending on the vehicle equipment, various parking aids will help you when parking and maneuvering.

Parking aid

The **parking aid plus** assists you while parking using audio and visual signals to warn you about objects detected in front of, behind, and next to* the vehicle ⇨ *page 147*.

The **rearview camera** shows the area behind the vehicle in the center display. The lines in the rearview camera image help you to park and maneuver ⇨ *page 149*.

The **peripheral cameras** are an addition to the rearview camera and help you to see various areas around the vehicle while parking and maneuvering ⇨ *page 149*.

The **rear cross-traffic assist** can warn you of approaching cross traffic when driving in reverse or exiting a parking space ⇨ *page 152*.

Assisted parking

Park assist helps you to find suitable parking spaces and to park in and exit these spaces while the driver monitors the area around the vehicle and controls the parking process. **Park assist** controls the steering movements when parking in free parking spaces. The driver is still responsible for accelerating, braking, and shifting gears ⇨ *page 154*.

Settings options

You can adjust parking aid functions individually. The adjustment options depend on the vehicle equipment.

– **Activating automatically** ⇨ *page 147*
– **Front and rear volume** ⇨ *page 148*
– **Entertainment fader** ⇨ *page 148*
– **Clean rearview camera** ⇨ *page 150*
– **View** ⇨ *page 151*
– **Rear cross-traffic assist** ⇨ *page 153*

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.

Tips

Practicing parking in a traffic-free location or parking lot to become familiar with the systems is recommended. Practice parking in good light and weather conditions.

Parking aid plus

Activating/deactivating

Applies to: vehicles with parking aid plus

General information

The parking aid assists when parking and maneuvering by providing warnings about obstacles. If the ultrasonic sensors on the vehicle ⇨ *page 116, fig. 107* detect an obstacle, the system will provide audio and visual warnings.

Activating/deactivating

Requirement: the vehicle speed must be under approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).

▸ Press the P button in the center console. When activating, a brief tone will sound and the LED in the button will turn on.

Automatic activation

▸ The system activates automatically when reverse gear is engaged while the engine is running. A brief tone will sound.

If **Automatic activation** is switched on in the MMI and if the vehicle approaches an obstacle at speeds below approximately 6 mph (10 km/h), the parking aid will switch on automatically. Audible signals will sound once the obstacle is within the sensor detection area.

▸ Applies to: MMI: To switch **Automatic activation** on or off, select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Parking aid** > **Automatic activation**.

Automatic deactivation

The distance indicator for the parking aid plus will deactivate automatically when driving ▶

8W1012721BB

forward faster than approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.

Note

Keep enough distance from the curb to avoid damage to the rims.

Tips

- If the parking aid is switched off, it can only be reactivated automatically when one of the following conditions is met:
- The vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h)
- The ignition was switched off and back on again
- The parking brake was set and then released
- The “P” gear was engaged and released again

Warnings

Applies to: vehicles with parking aid plus

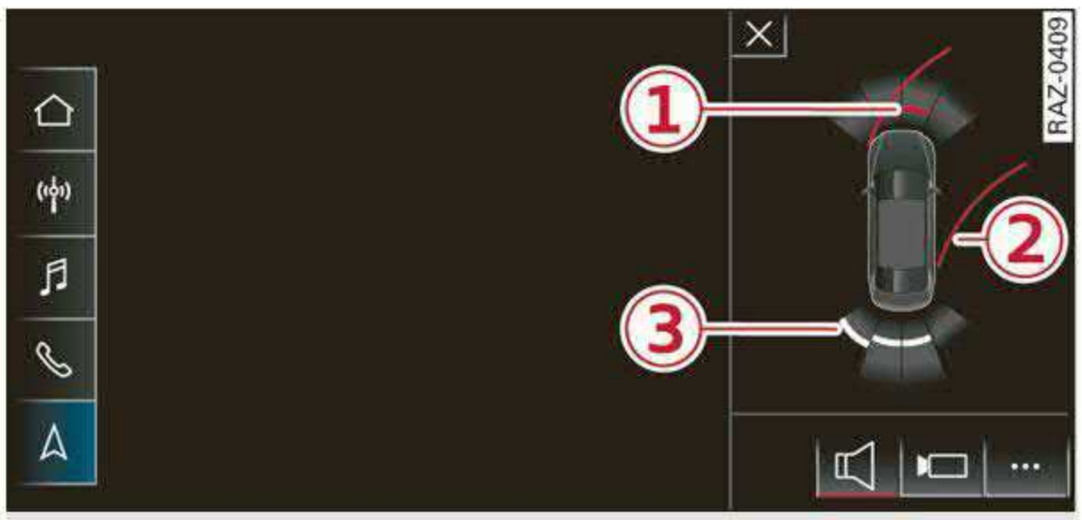


Fig. 129 Center display: distance display

If the sensors detect an obstacle, audible and visual signals will warn you.

Visual warnings

The visual warnings in the center display help you to detect the critical vehicle area and to estimate the distance to an obstacle.

Red segments ① show detected obstacles that are in your vehicle's path. The red lines ② mark the expected direction of travel based on the steering angle. A white segment ③ indicates a detected obstacle that is outside of the vehicle's path. The closer your vehicle comes to the obstacle, the closer the segments will move to the vehicle. The collision area has been reached when the next to last segment is displayed. Obstacles in the collision area, including those outside of the vehicle's path, are shown in red. Do not continue driving farther.

Audio signals

The closer your vehicle gets to a detected obstacle, the shorter the time between the audible signals. A continuous tone sounds when an obstacle is less than approximately 1 foot (0.30 m) away from the front or rear of the vehicle. A continuous tone sounds when an obstacle is less than approximately 0.7 feet (0.20 m) away from the sides* of the vehicle. Do not continue driving forward or in reverse ⇨ (!).

- To deactivate audio signals while parking, press in the center display. The audio signals will be automatically activated again the next time the parking aid is activated.

Adjusting the volume

You can adjust the volume to your preferences. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Parking aid**. Or:
- Press ··· in the center display when the parking aid is active.

Possible settings:

Front volume - Volume for the front and side* area.

Rear volume – Volume for the rear area.

Entertainment fader – The volume of the audio/video source is lowered when the parking aid is activated.

The new level is demonstrated briefly* when the volume is adjusted.

Error messages

If P appears, the sensor in the respective area or the speaker is faulty. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired. ▶

If P or P is displayed when there is a malfunction, the parking aid functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 116, fig. 106* and try to turn on the systems again later.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

- Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.
- Sensors and cameras have spots in which the surrounding area cannot be detected. Objects, animals, and people may only be detected with limitations may not be detected at all. Always monitor the traffic and the vehicle's surroundings directly and do not become distracted.

Note

- Keep enough distance from the curb to avoid damage to the rims.
- Applies to: vehicles with park assist: If you park in short parking spaces using park assist, a continuous tone will sound from the parking aid when the distance to an object is less than approximately 0.7 ft (0.20 m). Do not continue driving farther.

Tips

- The segments in the side area* are detected and analyzed when passing. If you switch the ignition off and on again or open the door, or if the vehicle is stationary for a period of time, the surrounding area may have changed in the meantime. In this scenario, the side area* will appear black until the area has been detected and evaluated.
- If the distance to an obstacle remains constant, the volume of the distance warning gradually lowers after a few seconds until it is muted (this does not apply to the continuous tone). If the obstacle comes closer than it was before the sound was muted, the tone will sound again. If the obstacle becomes farther away than it was before the sound was muted, no tone will sound. Pay attention to the vehicle's surroundings when you start to drive.

Rearview camera and peripheral cameras

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera/peripheral cameras

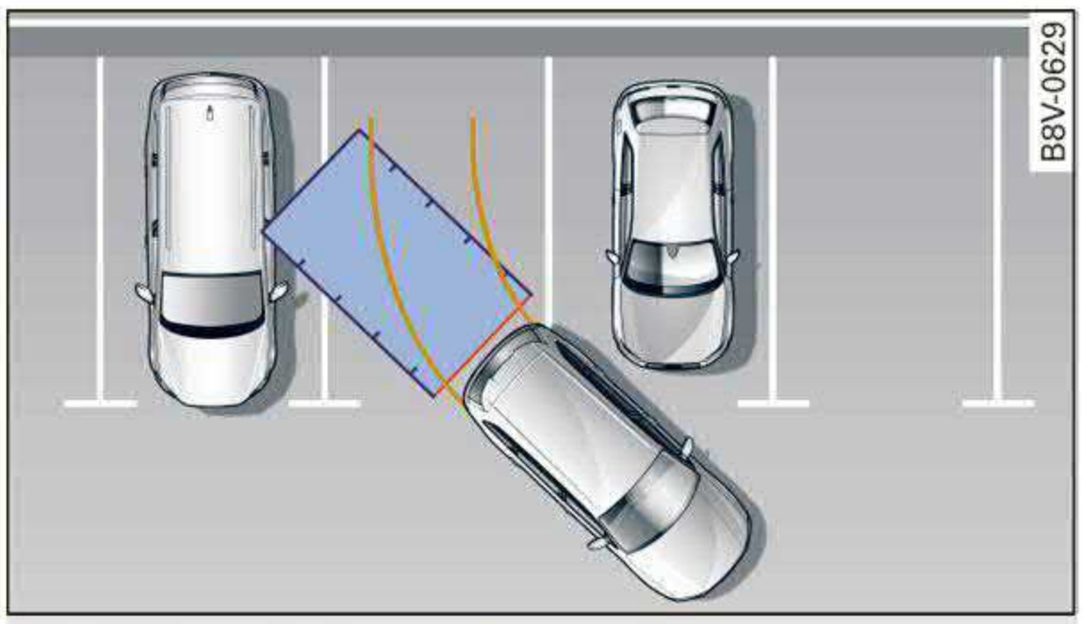


Fig. 130 Orientation line display when parking

Depending on the vehicle equipment, a rearview camera or multiple peripheral cameras may be available.

The **rearview camera** helps you to park or maneuver using the orientation lines.

The **peripheral cameras** expand the vehicle overview to include various views around the vehicle that can be selected.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.

Activating/deactivating

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera/peripheral cameras

Activating/deactivating

▸ Press the P button in the center console. When activating, a brief tone will sound and the LED in the button will turn on. Or ▶

▸ Press ▸▭ in the center display if the visual distance indicator is shown ⇨ *page 148, fig. 129*.

The system can be activated at low speeds, such when maneuvering.

Automatic activation

The system activates automatically when reverse gear is engaged while the engine is running. A brief tone will sound.

Automatic deactivation

The system will deactivate automatically once the vehicle exceeds a certain speed while driving forward.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.

Clean rearview camera

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera/peripheral cameras

Depending on vehicle equipment, you may be able to manually initiate rear view camera cleaning.

▸ Move the window wiper lever into the position for cleaning the rear window ⇨ *page 55*.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.

Warnings

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera/peripheral cameras

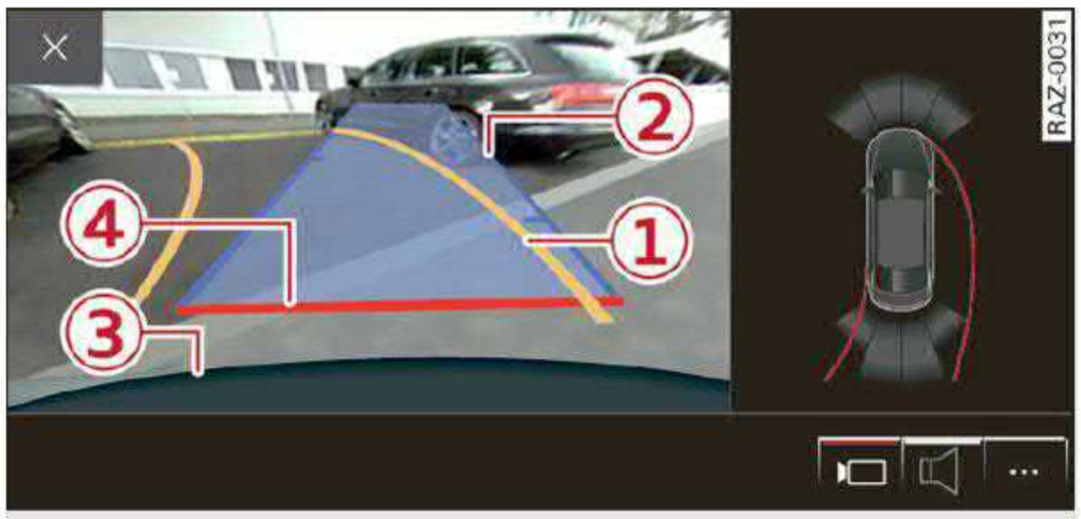


Fig. 131 Center display: aiming at a parking spot

When parking with the rearview camera or peripheral camera, the parking aid plus audio and visual warnings* will also assist you ⇨ *page 148*.

Visual orientation lines

① The orange orientation lines show the vehicle's direction of travel ⇨ ⓘ. Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines align with the parking space.

② Use the blue markings to help you estimate the distance to an obstacle. Each marking represents approximately 3 feet (1 meter). The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 feet (5 meters) to the rear.

③ You can recognize the rear bumper in the lower display.

④ You should stop driving in reverse when the red orientation line touches the edge of an object, at the latest.

Symbols

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

If /// is displayed and the display area represented by that symbol is not available, then the camera on the that side is not available. The power exterior mirrors may have been folded in or a door or the luggage compartment lid may have been opened.

If is displayed, there is a system malfunction and the display area represented by that symbol is not available. The camera is not working in this area.

If one of the symbols continues to be displayed, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.
– Sensors and cameras have spots in which the surrounding area cannot be detected. Objects, animals, and people may only be detected with limitations may not be detected at all. Always monitor the traffic and the ▸

vehicle's surroundings directly and do not become distracted.

Note

– The orange orientation lines ① show the direction the rear of the vehicle will be traveling, based on the steering wheel angle. The front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle. Maintain plenty of distance so that an exterior mirror or a corner of the vehicle does not collide with any obstacles.
– Keep enough distance from the curb to avoid damage to the rims.
– Only use the images provided by the camera on the rear of the vehicle when the luggage compartment lid is completely closed. Make sure any objects you may have mounted on the luggage compartment lid do not block the rearview camera.

Operating the peripheral cameras

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

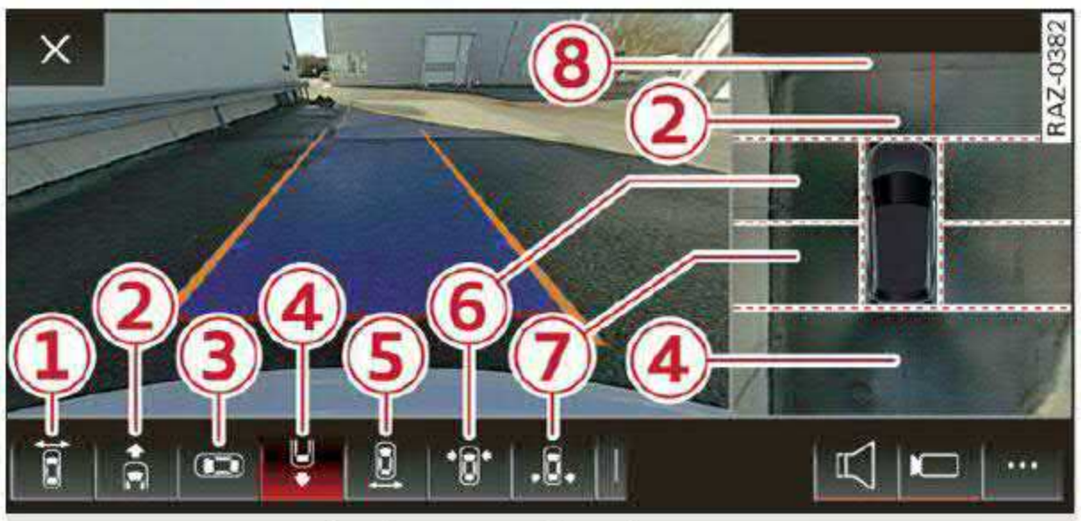


Fig. 132 Center display: peripheral cameras.

On vehicles with peripheral cameras, you can select among different views.

Selecting the views

► To display the entire selection bar, tap the current view ① or swipe at the edge of the selection bar from left to right.

► To select a view, press ① - ⑦ in the center display or tap in an area to show the vehicle in the side view [1].

Selecting a view in the side area

The vehicle surroundings are shown in the side area of the display. You can switch between a visual display (**Graphic**) and the vehicle surroundings (**Camera**).

► Select ··· > **View** in the center display when the parking aid is active.

	Symbol/Description	Description
①	**Front corner** or display the selection bar	This view makes it easier to drive out of tight parking spaces or areas and intersections with poor visibility. It shows an almost 180° panorama view in front of the vehicle.
②	**Front**	This view assists you in using the full area for maneuvering in front of the vehicle.
③	**Surroundings**	This view helps you to maneuver and position the vehicle more precisely. The area around the vehicle is shown using the camera images. The vehicle image is shown by the system ⇨ ⚠.
④	**Rear**	This view assists you in using the full area for maneuvering behind the vehicle. This is the rearview camera image.

1) Requirement: The vehicle surroundings (**Camera**) must be selected in the **View** in the side area.

	Symbol/Description	Description
⑤	**Rear corner**	This view can assist you when driving out of tight parking spaces or areas with poor visibility. It shows an almost 180° panorama view behind the vehicle.
⑥	**Front tires**	This view helps you to see the distance between the front tires and the curb and the steering wheel angle when parking.
⑦	**Rear tires**	This view helps you to detect the distance between the rear wheels and the curb when parking.
⑧	Steering wheel angle	The red lines represent the estimated direction of travel based on the steering wheel angle ⇨ ⓘ.

WARNING

- Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.
- The **Surroundings** view is created from the individual camera images. The vehicle image is shown by the system. Objects and obstacles above the camera are not displayed.

Note

- Only use the images provided by the camera on the rear of the vehicle when the luggage compartment lid is completely closed. Make sure any objects you may have mounted on the luggage compartment lid do not block the rearview camera.
- The front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle. Maintain plenty of distance so that an exterior mirror or a corner of the vehicle does not collide with any obstacles.

Tips

- Depending on the selected gear, it will automatically switch between the **Front** and **Rear** views. If you switch the view manually, the automatic front/rear camera change will be temporarily deactivated.
- When first activated while a forward gear is engaged, the **Front corner** is displayed.

Rear cross-traffic assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with rear cross-traffic assist

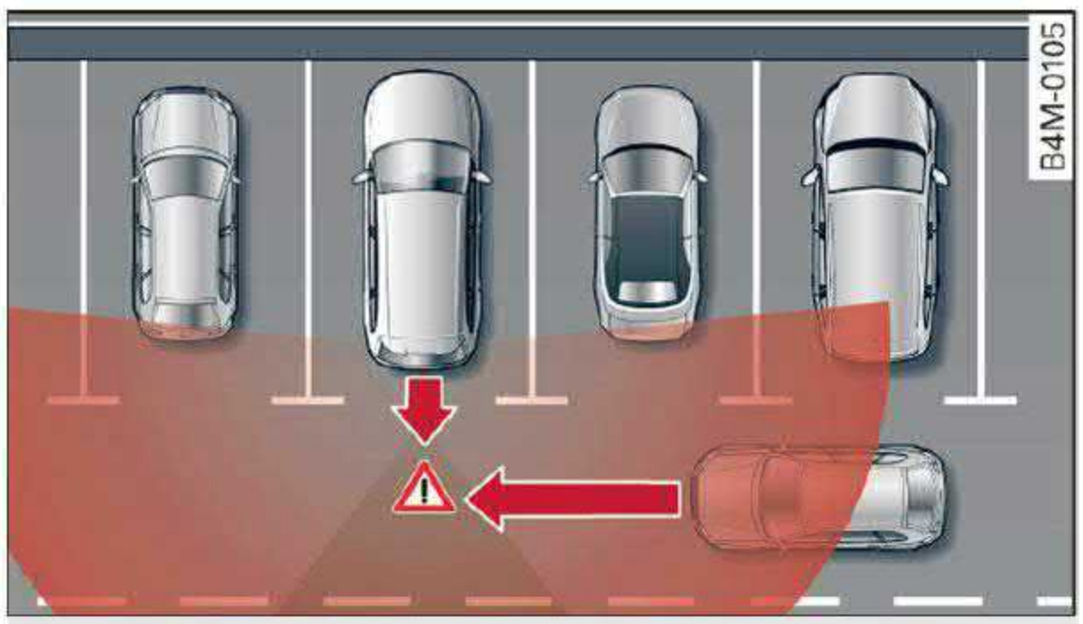


Fig. 133 Sensor detection range for rear cross-traffic assist

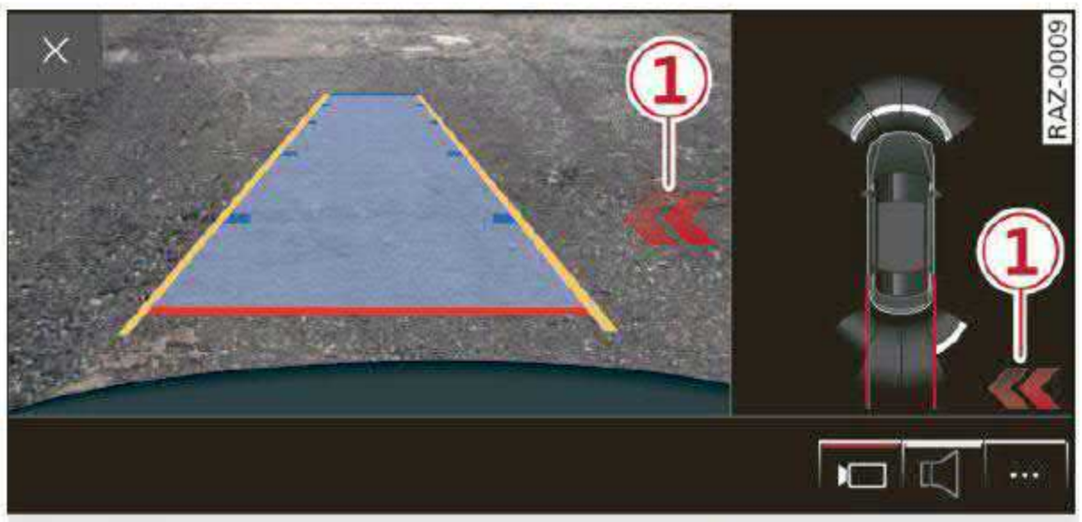


Fig. 134 Center display: rear cross-traffic assist display

General information

The rear cross-traffic assist monitors the area behind and next to the vehicle using radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle. The system can detect moving objects that are approaching, such as vehicles ⇨ *fig. 133*. A display in the MMI and various warnings provide assistance when exiting a parking space. ▶

Requirements

– The parking aid is switched on ⇨ *page 147* or reverse gear is selected.
– The speed when driving in reverse must not be higher than approximately 9 mph (15 km/h).

Displays, warnings, and braking

– **Display**: the display ① appears only when the parking aid is active. For vehicles with peripheral cameras, this only happens in the **Rear** and **Rear corner** camera views. Arrows show the direction from which the cross traffic is approaching.
– **Audible warnings**: a continuous tone may sound as an additional warning when driving in reverse.
– **Automatic brake activation**: if you do not react to a warning, a brief braking by the system can warn you of a potential collision with an approaching object.

The audible warning signal and the automatic brake activation occur only when driving in reverse.

Switching on and off

– Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Parking aid** > **Rear cross-traffic assist**. Or:
– When the parking aid active, select ... > **Rear cross-traffic assist** in the center display.

Messages

If , , P or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the rear cross traffic assist functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. Clean the sensor area in the vehicle rear and try to turn the systems on again later.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.
– The rear cross-traffic assist will not provide alerts about people and cannot warn you about every type of approaching objects, such as cyclists. Always monitor the traffic as well as the vehicle's surroundings with direct eye contact.
– The system may not react if objects are approaching very quickly.
– The rear cross-traffic assist will not provide alerts if your vehicle is parallel or diagonally parked or if your vehicle is pulled too far into the parking space so that it is hidden by adjacent vehicles.

Tips

– Once an automatic brake activation occurs, the system cannot initiate another activation for several seconds.
– System functions may not be available if the ESC is limited or switched off, or if there is a malfunction.
– If there is an audio warning signal from the rear cross-traffic assist, then the parking aid may not be able to provide audio warnings about detected obstacles under certain circumstances.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 275*.
– The coverage areas of the sensors ⇨ *fig. 133* are diagrams and do not represent a true-to-scale image of the sensor ranges.

Assisted parking

General information

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

If your vehicle is equipped with park assist, this system helps you find suitable parking spaces. Parking spaces are measured using ultrasonic sensors on the sides of the vehicle. ▶

If a parking space is found, the system helps you to park while the driver monitors the vehicle's surroundings with the parking aids, cameras*, and direct eye contact. The vehicle moves the steering wheel autonomously.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.

Parking options

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

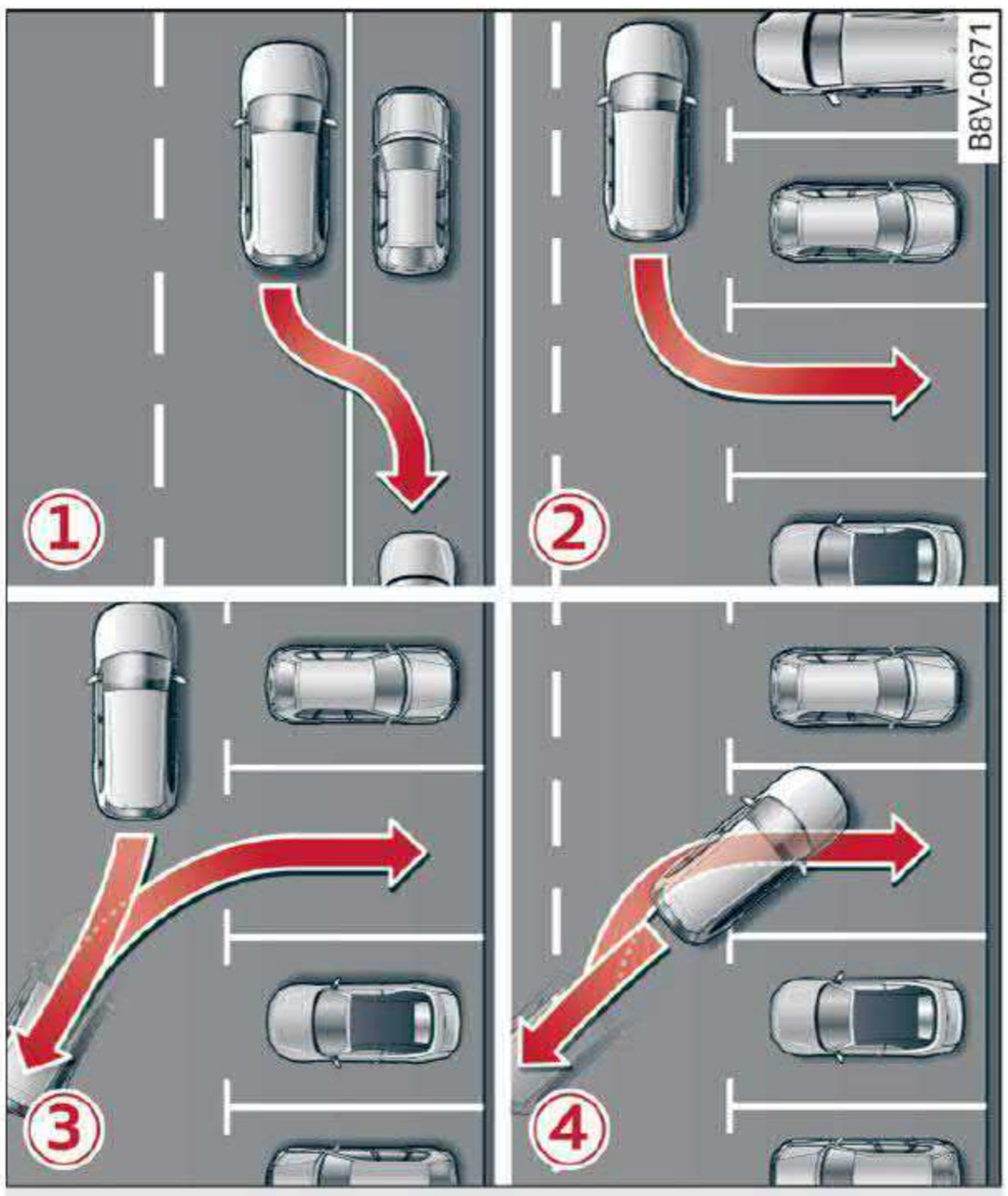


Fig. 135 Parking options overview

Parking options

① Backing into parallel parking spaces

② Backing into perpendicular parking spaces

③ Driving forward into perpendicular parking spaces that you have already driven past

④ Driving forward into perpendicular parking spaces if you have already driven to the space yourself and the front of the vehicle is already in the space

Options for exiting parking spaces

① Exiting parallel parking spaces

Tips

You can also drive into a perpendicular parking space yourself and then activate the system. If this is the case, the front of the vehicle should already be in the space ④ so that the sensors can measure the space.

Parking space search

Applies to: vehicles with park assist



Fig. 136 Center display: activated parking space search

Activating the parking space search

- To activate the parking space search, press the P button in the center console, or
- To activate the parking space search when the parking aid is switched on, press P in the center display.

The LED in the button will turn on and the display for finding a parking space will appear in the center display ⇨ *fig. 136*.

Searching for parking spaces

- Drive forward to the row of parking spaces at a low speed. For the best parking results, the vehicle should be approximately 3 feet (1 m) from the row of parking spaces.
- The parking space search is first done on one side of the lane. To switch the side to park on, turn on the turn signal for the other side or press that side next to the vehicle in the center display.

Selecting the parking space

If the system finds a parking space that could be suitable for the vehicle length and width, it will be displayed. The system automatically suggests a parking option ①. ▶

If the parking space allows different parking options, they can be selected manually. Press one of the suggested parking options (1) in the center display.

Starting the parking process

As soon as the vehicle has reached the correct position, a **P** will appear in the center display above the selected parking space (3). The roof in the parking aid display (2) may show the required braking or driving direction.

- ▸ Keep the vehicle as parallel as possible to the parked vehicles or to the side of the road.
- ▸ Make sure that the parking space is suitable for your vehicle ⇨ (!).

Start parking using the park assist ⇨ *page 156*.

Maneuvering area

The vehicle can go off course during the parking process ⇨ ⚠. If there are obstacles within the maneuvering area that block or endanger the parking process, for example on the opposite side of the street, a message may appear. You may need to drive farther forward and stay closer to the row of parking spaces.

WARNING

- Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.
- The driver is always responsible when entering or exiting a parking space and during similar maneuvers.
- Sensors and cameras have spots in which the surrounding area cannot be detected. Objects, animals, and people may only be detected with limitations may not be detected at all. Always monitor the traffic and the vehicle's surroundings directly and do not become distracted.

Note

- Parking spaces classified as suitable by the system may have been detected incorrectly. The driver must decide if the parking space displayed is suitable for the vehicle.
- Certain conditions near the parking space may cause the parking process to fail, such as if the parking space is near trees or posts, or if the ground is covered, for example, with gravel, snow, or ice.

Tips

- If you did not drive past a suitable parking space too quickly, the system can also be activated afterward by pressing P.
- The Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) must not be switched off during the parking process. If the ESC intervenes, the parking process will be canceled.
- You can also drive into a perpendicular parking space yourself and then activate the system. If this is the case, the front of the vehicle should already be in the space (4) ⇨ *page 154, fig. 135* so that the sensors can measure the space.
- The system is not available when certain assist systems are switched on.
- If there are suitable parking spaces on both sides of the street, for example on a one-way street, you can change the side where the system is searching for parking spaces by activating the turn signal for the other side or by pressing on that side in the center display.
- The park systems do not provide support for assisted parking on tight curves.

Park assist

General information

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

The park assist helps you when parking and exiting parking spaces after the parking space search. The park assist takes over the steering of the vehicle while the driver accelerates, brakes, and monitors the vehicle's surroundings. Park assist can be interrupted at any time.

WARNING

- Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.

– The driver is always responsible when entering or exiting a parking space and during similar maneuvers.
– Do not use this function if the vehicle cannot move freely, for example when on a vehicle jack.
– Sensors and cameras have spots in which the surrounding area cannot be detected. Objects, animals, and people may only be detected with limitations may not be detected at all. Always monitor the traffic and the vehicle's surroundings directly and do not become distracted.

Note

– Do not use the park assist systems when transporting cargo that extends out of the vehicle, when snow chains are mounted, or when the parking space is on a hill or incline.
– Park assist guides the vehicle either away from curbs or onto them if other vehicles are parked on the curb. Make sure that your vehicle's tires and rims are not damaged. Resume control of the vehicle in time or stop the parking process if needed to prevent damage.
– In parking spaces without curbs, maintain a distance of at least 19 inches (50 cm) from walls and buildings in order to reduce the risk of vehicle damage.

Tips

Follow the legal regulations in the country where you are located when using Park assist.

Parking with the park assists

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

Requirement: a suitable parking space must be found and selected ⇨ *page 154*. The vehicle must initially be stationary.

▸ Select the reverse gear after stopping briefly.
▸ Remove your hands from the steering wheel.
▸ Pay attention to the path of the vehicle. If the traffic situation permits, accelerate carefully ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Follow the visual instructions in the center display and the warning tones until the parking process has ended.
▸ The indicators in the center display show the necessary direction of travel. Drive in the direction indicated by the arrows or symbols on the roof in the parking aid image ② ⇨ *page 154, fig. 136*.

Park assist automatically steers the vehicle into the parking space while the driver presses the pedals. The maximum parking speed is approximately 4 mph (7 km/h).

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.
– The park assist is an assist system. The driver is still responsible for monitoring the vehicle's surroundings and preventing collisions when using the system.
– When using park assist to drive into or out of a parking space, the steering wheel turns quickly on its own. Reaching into the steering wheel spokes while this is happening can result in injury.

Tips

You can also cancel the driving direction set by the system by shifting between D and reverse gear. Based on the position of the vehicle, the system then calculates the additional steering and driving directions for maneuvering.

Exiting parking spaces with park assist

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

If you parked the vehicle in a parallel parking space, park assist can help you drive out of it.

▸ Start the engine.
▸ Press the P button in the center console.
▸ Wait until a message appears in the center display that specifies the direction of travel required to exit the parking space. ▶

- ▸ Activate the turn signal on the desired side or press that side next to the vehicle in the center display.
- ▸ Remove your hands from the steering wheel.
- ▸ Pay attention to the path of the vehicle. If the traffic situation permits, accelerate carefully ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Follow the visual instructions in the display and the warning tones until the vehicle has finished exiting the parking space.
- ▸ The indicators in the center display show the necessary direction of travel. Drive in the direction indicated by the arrows or symbols on the roof in the parking aid image ② ⇨ *page 154, fig. 136*.
- ▸ The process of exiting the parking space has ended if additional corrective movements are no longer necessary and the specified steering wheel angle is sufficient to drive out of the parking space. Resume control of the steering wheel ⇨ (!).

Park assist automatically steers the vehicle out of the parking space while the driver presses the pedals. The maximum speed for exiting a parking space is 3 mph (5 km/h).

⚠ WARNING

- Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.
- The park assist is an assist system. The driver is still responsible for monitoring the vehicle's surroundings and preventing collisions when using the system.
- When using park assist to drive into or out of a parking space, the steering wheel turns quickly on its own. Reaching into the steering wheel spokes while this is happening can result in injury.

(!) Note

Resume steering immediately after the last corrective movement and the takeover prompt, so that the specified steering wheel angle is not recentered.

Interrupting the park assists

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

Park assist will be canceled automatically in the following scenarios:

– You switch the system off.
– You start steering.
– The speed is too high.
– The time limit is exceeded.
– An obstacle is detected.
– ESC intervenes.

Resume control of the vehicle, end the parking process manually, or:

– You can resume the parking process in some situations. Press the P button in the center console.
– To continue exiting the parking space, switch the engine off and on. Press the P button.

⚠ WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 114*.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

If the P OFF or P OFF indicator light turns on, the park assist is not available or was interrupted.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 116, fig. 106* and try to turn on the systems again later.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Telephone

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can operate various telephone functions easily through the MMI in your vehicle.

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following options may be available:

– Connecting a mobile phone with Bluetooth
– Using two telephones
– Using the Audi phone box

WARNING

– Medical experts warn that mobile devices can interfere with the function of pacemakers. Always maintain a minimum distance of about 7.9 inches (20 cm) between the mobile device antennas and the pacemaker.
  – Do not carry the mobile device in a pocket directly over the pacemaker when the phone is switched on.
  – Switch the mobile device off immediately if you suspect it may be interfering with the pacemaker.
– Do not use the voice recognition system* ⇨ *page 24* in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. The system may take longer to dial the number or may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.
– Switch your mobile device off in areas where there is a risk of an explosion. These locations are not always clearly marked. This may include gas stations, fuel and chemical storage facilities or transport vehicles, or locations where fuel vapors (such as propane or gasoline vapor in vehicles or buildings), chemicals or large quantities of dust particles (such as flour, sawdust or metal) may be present in the air. This also applies to all other locations where you would normally turn your vehicle engine off.
– The demands of traffic require your full attention. Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 18, Traffic safety information*.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *page 169*.

Tips

– The Bluetooth connection range is limited to inside the vehicle.
– A selection of supported Bluetooth devices can be found in the database for tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/bluetooth.

Setup

Connecting a mobile phone via Bluetooth

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile device during the connection setup. The mobile device to be connected must not be actively connected to any other Bluetooth device. The MMI must only be connected to one mobile device.

▸ Enable the Bluetooth function and visibility on the MMI ⇨ *page 206* and the mobile phone.
▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE**.
▸ Follow the system instructions. The available Bluetooth devices will be displayed after several seconds.
▸ Press on the desired mobile device in the list of displayed Bluetooth devices.
▸ To update the list, press ↻.

A PIN for a secure Bluetooth connection will be generated.

▸ Confirm the PIN on your mobile device.
▸ Follow the system instructions.
▸ Pay attention to any other system prompts on the MMI and on your mobile phone.

After connecting successfully

The mobile phone contacts are automatically loaded in the MMI. This process can take several minutes, depending on the number of contacts.

Depending on your mobile phone and the connection type, you can use the following functions: ▶

Handsfree

Requirement: your mobile phone must be connected to the MMI via a Bluetooth Hands Free Profile (Bluetooth HFP).

You can use the hands-free system. You can make calls using the antenna on your mobile device.

Sending and receiving messages

See ⇨ *page 166*.

Tips

- Pay attention to any system prompts displayed on your mobile device or the MMI, for example if the system should connect automatically in the future. Depending on the mobile device, you may need to download contacts and confirm access to your messages separately.
- You can also search for the MMI on your mobile device using the Bluetooth device search.
- You only have to pair your device one time. Bluetooth devices that are already paired automatically connect to the MMI when the Bluetooth function is switched on, when they are within range, and when the ignition is switched on. The last connected mobile device is given first priority.
- You can manage additional settings for connected mobile devices in the Connected devices menu ⇨ *page 207*.
- When leaving the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection to the mobile device will automatically disconnect. Depending on your mobile device, phone calls in progress may be automatically redirected from the MMI to your mobile device so that you can continue the call on your phone.

Using two telephones

Applies to: vehicles with telephone, and Audi phone box

You can connect two mobile phones to the MMI at the same time using the Bluetooth HFP, for example a business phone and a private phone. You can be reached in your vehicle through both mobile phones.

Applies to: mobile devices with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP): You can send and receive messages with both mobile devices ⇨ *page 166*.

Connecting another mobile device

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI.

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > . Follow the system instructions, or
- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connected devices** > **Telephone 1** or **Telephone 2** > **New connection**.

See ⇨ *page 158, Connecting a mobile phone via Bluetooth*.

Switching between two mobile devices

Requirement: phone 1 and phone 2 must be connected to the MMI.

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > .

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *page 169*.

Disconnecting a mobile device

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

- To disconnect a Bluetooth device from the MMI, use the Connected devices menu ⇨ *page 207*.

Using the Audi phone box

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box



Fig. 137 Front center console: Audi phone box with connections

Depending on vehicle equipment, you may be able to use the following functions with the Audi phone box:

– Make phone calls using the vehicle's exterior antenna
– Charge a mobile device using the USB input
– Charge a mobile device wirelessly
– Reminder signal

Limitations

In some situations, the functions of the Audi phone box may be limited or temporarily unavailable. For example, this may happen if

– There is one more than mobile device in the Audi phone box
– The mobile device is located in a bag or a protective case
– There are objects between the Audi phone box and the mobile device
– The mobile device is not positioned in the center of the Audi phone box

WARNING

Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Store objects securely while driving.

Making phone calls using the exterior antenna

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box

With the Audi phone box, you can make calls using the exterior antenna on the vehicle. Using the external antenna helps when there is a low signal and also provides better reception quality.

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

▸ To make phone calls through the vehicle's exterior antenna using your mobile device, lay your device on the phone symbol (2) ⇨ *page 160, fig. 137* in the center of the Audi phone box with the display facing up.

Charging the battery using the USB input

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box

You can charge your mobile device using a special USB adapter with the Audi phone box ⇨ *page 196*.

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

▸ To charge your mobile device via USB, connect it to the USB input (1) ⇨ *page 160, fig. 137*.

Tips

– You can purchase a USB adapter from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility, or at specialty stores.
– Audi recommends using Audi Genuine Accessories. Audi has verified their reliability, safety, and suitability.

Charging a mobile device wirelessly

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box

You can charge your mobile device wirelessly using the Audi phone box.

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on. Your mobile device must meet the Qi standard.

▸ Make sure that the wireless charging function is switched on:
▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Reminder signal and mobile device charging**. ▶

- ▸ Switch the **Mobile device wireless charging** function on.
- ▸ To charge your mobile device wireless, lay it on the ⫧ symbol (3) ⇨ *page 160, fig. 137* in the center of the Audi phone box with the display facing up.

WARNING

– The mobile device may become hot during wireless charging. Pay attention to the temperature of your mobile device and be careful when removing it from the Audi phone box.
– An alternating magnetic field is used for wireless charging. Maintain a minimum distance of approximately 2.4 in (6 cm) to the Audi phone box charging plate. The thresholds for prolonged exposure at this distance comply with ICNIRP1998. Therefore, interactions such as irritation of sensory organs, malfunctions of active implants (such as pacemakers, infusion pumps, or neurostimulators) or effects on passive implants (such as prosthetic limbs) is highly unlikely. If you have an implant, consult a medical specialist if you have any questions. You can also switch the function for wireless charging in the Audi phone box on and off. You can continue to charge your mobile device using a cable connection.

Note

Applicable to U.S.A.

Operation of the Audi phone box is subject to the following requirements of the Federal Communications Commission:
– This is a CONSUMER device.
– BEFORE USE, you MUST REGISTER THIS DEVICE with your wireless provider and have your provider´s consent. Most wireless providers consent to the use of signal boosters. Some providers may not consent to the use of this device on their network. If you are unsure, contact your service provider.
– You MUST operate this device with approved antennas and cables as specified by the manufacturer. Antennas MUST be installed at least 20 cm (8 inches) from any person.
– You MUST cease operating this device immediately if requested by the FCC or a licensed wireless service provider.
– WARNING: E911 location information may not be provided or may be inaccurate for calls served by using this device.

Note

Applicable to Canada

In Canada, operation of a Zone Enhancer, such as an Audi Phone Box, is subject to the following requirements of the Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada (ISED):
– This is a CONSUMER device.
– BEFORE USE, you **MUST** meet all requirements set out in **CPC-2-1-05**.
– You MUST operate this device with approved antennas and cables as specified by the manufacturer. Antennas MUST NOT be installed within 20 cm of any person.
– You MUST cease operating this device immediately if requested by ISED or a licensed wireless service provider.
– **WARNING**: E911 location information may not be provided or may be inaccurate for calls served by using this device.

Tips

– The maximum charging output is 5 W.
– The charging time and temperature will vary depending on the mobile device being used.

Mobile device reminder signal

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box

When the device reminder signal is switched on, you will be notified that your mobile device is still in the Audi phone box when you leave the vehicle.

Requirement: your mobile device must be located in the Audi phone box (if Qi capable) or connected to the Audi music interface with a USB adapter, and the Audi smartphone interface must be active or your iPhone must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth and charging using a USB adapter connected to the Audi music interface. ▶

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Reminder signal and mobile device charging**.

The following settings may be available, depending on vehicle equipment:

– **Signal tone**
– **Off**

Spoken cue

this setting is switched on at the factory.

Mobile device notes: reminder, charge level

When this function is switched on, the charge status of your mobile device is displayed. You will also be reminded not to forget your mobile device when leaving the vehicle.

Using the telephone

Accessing the telephone functions

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

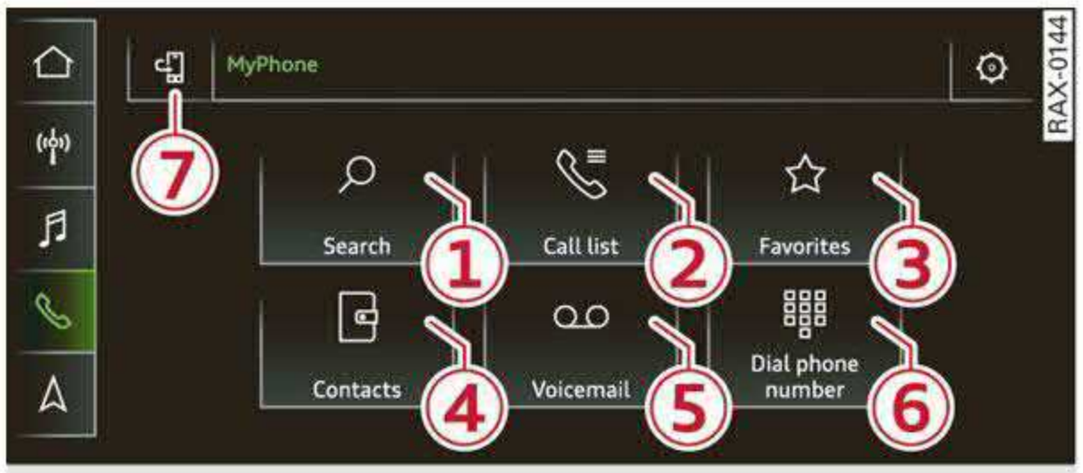


Fig. 138 Center display: selection menu

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE**.

The following phone functions will be available:

① **Search**
② **Call list** 162
③ **Presets** 163
④ **Contacts** 163
⑤ **Voicemail** 164
⑥ **Select number** 164
⑦ **Switch telephones** 165

Managing call lists

Applies to: vehicles with telephone



Fig. 139 Center display: call list

Opening call lists using the MMI

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > **Call list**.

Opening call lists using the multifunction steering wheel

▸ Select in the instrument cluster: Telephone tab > ☰ button > **Call list**.

Possible call list symbols:

① Missed calls
② Dialed numbers
③ Accepted calls
④ Edit call list
⑤ Displaying a business card 163
⑥ Number of interactions with a contact

If more than one interaction with a contact or number has taken place, the last one is displayed in the form of an arrow ①, ②, or ③.

Press and hold a contact or a phone number in the list until the **Options** menu appears.

Depending on your mobile device, the following options may be available:

– **Store as favorite** ⇨ *page 163*.
– **Send text message** ⇨ *page 166*.
– **Send e-mail** ⇨ *page 167*.

Editing a number

Edit a phone number before dialing it.

Managing favorites

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can store contacts for all connected mobile devices as shortcuts in the favorites list.

Selecting favorites using the MMI

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > **Favorites**.

Opening favorites using the multifunction steering wheel

▸ Select in the instrument cluster: Telephone tab > ☰ button > **Favorites**.

Storing favorites

▸ Press ☆ ⇨ *page 163* in the details, or
▸ Press **Store as favorite** in the options ⇨ *page 162*.

Deleting a favorite

▸ Press ★ ⇨ *page 163* in the details, or
▸ Select: **Favorites** > ✎ > *one or multiple favorites* or **Select all** > **Delete** > **Done**.

Managing the directory

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can manage up to four directories in the MMI.

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI.

Opening the directory

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > **Contacts**.

The contacts will be displayed. You can change the sort order ⇨ *page 166*, **Sort order**.

Deleting imported contacts

Requirement: you must have imported at least one contact.

▸ Select: **Contacts** > ✎ > *one or more text messages* > **Delete** > **Done**. The imported contacts are deleted.

Directory options

Press and hold a contact in the directory until the **Options** menu appears.

Depending on your mobile device, the following options may be available:

– **Store as favorite** ⇨ *page 163*
– **Send text message** ⇨ *page 166*.
– **Send e-mail** ⇨ *page 167*.

Tips

– Pay attention to any synchronization prompts on your mobile device when downloading contacts.
– The contacts from the mobile device may not be transferred in alphabetical order. If there are too many entries, contacts with different first letters may be missing in the MMI.
– Only the contacts from the active connected mobile device are displayed.
– The contacts in the local MMI memory are always visible and can be accessed by other users.
– After switching off the ignition and exiting the vehicle, the mobile device directory will be loaded when the MMI is started again if the mobile device is within range and the Bluetooth function is switched on in the mobile device and the MMI.
– Only the contacts in the local MMI memory can be deleted.

Opening business cards

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

The business card shows you details about a contact.

▸ To open a business card, press on a contact in the directory, or
▸ Press ⓘ in the call list (5) ⇨ *page 162, fig. 139*.

Possible options in the business card:

▸ **Call**: press on a phone number.
▸ **Storing a favorite**: press ☆.
▸ **Deleting a favorite**: press ★.
▸ **Sending a text message**: press 💬.
▸ **Starting navigation**: press on an address. ▶

▸ **Sending an e-mail**: press on an e-mail address.

Listening to voicemail

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > **Voicemail**.

Requirement: there must be no voicemail number stored.

▸ **Entering the voicemail number**: enter the desired number. Press **OK**.

Requirement: a voicemail number must be stored.

▸ **Dialing the voicemail number**: press **Voicemail**. The call begins immediately.

Tips

This service must be set up and activated by the mobile phone service provider.

Dialing a phone number

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you may have the following options for dialing a phone number:

– Using text input in the MMI ⇨ *page 21*.
– Using voice operation ⇨ *page 24*.

Call options

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ To accept or end a call, press the ✆ button on the multifunction steering wheel. For operation, see ⇨ *page 12*.

Depending on your mobile device, the following options may be available in the MMI when there is an incoming call:

– **Answer**
– **Decline**
– **Message**

If you exit the vehicle during a phone call, the Bluetooth connection will be disconnected. Depending on your mobile device, phone calls in progress may be automatically transferred from the MMI to your mobile device.

Tips

The radio or media playback is muted during a phone call.

During a phone call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Depending on your mobile device and the type of connection, the following options may be available during a call:

– **End call...**
– **Mute**

Sending a tone sequence

Press **Numbers**. You can enter tone sequences (DTMF) and send them to the other party on the call.

Hold

Puts the current call on hold. To resume the call, press **Resume**.

Answering an incoming call

One of these options will be available, depending on the mobile phone service provider:

– **Answer**: the current phone call will be put on hold. The incoming call will be answered.
– **Replace**: the active call will be replaced with the incoming call.

Declining an incoming call

If you select **Decline**, the incoming call will be declined.

Conference

Requirement: two phone calls must be in progress.

Depending on your mobile phone service provider, you can add a call on hold and up to five active callers to a conference call.

Swap call

Requirement: two phone calls must be in progress.

You can alternate between two phone calls. ▶

Additional call options

Press **More**.

Depending on the mobile device being used and the type of connection, the following options may be available:

Transfer call to mobile device

Transfer the current call to your mobile device.

Switch to hands-free mode

Transfer the current call from your mobile device to the MMI.

Add call

You can start a new call. The current call will be put on hold.

Remove conf. member

You can remove conference call members individually when a conference call is active.

Microphone input level

You can adjust the input level of the microphone using the slider.

Tips

The call waiting function must be activated in your mobile device to be alerted about an incoming call during an active call.

Making an emergency call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > **Dial number** > *the local emergency call number (for example, 911)* > **Dial**.

WARNING

– Because your phone works with radio signals, a connection cannot be guaranteed under all circumstances. Do not rely on only your phone when it comes to essential communication (such as during a medical emergency).
– Always follow the instructions given by the emergency personnel during an emergency call and only end the call when they instruct you to do so.

Settings

Phone settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > ⚙.

The following options may be possible, depending on your mobile device:

– **Decline with text message**
– **Edit voicemail number**

Switching between two mobile devices

Requirement: phone 1 and phone 2 must be connected to the MMI.

Switch telephones: the device name of the available mobile device is displayed. You can switch the phone by pressing the button.

Ringtone and volume settings

– **Ringtone and message volume**: you can adjust the volume using the slider.
– **Ringtone**: select a ringtone from the list.
– **Microphone input level**: you can adjust the input level of the microphone using the slider.

Car phone or data module serial number

Applies to: vehicles with car phone/data module

The serial number (IMEI) will be displayed.

Directory settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > **Contacts** > ⚙.

Switching between two mobile devices

Requirement: telephone 1 and telephone 2 must be connected.

Switch telephones: the device name of the available mobile device is displayed. You can switch the phone by pressing the button. ▶

The directory for the selected phone will be displayed.

Hide grayed-out contacts

When this function is switched on, contacts that have no phone numbers stored for them will be hidden.

Sort order

You can sort the contacts by **Last name** or **First name**.

Download contacts

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI.

To update the contacts in the MMI, you can manually download your mobile device contacts. Depending on the mobile device, you may need to disconnect and reconnect the Bluetooth connection to update the contacts.

Importing and exporting contacts

Requirement: a USB storage device must be connected to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 196*.

Contacts in vCard format (.vcf) can be imported or exported from the MMI.

- **Importing contacts from a storage device**: Requirement: the USB storage device must contain contacts in the vCard format. They must not be located in sub-folders. Select: **Import contacts** > **Search for import data** > **USB device 1/USB device 2** > *desired contacts* or **Select all contacts** > **Start import**.
- **Exporting contacts to a storage medium**: Requirement: you must have a contact imported. Select: **Export contacts** > **Find exporting source** > **USB device 1/USB device 2** > *desired contacts* or **Select all contacts** > **Start export**.

Tips

- The imported contacts are stored in the local MMI memory.
- There should be no other files or folders on the storage medium containing the contacts to be imported.
- Contacts that were downloaded from a mobile device cannot be exported.
- Apple devices and MTP devices (such as smartphones) are not recognized as USB storage devices.

Messages

Text messages

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Requirement: your mobile device must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth Message Access Profile (Bluetooth MAP).

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **MESSAGES** > (✉) > **e-mail (phone 1)/e-mail (phone 2)***.

The following functions are available:

- **New text message***
- **Inbox**
- **Sent**
- **Outbox***
- **Drafts***
- **Deleted**

User defined*

If necessary, user-defined folders will be copied to your mobile device.

Message options

Press on a text message.

Depending on the country, the following options may be available:

- **Read out**
- **Reply**
- **Forward**
- **More**

To switch between messages, press 〈 or 〉.

Press **More**. Depending on your mobile device and the selected mailbox, additional options may be available:

- **Call**
- **Forward**
- **Navigate**
- **Extract numbers**
- **Send again**

Settings

Press ⚙.

New text message notification

When the function is switched on, an envelope ✉ in the MMI status bar will indicate when there is a new text message.

Tips

Only new received messages may be displayed depending on your mobile device.

E-mail

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Requirement: your mobile device must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth Message Access Profile (Bluetooth MAP).

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **MESSAGES** > (💬) > **e-mail (phone 1)/e-mail (phone 2)***.

The following functions are available:

– **New e-mail**
– **Inbox**
– **Sent**
– **Outbox**
– **Drafts***
– **Deleted***

User defined*

If necessary, user-defined folders will be copied to your mobile device.

Message options

Press on an e-mail.

Depending on the country, the following options may be available:

– **Read out**
– **Reply**
– **Reply to all**
– **Forward**
– **More**

To switch between messages, press 〈 or 〉.

Press **More**. Depending on your mobile device and the selected mailbox, additional options may be available:

– **Call**
– **Forward**
– **Extract e-mail**
– **Navigate**
– **Extract numbers**
– **Show all recipients**
– **Send again**

Settings

Press ⚙.

New e-mail notification

When the function is switched on, an envelope ✉ in the MMI status bar will indicate when there is a new e-mail.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *page 169*.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

The information that follows lists some troubleshooting options. They depend on the equipment. ▶

Problem	Solution
Pairing the mobile device to the MMI failed.	Make sure the requirements for connecting a cell phone have been met ⇨ *page 158*, or make sure you did not accidentally decline the PIN for establishing a connection on your cell phone. If necessary, repeat the pairing process ⇨ *page 158*.
After pairing, **not all contacts or no contacts** have been loaded into the MMI.	Avoid using special characters in names. Avoid using contact groups on your mobile phone. Check for prompts on your mobile device when connecting via Bluetooth.
Certain **telephone functions** are grayed out or not available.	The telephone functions depend on the mobile device service provider and the mobile device you are using.
Some **telephone functions** may be switched off or not available, even though the mobile device is supported.	Check if the Bluetooth settings on your mobile phone are limited or individual Bluetooth settings are deactivated. This may be the case with business mobile phones.
The **MESSAGES** menu is not available.	Make sure your mobile device has an option to show messages option and that it is enabled.
Wireless mobile phone charging is not working or is interrupted.	Check if wireless charging with the Audi phone box is switched on. Check if your mobile device is Qi-capable. Make sure your mobile device is positioned correctly in the Audi phone box ⇨ *page 160* and that there are no objects located between the phone box and the phone.

Audi connect

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available:

– Audi connect Infotainment
– Audi connect vehicle control

You can also find more information on Audi connect online at www.audi.com.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of an accident, only use Audi connect services and the Wi-Fi hotspot only if the traffic situation permits it. Read and follow the guidelines provided in ⇨ *page 18, Traffic safety information*.
– It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 67*.

Note

– The connection costs of Audi connect Infotainment services are included in the price of Audi connect Infotainment during the subscription period with some exceptions. Please note that there may be additional charges when using some services. For example, this applies to online radio/ podcasts, additional online data, or for Internet connections and services that use the Wi-Fi hotspot. Depending on the country, data plans may need to be purchased for these Internet connections and services ⇨ *page 173*. For additional information, see my.audi.com.
– In certain situations, the Wi-Fi hotspot data connection may be established as a replacement for the SIM card on your Wi-Fi device. This feature depends on the configuration of your Wi-Fi device and operating system. This could result in fees depending on your mobile phone service provider, especially if you are using this feature while abroad. A flat rate data plan is strongly recommended. For more information, contact your mobile phone service provider or refer to the owner's manual for your Wi-Fi device.
– You are responsible for all precautions taken for data protection, anti-virus protection, and protection against loss of data on mobile devices that are used, for example, to access the Internet through the Wi-Fi hotspot.
– In areas with poor GPS reception or outside the coverage range of the respective mobile phone service provider, some functions and/or services may not be available, it may not be possible to send or receive data, or functionality may be limited.

Tips

– The availability of services depends on the subscription.
– AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.
– Use of the most up-to-date mobile network standard is not available in every country. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility or your mobile phone service provider for additional information.
– Availability, scope, providers, screen display, and costs of services may vary depending on the country, model, model year, end device and rates.

Audi connect Infotainment

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

With Audi connect Infotainment services, online information is transmitted directly to the vehicle.

An Internet connection is required to use Audi connect Infotainment. Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, the Internet connection ▶

may be established using an embedded SIM card (eSIM).

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 169*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 169*.

Embedded SIM card

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment and an embedded SIM card

The data connection for Audi connect Infotainment services is made through an embedded SIM card (eSIM card) that is installed in the vehicle. You can use the Audi connect Infotainment services immediately.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 169*.

Using a Wi-Fi hotspot

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

You can connect up to eight Wi-Fi devices (such as smartphones) with the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot. If the MMI is connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 169*, the connected Wi-Fi devices can also use the MMI's Internet connection.

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on. A data plan must be available ⇨ *page 173*.

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings** > **Wi-Fi**. Switch on the Wi-Fi hotspot.
- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings** > **Wi-Fi** > **Wi-Fi hotspot settings**. The access data for the Wi-Fi hotspot is displayed. Switch on the visibility of the Wi-Fi hotspot if necessary.
- ▸ Switch the Wi-Fi function on in your mobile device and connect it to the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot using the authentication data that is shown.
- ▸ Follow any additional system prompts on your Wi-Fi device if necessary.

Your device is successfully connected with the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot.

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 169*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 169*.

Tips

For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 275*.

Audi connect Infotainment services

Configuration

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

Some Audi connect Infotainment services must be configured through your personal myAudi account at my.audi.com before using them for the first time.

Tips

- A myAudi user must be logged in for some Audi connect Infotainment services.
- Some Audi connect Infotainment services must be activated at my.audi.com.
- Depending on the country, you may be able to use the myAudi app or my.audi.com.
- For detailed information on configuration, visit my.audi.com.

Services

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following services may be available:

Weather information

Applies to: MMI

- ▸ Press **WEATHER** on the home screen.

Editing settings: Select: **WEATHER** > ⊞. ▶

Adding a location: select: **In a new city** > *enter the desired location*.

- ► To permanently set weather for a location, press on *a location*.
- ► To always show the weather based on the vehicle position, press on the crosshairs.

Requirement: route guidance must be active.

- ► To show the weather at the destination, press on 🏁.

Removing a location: select: ✎ > *one or more locations* or **Select all** > **Delete**.

Online news

- ► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NEWS**.

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 169*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 169*.

Functions on demand

Displaying purchased functions

Applies to: vehicles with functions on demand or display of purchased functions

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, you can purchase functions through a myAudi account using functions on demand at any time.

The following options are available for displaying purchased functions in the vehicle.

- ► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PURCHASES**.

Tips

– Equipment installed at the factory may be displayed as purchased functions.

– At the time this manual was printed, functions on demand was a planned function. Functions on demand is not available in your vehicle.

Audi connect vehicle control services

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control

With Audi connect vehicle control services [1], you can utilize various services using the myAudi app or online at my.audi.com.

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 169*.

Tips

– Accessing specific data or controlling functions remotely depends on the charge level of the vehicle battery. Therefore, these functions only have limited availability after switching off the ignition.

– An eSIM card establishes the Internet connection for Audi connect vehicle control services. The costs for this are included in the price of Audi connect vehicle control services. The mobile phone network, for example, must be available to use these services.

Setup

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control

- ► Register at my.audi.com.
- ► Set the key user ⇨ *page 27*.
- ► Install the myAudi app on your mobile device and log in with your access information.

Tips

It may also be necessary to enter your 4-digit PIN set at my.audi.com when accessing some Audi connect vehicle control services.

1) Depends on the country and equipment. These services are available for a limited time.

Services

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following services may be available:

Locking and unlocking the vehicle by remote control

Requirement: the vehicle must be parked and the ignition must be switched off.

This service allows you to unlock or lock your vehicle.

Vehicle status report

This service transfers driver information system data to a server. Depending on the vehicle equipment, certain data may be accessed, such as the remaining range or mileage. The values may differ from the values displayed in the vehicle.

Car Finder

This service transmits the parking location to a server when the ignition is switched off. The vehicle location, your location, or the route to your vehicle can be displayed. The new parking location cannot be determined with this service if the vehicle is moved after shutting the vehicle off and without switching the ignition on and off again, for example if the vehicle is towed or stolen.

Online Audi service request

Requirement: the service must be activated online at my.audi.com and an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi service facility must be selected.

This service transmits service-relevant data to your selected authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi service facility. They will contact you before your next service appointment.

Stolen Vehicle Locator

This service assists you in locating your vehicle if it is stolen.

– Contact the police. You receive a Case ID.
– Call the service hotline and give your Case ID.

The service hotline will forward the established data to the police. You receive the Audi Service hotline number when you purchase your vehicle.

Alert services

Requirement: a key user must be set in the vehicle ⇨ *page 171*.

You can adjust the following services in the myAudi app. You will be notified by a push notification and/or e-mail if an alarm is triggered for your vehicle.

– Geofencing Alert: a permitted/prohibited zone was entered.
– Speed Alert: a set speed was exceeded.
– Valet Alert: a set speed was exceeded or a permitted/prohibited zone was entered.

WARNING

Do not ignore messages and warning or indicator lights that turn on in the vehicle because of the information in the vehicle status report. This could lead to break downs in on the road, accidents and serious injuries.

Tips

For some services, you can select if you would like to be notified with a push notification and/or an e-mail.

Settings

Wi-Fi settings

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings** > **Wi-Fi**.

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available:

Wi-Fi

When the function is switched on, the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot is active and Wi-Fi devices can be connected to the hotspot. ▶

Wi-Fi hotspot settings

The Wi-Fi connection between the MMI and your Wi-Fi device is encrypted. You can change the following information if needed.

– **Access point (SSID)**: name of the Wi-Fi hotspot.
– **Password**: a random password was set at the factory in the MMI. The password can be changed. The encryption method requires a password to be at least eight characters long. Choose a secure password.
– **Visible to others**: you can switch the visibility of the Wi-Fi hotspot on or off.

Allowing a data connection through Wi-Fi

When the function is switched on, mobile devices can use the Internet connection through the Wi-Fi hotspot. A data plan is needed to do this.

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 169*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 169*.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

The information that follows lists some troubleshooting options. They depend on the equipment.

Problem	Solution
Audi connect Infotainment services: individual Audi connect Infotainment services are grayed out or not available.	Some Audi connect Infotainment services must be activated or configured through your personal myAudi account before using them for the first time. You can find detailed information online at my.audi.com.
Wi-Fi hotspot: it is not possible to connect through Wi-Fi.	Check if Wi-Fi is activated in the MMI ⇨ *page 172*. Delete all existing Wi-Fi connections on your mobile device and restart it.

Data plans[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with data plans

Requirement: you must have created a myAudi account at my.audi.com. Your vehicle must be registered in your myAudi account.

You can purchase data plans at my.audi.com.

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 169*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 169*.

Tips

If driving out of the country, applicable data plans must be purchased.

1) Not available in every market.

Emergency call

Overview

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

An emergency call is a combination of data transmission and a phone call. The data transmission from your vehicle forwards important information, such as the vehicle and position data, to the emergency call center.

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available:

With the **emergency call**, you can call for help in dangerous situations as quickly as possible. Use this function when emergency help is needed ⇨ *page 174*.

– Audi connect emergency call (TPS emergency call). This eCall system uses emergency call centers operated by third party providers.

With **online roadside assistance**, you can request assistance if there is a breakdown or a minor accident ⇨ *page 175*.

WARNING

In areas with poor GPS reception or outside the coverage range of the respective mobile phone service provider, some functions and/or services may not be available, it may not be possible to send or receive data, or functionality may be limited.

Tips

You can find what data will be transferred at www.audi.com.

Emergency call

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

The services are provided through a SIM card installed in the vehicle. Services are provided assuming that the mobile phone network required for the installed SIM card is functioning and available for use. The available services set by Audi AG are only available within the mobile phone network coverage area for the mobile phone service provider selected by Audi AG.

Tips

– The emergency call function cannot be deactivated in the Infotainment system settings.
– The availability of the TPS emergency call is limited to certain times.
– The costs for call and data connections for TPS emergency calls is included in the price of the services.

Functions

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

A TPS emergency call can be made manually or automatically ⇨ *page 174*.

Making an emergency call

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

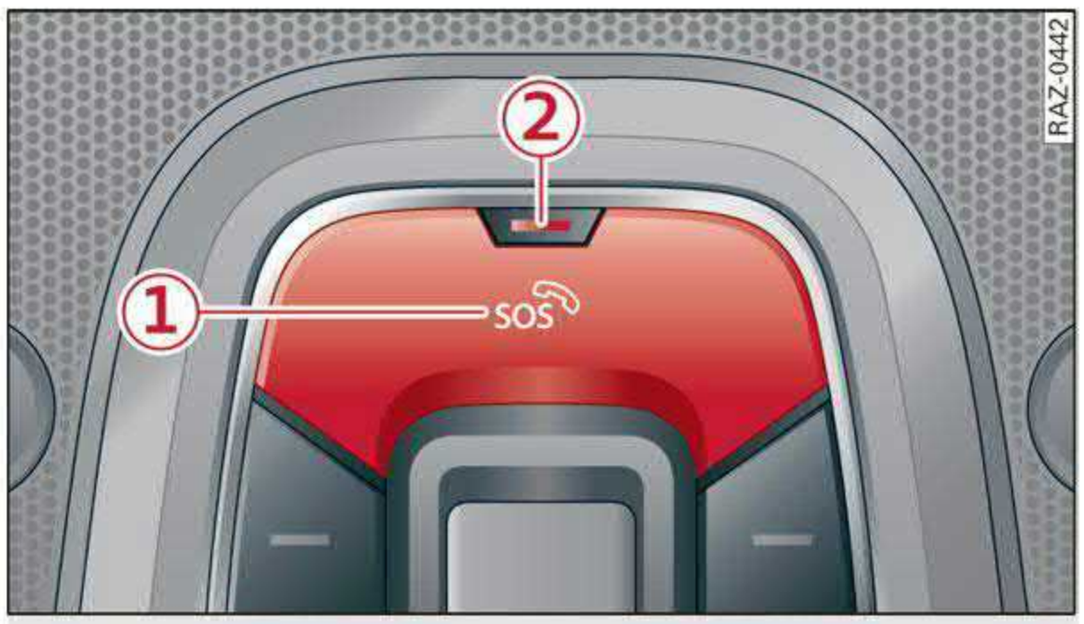


Fig. 140 Front headliner: cover for the emergency call button

Manual emergency call

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

- ▸ Tap the cover (1) to open it.
- ▸ Press and hold the emergency call button until the LED (2) blinks. The emergency call will be made.
- ▸ If the emergency call button is pressed by mistake, then press it again immediately and hold it until the LED stays on. The emergency call will be canceled.

Automatic emergency call

The vehicle electrical system initiates an automatic emergency call under certain circumstances, for example if an airbag deploys. The LED in the emergency call button (2) will blink. The emergency call will be made. It cannot be canceled. ▶

LED status

– **Green** – The emergency call function is available.
– **Red** – There is a malfunction in the emergency call function. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Note the messages about the availability of the emergency function ⇨ *page 175*.
– **Off** – The emergency call function is not available, perhaps because no network is available.

Warnings

If there is a critical system failure in the emergency call systems, the vehicle occupants will receive the following warning: see ⇨ *page 175, LED status* and ⇨ *page 175, Messages*.

Tips

If the emergency call is canceled due to a poor connection, then the system automatically tries to connect again.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

Emergency call function: malfunction! Limited availability. Please contact Service

If this indicator light turns on and this message appears, the emergency call function is restricted. For example, you cannot call the emergency call center, but data may still be transmitted under certain circumstances. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Emergency call function: malfunction! Function unavailable. Please contact Service

If this indicator light turns on and this message appears, you cannot make an emergency call. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Online roadside assistance

Description

Applies to: vehicles with online roadside assistance

An online roadside assistance call [1] is a combination of data transmission and a phone call. The data transmission from your vehicle forwards important information to the Audi service center, such as the vehicle and position data.

Calling online roadside assistance

Applies to: vehicles with online roadside assistance

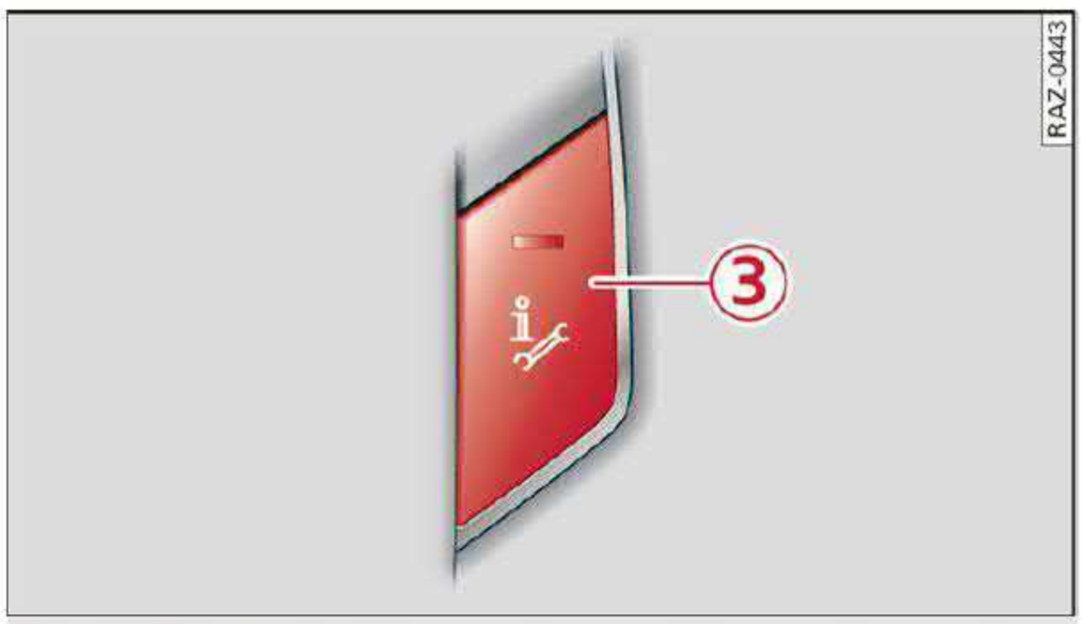


Fig. 141 Front headliner: online roadside assistance button

Calling online roadside assistance

- Press the button (3). The LED in the button turns red. The online roadside assistance call will be made.
- If you press the button (3) by mistake, then press it again. Or
- Applies to: MMI: Press **Cancel** or **End call**.

Audi incident assistance

A minor accident may be detected by the vehicle electrical system. You are able to select between online roadside assistance and an emergency call in the MMI.

Tips

If the roadside assistance call is canceled due to a poor connection, then the call must be made again.

[1] The availability of the services offered depends on the country and may change in the future.

Navigation

Opening navigation

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

The navigation system directs you to your destination, around traffic incidents, and on alternative routes, if desired.



Fig. 142 Center display: route guidance not started

Opening navigation

▸ Applies to: MMI: Press **NAVIGATION** on the home screen.

After accessing the navigation for the first time, the map is displayed.

Opening navigation using the multifunction steering wheel

▸ Applies to: multifunction steering wheel: Select the Navigation tab in the instrument cluster.
▸ To display navigation when route guidance has started, select in the instrument cluster: the ☰ button > **Map**.

The following functions are available in the MMI:

① Open the **Select destination** menu ⇨ *page 178, fig. 143*.
② Open the intelligent search ⇨ *page 177*.
③ **Switch between the map and the menu**: press △ repeatedly until the desired function is displayed.

You can find additional information about the map update at ⇨ *page 181, Map operation*.

WARNING

– The demands of traffic require your full attention. Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 18, Traffic safety information*.
– The route calculated by the navigation system is a driving recommendation. Follow the traffic regulations that are applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle. In the event that the driving directions contradict traffic regulations, always follow the traffic regulations applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle to reduce the risk of an accident.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in General information on page 169*.

Tips

– Snow and obstructions on the GPS antenna or trees and large buildings can impair satellite reception and affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position. Several deactivated or malfunctioning satellites can also interrupt GPS reception and affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position.
– Because street names sometimes change, the names stored in the MMI may in rare cases differ from the actual street name.
– Applies to: multifunction steering wheel: Depending on the selected function, operation through the center display may be required.
– Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment: Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, additional services may be available.
– An additional indicator will appear in the head-up display.

myAudi navigation

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

MMI navigation works seamlessly with the myAudi app.

Your destinations (favorites, last destinations) are synchronized through your myAudi account. All important destinations can be displayed in the vehicle and in the myAudi app. ▶

To load destinations in the vehicle automatically, logging into the vehicle with a myAudi user is recommended ⇨ *page 27*.

myAudi navigation functions:

– You can send destinations and routes from the myAudi app to the vehicle ⇨ *page 179*.
– Active route guidance in the myAudi app can be continued in the MMI.
– Depending on the situation, it may be possible to continue active route guidance from the MMI in the myAudi app to continue navigating to the destination after leaving the vehicle.

Entering a destination

Intelligent search for navigation destinations

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Using the intelligent search, you can enter the data for a navigation destination in any order all at once (for example, 5th Avenue New York). Likewise, you can search for points of interest, contacts, previous destinations, or favorites in order to navigate to the desired destination.

Opening a menu

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > 🔎.

Intelligent search

► Enter one or more search terms into the input field. See ⇨ *page 21, Text input*.
► Press on the desired destination in the results list. The **Details** menu will be displayed.
► Press **Start**. Route guidance will be activated and the map will be displayed ⇨ *page 180, fig. 145*.

Online Points of Interest

► **Searching for points of interest**: enter the name of a POI.
► Select: *a symbol for a POI category* (such as 🍴) > *a POI*, or
► To display all categories and search for a POI, select: ••• > *a category (such as restaurants)* > *a POI*.

Change search area

Requirement: route guidance must be active.

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > 🔎.
► To change the search area, press 📍 / ▲ / 🏁 repeatedly until the desired search area is selected.

Online search[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and online search

You can use the results from a search engine provider to find a navigation destination.

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 169, Audi connect*.

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > 🔎 > **G**.
► Enter one or more search terms into the input field.
► The search engine provider shows suggestions 🔎 to narrow down the search.
► Press on suggestions until the desired destination appears in the results list. If necessary, use one finger to swipe upward or downward until the suggestions 🔎 or destinations 📍 appear.
► Press on the desired destination 📍. The **Details** menu will be displayed.
► Press **Start**.

Route guidance will be activated and the map will be displayed ⇨ *page 180, fig. 145*.

Tips

– The MMI input suggestions depend on the last navigated destinations.
– The navigation system always searches for the fastest route. You can have alternative routes displayed if necessary ⇨ *page 182*.
– If the destination cannot be found, it may not be stored in the navigation database. ▶

1) Audi provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

Check the spelling of the term that was searched or check the search area ⇨ *page 177*.

– Distances to points of interest are displayed as a straight-line distance from your current location. The actual distance from your current location to the point of interest is updated automatically. The list of points of interest that were found is not resorted when this happens.

Select destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

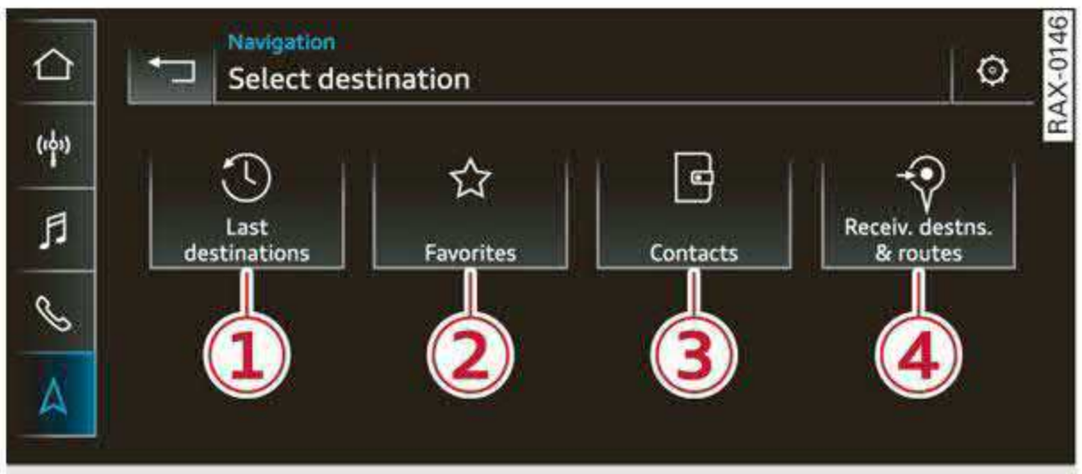


Fig. 143 Center display: menu: select destination

Opening a menu

Applies to: MMI

- ▸ Press **NAVIGATION** on the home screen.
- ▸ If the map is displayed, press ⊞ ① ⇨ *page 176, fig. 142*.

The following functions are available ⇨ *fig. 143*:

① **Last destinations** 178
② **Presets** 178
③ **Contacts** 178
④ **Received destinations & routes** . . 179

Loading previous destinations

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Your last destinations and routes can be loaded directly as a navigation destination.

As soon as you start route guidance, the destination is automatically saved in the last destinations. Your previous destinations are marked with the 🕓 symbol.

If you use myAudi navigation, your previous destinations will be synchronized with your myAudi account ⇨ *page 176*.

Accessing previous destinations

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Last destinations** > *select a desired destination* > **Start**.
- ▸ Applies to: multifunction steering wheel: Select in the instrument cluster: Navigation tab > ☰ button > **Last destinations** > *desired destination*.

Deleting previous destinations

- ▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Last destinations** > ✎ > *one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Tips

The last route will be automatically deleted from the list if you start a new route guidance after canceling the route.

Setting a favorite as the destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can access frequent destinations in the favorites. You can quickly and easily start route guidance using the home address or business address function.

Requirement: a favorite must be stored ⇨ *page 183*.

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Favorites** > *select a desired destination* > **Start**.
- ▸ Applies to: multifunction steering wheel: Select in the instrument cluster: Navigation tab > ☰ button > **Favorites** > *desired destination*.

Selecting contacts as destinations

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and navigation system

You can navigate directly to contacts.

Requirement: a contact must have an address stored.

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Contacts** > *a contact*.
- ▸ Press on the address for a contact. ▶

- ▸ Press on a suggested address. The **Details** menu will be displayed.
- ▸ Press **Start**.

Tips

– If a contact is grayed out, there is no address stored for that contact.
– Navigation to geographic coordinates for a contact is not possible.

Loading received destinations and routes

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect Infotainment

You can search for destinations or routes in the myAudi app and send to the vehicle.

Requirement: the MMI and the mobile device must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 169, Audi connect*. You must have the myAudi app installed on your mobile device.

- ▸ Send a destination or route in the myAudi app to the vehicle.
- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Receiv. destns. & routes**.
- ▸ Make sure you are logged into the vehicle and the myAudi app with the same myAudi account. The received destination and routes will be loaded automatically.
- ▸ **Navigating to a destination**: press on a destination.
- ▸ **Deleting destinations**: select: ✎ > *one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Destination details

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

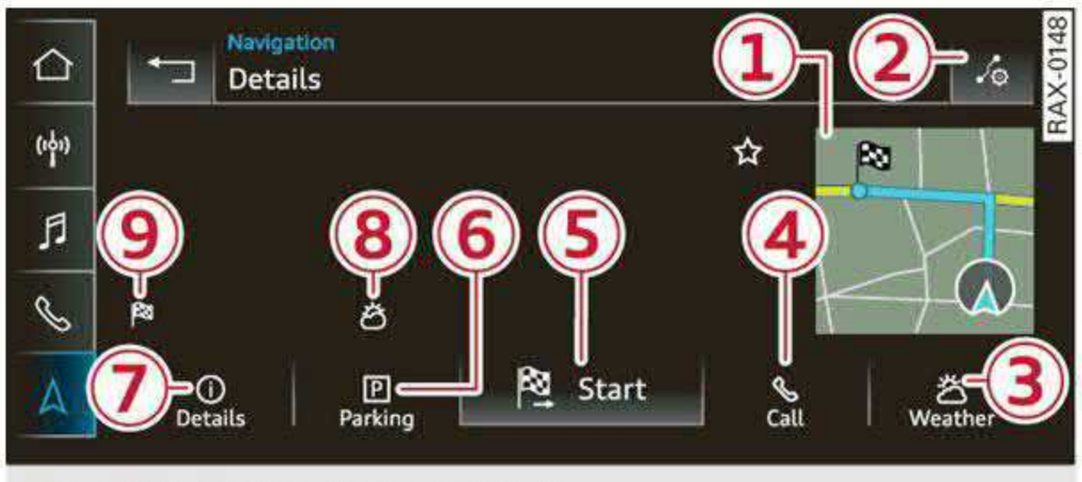


Fig. 144 Center display: details

After you have selected a destination, the details will be displayed. Route guidance is will not be active yet.

The functions depend on the vehicle equipment and the selected destination.

① **Map preview**: to zoom in on the map preview, press on the map.
② **Route criteria**: see ⇨ *page 187*.
③ **Weather**: Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 169, Audi connect*. Also see ⇨ *page 170*.
④ Applies to: MMI and telephone
Call: Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 158*. You will make a direct call to the phone number that is stored for the destination.
⑤ **Start**: starts navigation to the displayed destination directly. The map will be displayed ⇨ *page 181, Map operation*.
⑥ **Parking**: press **Parking** to search for a parking space at the destination. You can use the parking space as the destination or stopover.
⑦ **Details**: Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 169, Audi connect*.
⑧ **Weather at the destination**: Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 169, Audi connect*.
⑨ **Display of distance/driving time to the destination**

Selecting a destination from the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

A point on the map can be used as the destination.

Opening the map

Applies to: MMI

- ▸ Press **NAVIGATION** on the home screen.
- ▸ If necessary, press △ to display the map.

Adjusting the scale

- ▸ Select: ⊕/Ⓐ > *select a scale*.

Marking the destination

- ▸ Press and hold a point on the map until a marking appears (21) ⇨ *page 180, fig. 146* or the address for the selected destination is shown (16) ⇨ *page 180, fig. 146*.

8W1012721BB

Selecting map content (such as POIs) as the destination

Requirement: map content must be displayed ⇨ *page 186*.

- Press on map content on the map (for example, (22) ⇨ *page 180, fig. 146*).

Selecting the destination

- Select: (15) ⇨ *page 180, fig. 146*, or
- To display destination details, press on (16) ⇨ *page 180, fig. 146* > **Start**.

Route guidance will be activated and the map will be displayed ⇨ *page 180, fig. 145*.

Stopovers and route plan

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can enter additional destinations during active route guidance.

Entering a stopover

Requirement: route guidance must be active.

- Enter a destination ⇨ *page 177*.

Displaying stopovers or the route plan

All destinations are listed in the route plan.

- Press on (7) ⇨ *page 180, fig. 145* on the map.

Editing stopovers

- Press on (7) ⇨ *page 180, fig. 145* on the map.
- **Adding a stopover**: Select: **Add destination** > *a destination* > **Add**.
- **Moving a stopover**: press ≡. Touch the ⇕ symbol and move the entry to the desired position. Press **Done**.
- **Deleting a stopover**: Select: ≡ > *one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Stopping route guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Requirement: route guidance must be active and the map must be displayed.

- Applies to: MMI: Press ✕ (3) ⇨ *page 180, fig. 145*.
- Applies to: multifunction steering wheel: Select in the instrument cluster: Navigation tab > ☰ button > **Cancel route guidance**.

Map

Map functions

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 145 Center display: active route guidance



Fig. 146 Center display: marked map object

Opening the map

Applies to: MMI

- Press **NAVIGATION** on the home screen.
- If necessary, press △ to display the map.

The following list gives an overview of the information displayed on the map. Press on any function (for example, alternative routes) to show additional options.

(1) Select destination ⇨ *page 178*
(2) Enter a destination using intelligent search ⇨ *page 177*
(3) Cancel route guidance ⇨ *page 180*
(4) Current route
(5) Request spoken prompt
(6) Alternative routes ⇨ *page 182*
(7) Display active destinations, stopovers, or route plan ⇨ *page 180*.
(8) The distance to the destination including the calculated arrival time is displayed.
(9) Online traffic information ⇨ *page 185*
(10) Altitude ▶

⑪ Displays the maximum permitted speed[1]: within city limits, on expressways, and on highways.

⑫ Current vehicle position

⑬ Route information ⇨ *page 187*

⑭ Name of the street on which you are currently driving

⑮ Start route guidance for the marked destination ㉑ ⇨ *page 179, Selecting a destination from the map*

⑯ Display details for the destination ⇨ *page 179*

⑰ Intelligent search nearby

⑱ Adjust the map orientation. Also see ⇨ *page 186*

⑲ Navigation settings ⇨ *page 186*

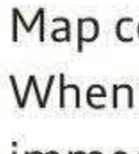
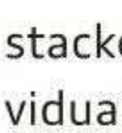
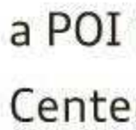
⑳ Adjust the scale. Set scale. Or: press the magnifying glass to switch automatic zoom ⇨ *page 186* on or off directly on the map. The Ⓐ symbol appears when this function is switched on.

㉑ Marked destination. See ⇨ *page 179, Selecting a destination from the map*

㉒ Map contents (points of interest, favorites). When there are multiple map contents in the immediate vicinity, the symbols are shown stacked on the map. To display a list of individual symbols, press ⑯ ⇨ *fig. 146*. Press on a POI in the list.

㉓ Center the map to the current vehicle position

Additional possible symbols on the map

Symbol	Meaning
	Home address ⇨ *page 183, Favorites*
	Business address ⇨ *page 183, Favorites*
	Presets ⇨ *page 183*
	Previous destinations display

1) Only applies to vehicles without camera-based speed limit display.

Traffic information display on the map or map preview

Color-coded markings along the route indicate the traffic flow:

Green: traffic is flowing freely.

Orange: stop-and-go traffic

Red: traffic jam or traffic obstructions.

Traffic information

- **Colored warning symbols**: traffic incidents ahead that are on your route.
- **Grayed out warning symbols**: traffic incidents that are not on your route.
- All traffic incidents will display in color when route guidance is inactive.
- **Warning symbols with arrow**: traffic incident that you have been routed around, for example .

You can adjust the display of colored markings for traffic information on the maps ⇨ *page 186*.

Map operation

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can operate the map ⇨ *page 180, fig. 145* with the movements described in the following information.

Moving the map

▸ Drag your finger across the map in the desired direction.

Moving the map quickly

▸ Swipe your finger across the map in the desired direction and lift your finger off the map.

Zooming in on the map

▸ Place two fingers on the map and pull your fingers apart, or

▸ Double-tap on the map with one finger.

Zooming out on the map

▸ Place two fingers on the map and pull your fingers together, or ▶

▸ Double-tap on the map with two fingers.

Rotating the map

▸ Rotate the map using two fingers.

Tilting the map

▸ Drag upward or downward with two fingers.

Tips

Certain gestures may not be available on all touch displays or in every menu.

Navigation view with route guidance started

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi virtual cockpit

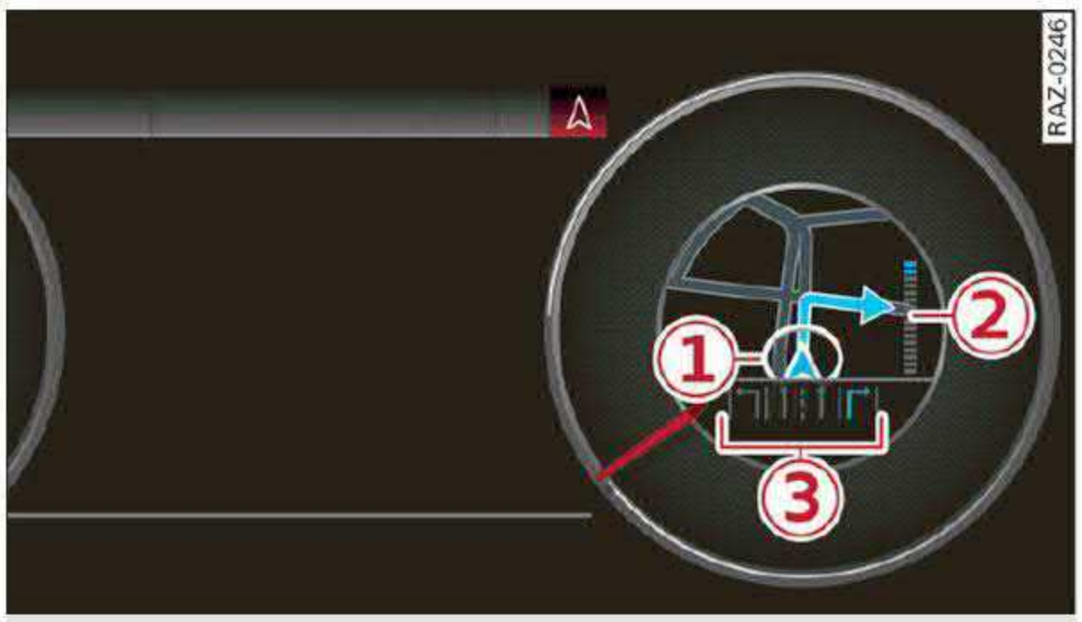


Fig. 147 Instrument cluster: default view: turning maneuver when route guidance is active (Audi virtual cockpit)

Requirement: route guidance must be on ⇨ *page 177*.

The following information will be displayed in the driver information system, if available:

① Current vehicle position

② A bar graph appears when there is an upcoming turn. The fewer the bars that are shown, the shorter the distance is until the turn. If there is no upcoming turn immediately ahead, the distance to the destination or stopover, the calculated arrival time, and a direction arrow for the upcoming maneuver will be displayed in the right speedometer. If there is no upcoming maneuver, the distance to the next maneuver will be displayed.

③ Lane recommendation

Alternative routes

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

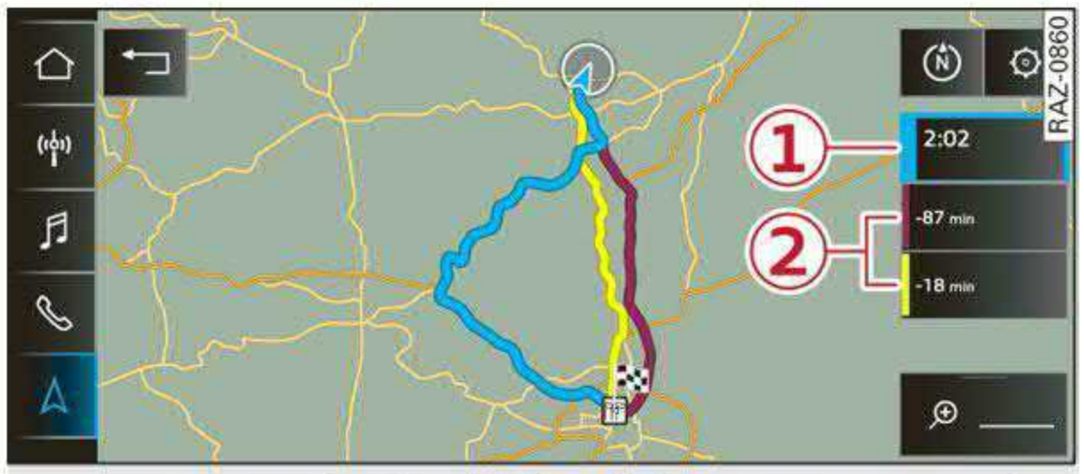


Fig. 148 Center display: display of alternative routes in the overview map

Opening alternative routes

Requirement: route guidance must be started ⇨ *page 177* and the map must be displayed ⇨ *page 181*.

▸ Press ⑥ ⇨ *page 180, fig. 145*.

① Current route

The distance to the destination and the calculated arrival time will be displayed for the current route.

② Alternative route

The difference in travel time compared to the selected route will be displayed.

Displaying alternative routes in the foreground

▸ Press ⓘ in the corresponding information window, or
▸ Press and hold the information window for the corresponding alternative route (for example, ② ⇨ *fig. 148*).

Select route

▸ Press on the information window for the corresponding route (for example ② ⇨ *fig. 148*).

Additional functions

Favorites

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can access frequent destinations in the favorites. You can quickly and easily start route guidance using the home address or business address function.

Accessing favorites

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Favorites**.

If you use myAudi navigation, your favorites will be synchronized with your myAudi account ⇨ *page 176*.

Storing favorites

▸ Press ☆ in the **Details** menu ⇨ *page 179, fig. 144*.

Storing a home address or business address

▸ Press **Home address** or **Business address**. When accessed for the first time, you will be prompted to set the address.
▸ Select: **Create now** > *enter a destination* > **OK**.

Editing a favorite

Requirement: the favorites list must be displayed.

▸ **Setting a favorite as a destination**: press on a favorite.
▸ **Deleting favorites**: in the **Details** menu, press ★ ⇨ *page 179, fig. 144*, or select: ✎ > *one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).
▸ **Moving a favorite**: press ✎. Touch the ⇕ symbol and move the entry to the desired position. Press **Done**.

Tips

– After deleting the home address or business address, only the address is deleted and the entry will still be displayed in the favorites.
– Please note when moving favorites that items 1 and 2 are reserved for the home address and business address.

On-street parking

Applies to: navigation system and on-street parking

In supported areas, you can display parking along the route.

Requirement: the **Parking** notification must be switched on ⇨ *page 20, Notification center*. The MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 169, Audi connect*. Route guidance must be active, you must be close to your destination, and a notification must be displayed or an item on the map must be marked.

▸ Press on the notification. Or: press on 🅿 on the map.
▸ To navigate to a parking: space, press on a colored marking on the map.
▸ Select: 🏁 > **Start**.

Depending on availability, colored markings on the map indicate the probability of open parking spaces.

Color	Meaning
Green	High probability
Orange	Medium probability
Red	Low probability

Satellite map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and satellite map

You can display the navigation map with satellite images.

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 169, Audi connect*.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > ⚙ > **Map settings** > **Satellite map**[1)].

The map view is based on data packets received from the Internet in the form of satellite images, ▶

1) Audi provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

which are then combined with the roadways from the ⇨ *page 180, fig. 145* standard map view.

Tips

– The satellite map[1)] is updated regularly whenever the function is opened. The process may take several seconds.
– When the satellite map display is switched on [1)] with the 3D position map type, the display automatically switches to the 2D map type when driving through tunnels.
– Depending on the Internet connection, the standard map may also be displayed when the satellite map is switched on [1)].

Map update

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can update the map data in the MMI with a map update. The functions depend on the country and vehicle equipment.

– Map updates through **online map update** ⇨ *page 184*.
– Import a map update from the **USB connection** to your MMI ⇨ *page 184*.
– Map update at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. This can result in additional costs.

Online map update

Applies to: vehicles with MMI, navigation system, and Audi connect Infotainment

Using map update online, you can update the map material in your navigation system directly from your vehicle.

The MMI determines regions based on the vehicle position. Based on this, update data for these regions are available for your MMI.

Start map update

Applies to: MMI

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 169, Audi connect*.

- A notification for a map update will appear in the center display.
- If the option **Automatic online map update** ⇨ *page 185* is switched on, the MMI will start the map update, or
- Press on the notification, or
- Open the notification in the notification center on ⇨ *page 20* and press on the notification.
- If the **Automatic online map update** option ⇨ *page 185* is switched off, press on **Always allow**.

The MMI will start the map update. You can check the status of the download process and the installation in the notification center ⇨ *page 20*.

When the update has ended, a notification will be displayed.

Tips

Because of the high volume of data, Audi recommends performing the map update using the USB connection ⇨ *page 184*.

Map update using the USB connection

Applies to: vehicles with MMI, navigation system, and Audi connect Infotainment

With the map update, you can update the map material in your navigation system.

Requirement: you must have created a myAudi account at my.audi.com. Your vehicle must be registered in your myAudi account.

Prepare map update

- Download the map update at my.audi.com and store it on a USB flash drive. For additional information, visit my.audi.com. ▶

1) Audi provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

Start map update

- ▸ Connect the USB flash drive to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 196*. A notification for a map update will appear in the center display.
- ▸ Press on the notification, or
- ▸ Open the notification in the notification center on ⇨ *page 20* and press on the notification. The update package is shown.
- ▸ Press **Next**. The status of the installation is shown in the center display.
- ▸ When the update has ended, a notification will be displayed.

Map updates settings

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect Infotainment

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **System maintenance**.

Automatic online map update: when the function is switched on, map updates will be automatically downloaded and installed.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in General information on page 169*.

Traffic information

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and online traffic information



Fig. 149 Center display: traffic information overview

Open traffic information

Requirement: the map must be displayed ⇨ *page 181*.

- ▸ Press (9) ⇨ *page 180, fig. 145*.

Display traffic report details

- ▸ Press on the traffic report (2) ⇨ *fig. 149*.
- ▸ To display the previous or next traffic report, press ← or →.

The following information can be displayed ⇨ *fig. 149*:

(1) A message will appear if the MMI calculates a better route for the current route guidance. Press on an item in a list (1) and select the better route. More information can be found under ⇨ *page 182*.

(2) A traffic message is displayed. The distance to the hazardous area is calculated from the current vehicle position.

(3) The traffic messages are only shown when route guidance is active. Press on a line to display details about it.

Tips

- Particularly critical traffic information, such as warnings about wrong-way drivers, is automatically displayed as a notification.
- Traffic information is not available in some countries.

Traffic rerouting

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

By receiving traffic information, your MMI calculates a better route if available and the possible time saved compared to the current route.

Traffic rerouting

- ▸ Start route guidance.

The MMI uses a notification or a note in the traffic information (1) ⇨ *page 185, fig. 149* to indicate a better route. You can decide which route you would like to use.

To select a better route, you have the following options:

- ▸ **Notification**: press . The better route will be used for route guidance, or press on the notification. Press on the information window for the better route (for example (2) ⇨ *page 182, fig. 148*).

▸ **Note in the traffic information**: press on the list entry ① ⇨ *page 185, fig. 149*. Press on the information window for the better route (for example ② ⇨ *page 182, fig. 148*).

Online traffic information

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and online traffic information

The MMI can receive real-time online traffic information about congestion, accidents, road construction, and other incidents.

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 169, Audi connect*. Traffic information must be switched on in the MMI ⇨ *page 186*.

Traffic information will be displayed on the standard map ⇨ *page 180, fig. 145*.

Online traffic information is also displayed on the standard map ⇨ *page 183*.

Tips

– Having the **online traffic information** function switched on provides the most accurate reports of traffic situations and traffic forecasting. Your vehicle transmits and processes its anonymous, encrypted position information at regular intervals to the traffic data provider. You can switch off data transfer at any time ⇨ *page 270*.
– The **online traffic information** network is not available in all countries, and the coverage is not nationwide.

Settings

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can adjust the navigation system settings in the instrument cluster and in the MMI display separately. The settings depend on the country and vehicle equipment.

Accessing settings

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > ⚙.

Accessing settings using the multifunction steering wheel

▸ Applies to: multifunction steering wheel: Select in the instrument cluster: Navigation tab > ☰ button.

Please note that a setting applied to the multifunction steering wheel is only valid for the instrument cluster map.

Map settings

Satellite map: see ⇨ *page 183*.

Traffic: you can display current traffic information on the map. See ⇨ *page 181, Traffic information display on the map or map preview*

– **Free flow of traffic**
– **Traffic obstructions**
– **Traffic information**

Map colors

– **Automatic**: the map display adapts to the lighting conditions (for example, by changing from day to night when driving through a tunnel).
– **Day** or **Night**

Map orientation

– **2D map** or **2D north up**: the current vehicle position is displayed. The map is oriented in the direction of travel or to the north.
– **3D map**: the current vehicle position is shown on a three-dimensional map and is oriented in the direction of travel.
– **Overview**: the entire route from the vehicle position to the destination or the next stopover is displayed on the map. The map is oriented to the north.

Automatic zoom

– **On**: the map scale is adapted automatically depending on the type of road being traveled (expressway, highway, other roads) so that you always have an optimal overview of the road ahead. When route guidance is active, the scale is adjusted automatically for a better detailed view when there are upcoming maneuvers.
– **Intersection**: when route guidance is active, the scale is adjusted automatically for a better detailed view when there are upcoming maneuvers. ▶

– **Off**

MMI map contents/Map content: you can switch the display of additional information (such as POIs) on the map in the center display on or off.

Voice guidance

Voice guidance: you can adjust the navigation prompts. With the **Traffic** setting, the MMI will only give prompts if there are traffic incidents on your route.

Voice guidance during phone call

Entertainment fader during navigation: the audio playback volume is temporarily lowered when navigation prompts are active.

Route criteria

You can adjust which route criteria should be allowed or avoided for the route calculation.

HOV/carpool lanes

Highways

Toll roads

Ferries

Route information

When this function is switched on and route guidance is active, route information (13) ⇨ *page 180, fig. 145* is displayed. The next maneuver will be displayed at the bottom. POIs and traffic information will also be displayed. Press route information to display a preview of the next maneuver on the map. You can switch the following information on or off in route information.

– **POIs along the route**

– **Traffic information**

Presentation mode

In presentation mode, the system simulates driving on the center display along the planned route without the vehicle actually moving. You can use **Specify starting point** when you would like to calculate a route starting from a location other than the current vehicle position, for example.
Simulating route guidance: start route guidance and press **Presentation mode**.

Tips

You can adjust the volume of navigation prompts during voice guidance using the On/Off knob ⇨ *page 18*.

8W1012721BB

Radio

General information

Selecting the radio



Fig. 150 Center display: FM station list



Fig. 151 Center display: SiriusXM station list

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the radio may support the FM, AM, and SiriusXM (satellite radio) frequency bands. Using the HD Radio receiver* also allows you to receive radio stations on the FM and AM bands in digital format.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and the selected station list, the following information will be displayed:

① **Station list**

Shows the station that is currently playing. The station list updates automatically.

② **Stations**

For example, the station name may be displayed depending on availability.

③ **HD Radio technology**

FM/AM stations that can be received by digital radio are marked with the HD Radio technology symbol HD.

If reception quality declines, the radio automatically switches to the analog FM/AM station depending on availability.

④ **Additional audio programs**

Digital HD Radio stations may contain multiple additional audio programs. If you lose reception, the additional audio programs will be muted since they can no longer be received.

⑤ **Radio ID**

Your radio ID and contact data for your satellite radio provider are displayed.

⑥ **Channel number**

⑦ **No reception**

The station cannot be received.

Tips

– Certain settings are automatically stored and assigned to the active user.
– Contact the SiriusXM* provider if you would like to receive satellite programming.
– Buildings, tunnels, bridges, open areas, other vehicles or objects on the vehicle roof can affect reception.
– Satellite radio* is not available in Alaska and Hawaii.

Adjusting the radio using the MMI

▸ Applies to: MMI: To set a frequency band, select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > *a category*.
▸ Applies to: MMI: To set a station, select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > *a category* > *a station/podcast**.
▸ To select a frequency, follow the instructions under ⇨ *page 190, Free text search*.

Adjusting the radio using the multifunction steering wheel

Requirement: radio mode must be on.

▸ Select the radio/media tab in the instrument cluster.
▸ To switch between radio and media, select the ☰ button > **Switch to radio**/**Switch to media**.
▸ Turn the left thumbwheel to display the station list.
▸ To switch to a different source, press the ☰ button.
▸ To select a station or a source, turn and press the left thumbwheel. ▶

Tips

Applies to: multifunction steering wheel: Depending on the selected function, operation through the MMI may be required.

Radio functions

Overview

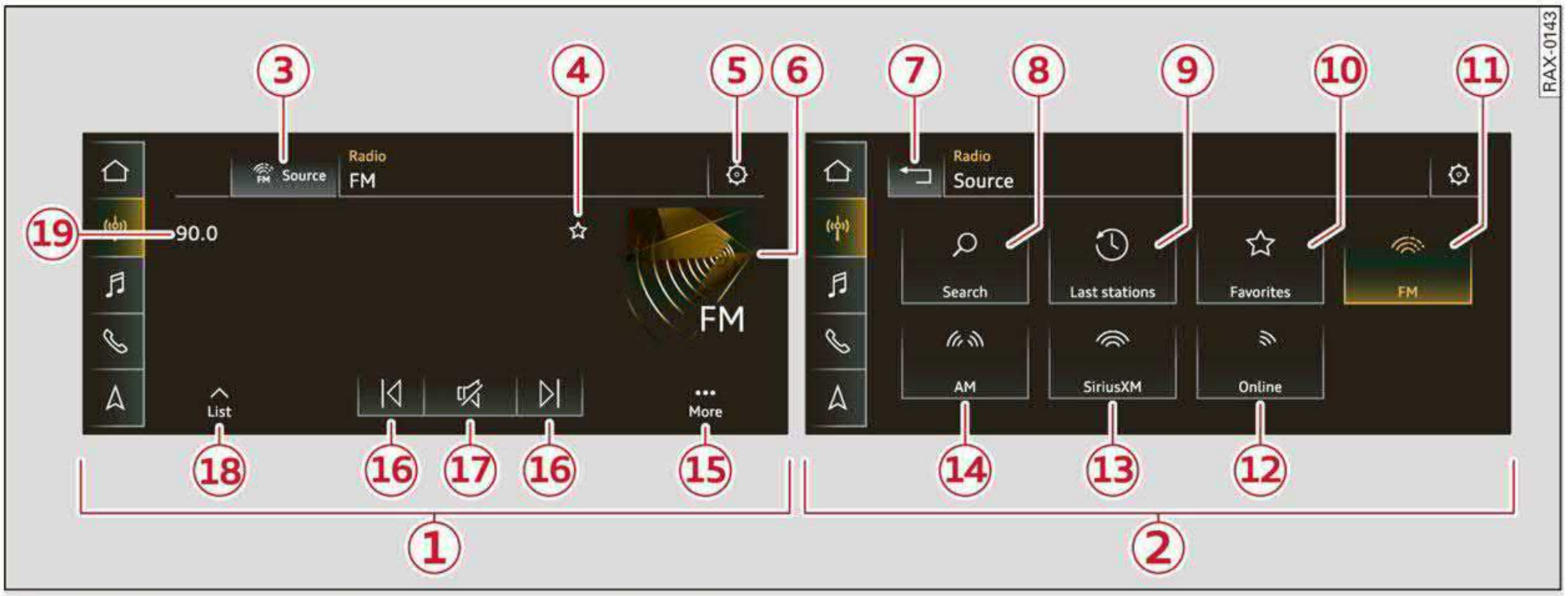


Fig. 152 Center display: left side: playback view of radio functions, right side: sources

Operating

- Applies to: MMI: To open the playback view (1), select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > *a category* > *a station/podcast**.
- Applies to: MMI: To open the sources (2), select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source**.

The following functions may be available depending on the selected radio station/podcast* and the vehicle equipment:

	Symbol/Description	Description
(3)	**Source**	Displays sources in the Radio menu.
(4)	☆/★	See ⇨ *page 190*.
(5)	⚙	Settings ⇨ *page 193*.
(6)	**Station logo**	The station logo will be displayed. Depending on availability, you can switch between the image views: press on the station logo. Use one finger to swipe to the right or left to switch between the **Station logo** and **Cover art** (album cover). Also see ⇨ *page 193*, **Online additional data**.
(7)	⮌	Go back one level.
(8)	**Search**	See ⇨ *page 190*.
(9)	**Last stations**	See ⇨ *page 190*.
(10)	**Presets**	See ⇨ *page 190*.
(11)	**FM**	Displays stations from the **FM** frequency band.
(12)	**Online**	See ⇨ *page 191*.
(13)	**SiriusXM**	Displays stations from the **SiriusXM** frequency band.

	Symbol/Description	Description
⑭	**AM**	Displays stations from the **AM** frequency band.
⑮	**More**	Access options for the current station ⇨ *page 193*.
⑯	⏮/⏭	Select the previous/next station.
⑰	🔊/🔇	Unmutes or mutes playback.
⑱	**List**	The station list is displayed ⇨ *page 188*.
⑲	**Info section**	Depending on availability, the station name as well as program information, for example, may be displayed. Also see ⇨ *page 193*, **Online additional data**.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 169*.

Tips

Not all functions are available in every source and on every touch display.

Free text search

Using intelligent search, you can search for station names, frequencies, program types (such as **News**), podcasts*, or online radio stations*.

Opening free text search

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > **Search**.

Entering search terms

You can enter multiple search terms at once in any order.

The following information may be available:

Symbol	Description
🕘	Results from the list: **Last stations**
☆	Results from the list: **Presets**
📻	Results from a **Station list**
For example, FM	Station frequency band

Last stations

You can listen to the last stations that were played in all frequency bands.

Accessing last stations

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > **Last stations**.

Listening to last stations

▸ Press on a station.

Deleting last stations

▸ Select: ✎ > *select one or more stations* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Presets

You can store your favorite stations from every frequency band in the presets list.

Selecting presets using the MMI

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > **Presets** > *a preset*.

Storing presets

▸ Press on ☆ ④ in the playback view ⇨ *page 189, fig. 152*.

Requirement: a list with radio stations must be displayed ⇨ *page 188, fig. 150*.

▸ Press and hold an entry in the list until the **Options** menu appears.

▸ Press **Store as preset**.

Editing a preset

▸ **Deleting presets**: Press on ★ in the playback view, or ▶

▸ In the presets list, select: ✎ > *one or more stations* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Requirement: the presets list must be displayed.

▸ **Moving a preset**: press ✎.

▸ Touch the ⬍ symbol and move the entry to the desired position.

▸ Press **Done**.

Smart presets

Applies to: vehicles with SiriusXM

You can store SiriusXM stations in the presets as smart presets. After switching the ignition and the MMI on, the smart presets store radio programs at a specific time.

Selecting smart presets

▸ Press on a smart preset.

You have the following options:

Pause/start

▸ Press II / ▷.

Playing the previous or next track

▸ Press ⏮ or ⏭.

Going to the beginning of the recorded program or to a live program

▸ Press and hold ⏮ or ⏭.

To a live program

▸ Press LIVE.

Radio text

Program information (for example, general text messages, artist, composer, song) is displayed in the radio text.

Requirement: the selected radio station must support the radio text function.

Opening radio text

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > *select a frequency band (such as FM)* > *select a station* > **More** > **Radio text**.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available:

Displaying previous radio text entries

▸ Swipe downward with one finger. The last radio text entries are displayed if they are available.

Scrolling through radio text entries

▸ Swipe upward or downward with one finger.

Showing Radio Text Plus information

If a radio text entry is displayed with a color, a phone number or a navigation destination for the station is available as radio text plus information.

You have the following options:

Selecting the destination

▸ Select: *a navigation destination marked in color* > **Set as destination**.

Call

▸ Select: *a phone number marked in color* > **Call**.

Tips

A call to a phone number stored in the radio text will start immediately.

Online radio

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment and online radio

You can listen to various radio stations or podcasts on the Internet using online radio.

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet. A data plan must be available ⇨ *page 173*.

Opening online radio using the MMI

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > **Online**.

The following functions are available:

Last stations

The station/podcast list for the last station or podcast that was playing will be displayed.

Top stations

The favorite online radio stations are displayed. ▶

Filter list

▸ Select: 🔍≡ > (*a category*) > *a station/podcast*.

The following categories are available:

– **Countries**
– **Genres**
– **Languages**

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in General information on page 169*.

Tips

– Depending on the Internet connection and network traffic, the connection may be lost when online radio is playing.
– Online radio reception may not be possible if Internet service is throttled.
– The use of online radio depends on the service availability of the third party provider.
– The range and screen display of online media services from third party providers in the vehicle can vary.
– Please note that it may not be possible to play some online radio stations in certain countries.
– Audi only provides access to online radio and does not assume any responsibility for the content of these services.

Podcasts

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment and online radio

Opening podcasts using the MMI

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > **Online** > **Podcasts**.

The following functions are available:

Listening to a podcast

▸ Select: *a podcast* > *a podcast episode*.

Search

▸ Press 🔍≡.

The following functions are available in the podcast playback view:

Displaying podcast episodes

▸ Press **List**.

Starting/stopping podcast playback

▸ Press 🔊 / 🔇.

Previous/next podcast

▸ Press ⏮ / ⏭.

Changing the playback position

▸ You can adjust the playback position using the knob.

Displaying the online radio menu

▸ Press ⊞.

Switching to radio

▸ Press **Source**. The sources in the Radio menu are displayed.

Podcast favorites

You can store podcasts in the **Podcast favorites**.

Requirement: the playback view for a podcast must be displayed.

▸ Press ☆ ④ ⇨ *page 189, fig. 152*.

Requirement: a list with podcasts must be displayed.

▸ Press and hold an entry in the list until the **Options** menu appears.
▸ Press **Save podcast**.

Listening to a podcast favorite

Requirement: the podcast favorites list must be displayed. At least one podcast favorite must be stored.

▸ Select: *a podcast* > *a podcast episode*.

Scrolling through podcast favorites

Requirement: the podcast favorites list must be displayed. At least one podcast favorite must be stored.

▸ Press 〈 or 〉.

Displaying all podcast favorites

Requirement: the podcast favorites list must be displayed. At least one podcast favorite must be stored.

▸ Press **All**.

Editing podcast favorites

▸ **Deleting podcast favorites**: press ★ in the playback view, or
▸ In the podcast favorites list, select: **All** > ✎ > *one or more podcasts*, or **Select All** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Requirement: the podcast favorites list must be displayed.

▸ **Moving a podcast favorite**: Select: **All** > ✎.
▸ Touch the ⬍ symbol and move the entry to the desired position.
▸ Press **Done**.

Options and settings

Options

Requirement: the playback view ① ⇨ *page 189, fig. 152* must be displayed.

▸ Press **More**, or

Requirement: a list with radio stations or podcasts* must be displayed ⇨ *page 188, fig. 150*.

▸ Press and hold an entry in the list until the **Options** menu appears.

Depending on the selected source and vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available.

– **Store as favorite** ⇨ *page 190*.
– **Radio text** ⇨ *page 191*.
– **Save podcast** ⇨ *page 192, Podcast favorites*

Settings

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > ⚙.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following settings may be available:

HD Radio FM/HD Radio AM

You can switch HD Radio reception on or off.

SiriusXM Tune Start

If you play a smart preset when this function is switched on, the song currently playing on the channel will play from the beginning.

SiriusXM subscription status

This option is available when your subscription is about to expire or has already expired. The expiration date for your license is displayed.

Call SiriusXM: the telephone number and radio ID of your satellite radio provider are displayed. To call your satellite radio provider using the MMI, press **Call SiriusXM**.

Online additional data

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet. A data plan must be available ⇨ *page 173*.

When the function is switched on, additional information (such as album cover, artist, track) will be loaded depending on the availability from the different providers.

Preferred online radio data rate

Depending on the selected radio station, you may be able to adjust the data rate for online radio ⇨ *page 191*.

For optimal sound playback, press **High**. To reduce data usage, press **Low**.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 169*.

Tips

Delays may occur when switching automatically between normal frequency bands and online radio.

Troubleshooting

The information that follows lists some trouble-shooting options. They depend on the equip-ment.

Problem	Solution
A station is no longer displayed in the sta-tion list.	Store the station as a preset in advance. Access the pre-sets using the presets list ⇨ *page 190*.
Online radio: no playback from online ra-dio.	Check if a data plan has been purchased for the applicable country and it is available ⇨ *page 173*.

Media

General information

There may be different media sources and connections available depending on the vehicle equipment. For example, you can play media files using a connected USB drive or connect your mobile devices to the Audi music interface and operate them through the MMI.

Media and format restrictions: the MMI (including the USB storage device connection) was tested with a variety of products and media on the market. However, there may be cases where individual devices or media and audio/video files may not be recognized, may play only with restrictions, or may not play at all.

Restricted functionality: reset the MMI to the factory default settings if functionality is restricted. ⇨ *page 207*

Digital Rights Management: please note that the audio/video files are subject to copyright protection.

Files that are protected by DRM and are identified with the symbol will not play.

Data security: never store important information on mobile devices. Audi is not responsible for damaged or lost files and media.

Loading times: the more files/folders/playlists there are on a storage medium, the longer it will take to load. To reduce the amount of time it takes the audio/video files to load, use a storage medium that only contains audio/video files, and create subfolders (for example, for each artist or album).

Additional information: when playing, audio files are automatically displayed with any additional information that is stored (such as the artist, track and album cover). If this information is not available on the medium, the MMI will revert to the local Gracenote metadata database or search online if necessary. See ⇨ *page 201,* **Online additional data**. However, in some cases, the additional information may not be displayed.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in General information on page 169.*

Tips

Certain settings are automatically stored and assigned to the active user.

Bluetooth audio player

With the Bluetooth audio player, you can play music wirelessly through the MMI from your Bluetooth-capable mobile device (such as a mobile phone).

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings will open on your mobile device during the connection setup. The Bluetooth function and visibility of the MMI ⇨ *page 206* and mobile device must be switched on.

Connecting a mobile device

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > **Connect external device** > **New connection**. The available Bluetooth devices will be displayed after several seconds.
- Press on the desired mobile device in the list of displayed Bluetooth devices.
- To update the list, press .
- A PIN for a secure Bluetooth connection will be generated.
- Confirm the PIN on your mobile device, or:
- Enter the PIN for the connection setup on your mobile device. The time allowed for entering the PIN is limited to approximately 30 seconds.

After connecting successfully, the mobile device will be displayed in the **Connected devices** menu as a Bluetooth audio player.

Playing media ⇨ *page 197*.

Tips

– Check for any connection requests on your Bluetooth device.
– Multiple Bluetooth audio players can be paired with the MMI, but only one at a time ▶

can be active as a Bluetooth audio player ⇨ *page 207*.
– The supported media functions (such as shuffle, list view, categories, search, options) depend on the Bluetooth device being used.
– Note the volume setting on your Bluetooth device. Audi recommends setting your mobile device to the maximum volume when using it as a Bluetooth audio player.
– A selection of supported Bluetooth devices can be found in the database for tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/bluetooth.

Multimedia connections

USB adapter cable

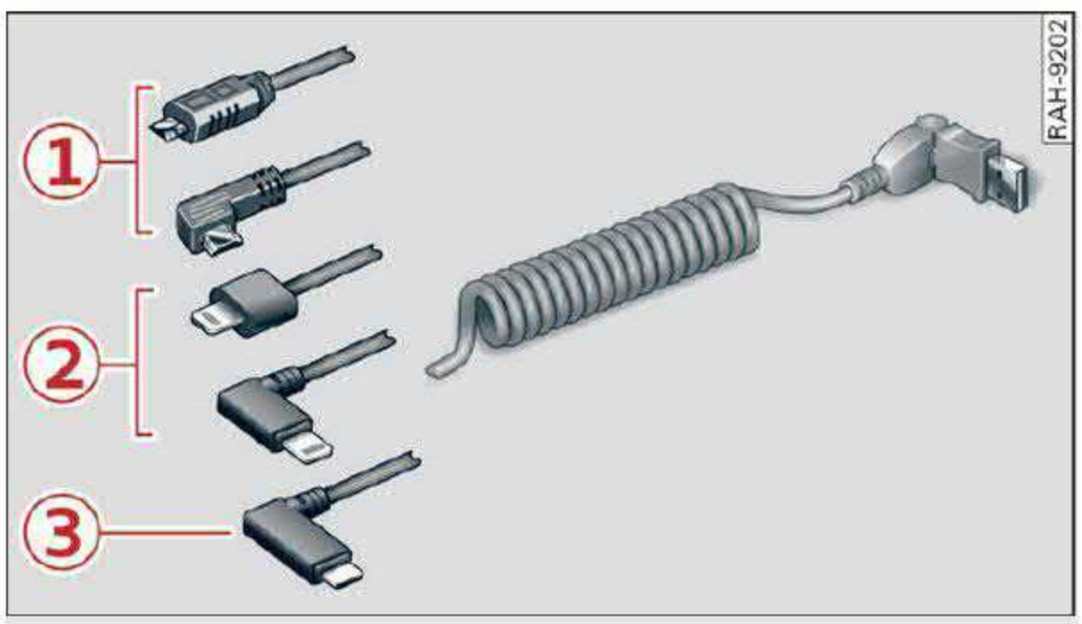


Fig. 153 Audi Genuine Accessories: USB adapter

You can connect your mobile devices through the Audi music interface to the MMI using the USB adapter and charge the battery at the same time.

You can purchase the USB adapter cable from an authorized Audi dealer or at specialty stores:

① USB adapter for devices with a micro USB connection
② USB adapter for devices with an Apple Lightning connection
③ USB adapter for devices with USB type C connection

Note

Handle the USB adapter carefully. Do not allow it to be pinched.

Tips

Mobile devices with an Apple Dock connector can only be charged using a USB adapter designed for devices with an Apple Dock connector. Data cannot be transmitted.

Audi music interface

Connect your mobile devices to the Audi music interface in order to operate them through the MMI and charge the batteries.

The Audi music interface USB ports are located in the center console in the front and in the rear* and are labeled with the ⇠ symbol. If multiple USB devices are connected to the USB ports (for example, a smartphone and a USB flash drive), all of these devices can be used as the playback source.

Connecting or charging mobile devices using a USB adapter

▸ Connect the matching USB adapter to the Audi music interface USB port and connect it to the mobile device, such as a smartphone.

The battery will charge automatically.

Mobile devices connected to the Audi music interface can be started and operated using the MMI ⇨ *page 197*.

Disconnecting a mobile device from the Audi music interface

▸ Remove the USB adapter cable from the Audi music interface.

WARNING

Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Never operate mobile devices while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Note

– Pull the cable out of the Audi music interface carefully so that the USB ports are not damaged.
– Use a USB extension cable to connect devices that have an integrated USB connector (such as a USB stick) to reduce the risk of damage to your USB device and the Audi music interface. ▶

– Extremely high or low temperatures that can occur inside vehicles can damage mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Never leave mobile devices in the vehicle in extremely high or low temperatures.

Tips

– Always follow the information found in ⇨ *page 78*.
– When you switch the ignition off, the USB ports are still supplied with power until the energy management intervenes.
– Do not use an additional adapter cable or USB extension cable to connect mobile devices to the Audi music interface that already have a cable or that must be connected with a USB adapter cable (⇨ *page 196, fig. 153*). Using an additional adapter or US extension cable may impair functionality.
– Functionality is not guaranteed for mobile devices that do not conform to the USB 2.0 specification.
– USB hubs are not supported.
– Video playback through the Audi music interface is not supported on Apple and MTP devices (such as smartphones).
– iPod touch or iPhone malfunctions also affect the operation of the MMI. Reset your mobile device in these situations.
– Audi recommends updating the iPod touch or iPhone software to the latest version. Refer to your mobile device owner's manual for more information.
– The USB adapter on the Audi music interface will support iPod touch or iPhone devices from the 5th generation or newer with the lightning connector.
– For more information about the Audi music interface and supported devices, check the Audi database for mobile devices at www.audi.com/mp3 or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Playing media

Media sources

The following sources can be selected depending on the vehicle equipment:
– **USB device** ⇨ *page 196*.
– **Connect external device**: you can connect external devices via Bluetooth and use the Bluetooth audio player ⇨ *page 195*, or you can connect an external device directly to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 196*.

Accessing media

Playing media files using the MMI

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > *a source*. Depending on the connected device, the symbol for a source may change. The device name may be displayed (for example: myPhone).
▸ Select a track from the categories in the media center ⇨ *page 198*.

Playing media files through the multifunction steering wheel

Requirement: a media source must contain media files ⇨ *page 197*.

▸ Select the radio/media tab in the instrument cluster.
▸ Turn the left thumbwheel to display the playlist.
▸ To switch to a different source, press the ☰ button.
▸ To select a media file or a source, turn and press the left thumbwheel.
▸ To switch between radio and media, select in the instrument cluster: the ☰ button > **Switch to radio**/**Switch to media**.

Tips

– For safety reasons, the video image is only displayed when the vehicle is stationary. Only the sound from the video plays while driving.

– Applies to: multifunction steering wheel: Depending on the selected function, operation through the center display may be required.

Media center

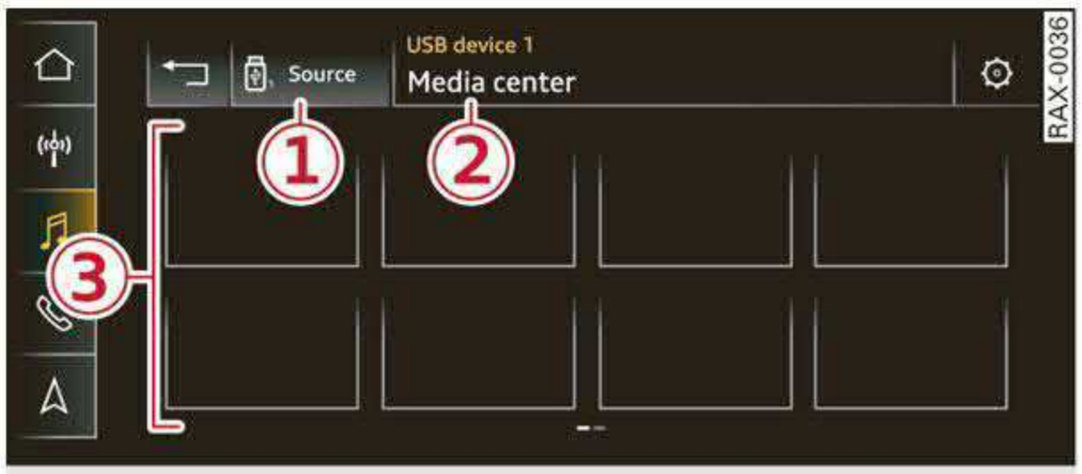


Fig. 154 Center display: media center view

There are various categories available in the media center. You can also search for media files across sources. The current music track continues playing while you search the MMI.

Opening the media center

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > *a source* > *a category*.

① Source symbol

The symbol for the source that is currently in use is displayed. Depending on the connected device, the symbol for the source may change. As an example, ⇨ *fig. 154* shows a USB stick connected to the Audi music interface.

② Source device name

The device name of the source that is currently in use is displayed.

③ Categories

The media center will display categories depending on the connected device, the selected source content, and the connection type.

Last played track

The last played media file will be played.

Artists

All available artists are displayed.

▸ Select: *an artist* > *an album* > *a song*.

Playlists

All playlists and smart playlists in the source are displayed.

▸ Select: *a playlist* > *a song*.

Smart playlists

Last played tracks: the tracks that were displayed last are displayed.

Most played tracks: the tracks that are played most frequently are displayed.

Directories

The folder structure or track/chapter list is displayed.

▸ Select: *a folder* > *a song*.

Compilations

You can control your compilations through the MMI.

▸ Select: *a compilation* > *a song*.

Composers

All available composers are displayed.

▸ Select: *a composer* > *an album* > *a song*.

Radio

▸ Press on a radio station.

Audio books

You can control your audio books on the MMI.

▸ Press on an audio book.

Podcasts

You can control your podcasts through the MMI.

▸ Select: *a podcast* > *a podcast episode*.

Genres

All available genres are displayed.

▸ Select: *a genre* > *an artist* > *an album* > *a song*.

Videos

All available video files are displayed.

▸ Press on a video. ▶

Tracks

All available tracks are displayed.

▸ Press on a track.

Albums

All available albums are displayed.

▸ Select: *an album* > *a track*.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

– Cloud services and category radio always require an Internet connection.
– Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ ! *in General information on page 169*.

Tips

– Only the categories supported by the medium are available.
– For safety reasons, the video image is only displayed when the vehicle is stationary. Only the sound from the video plays while driving.
– When synchronizing a portable device with Cloud services, playlists may display incorrectly in the MMI. Use the media center in the device.
– Applies to: iPod touch/iPhone: Note the information about the Audi music interface and the supported devices ⇨ *page 196*.

Media functions

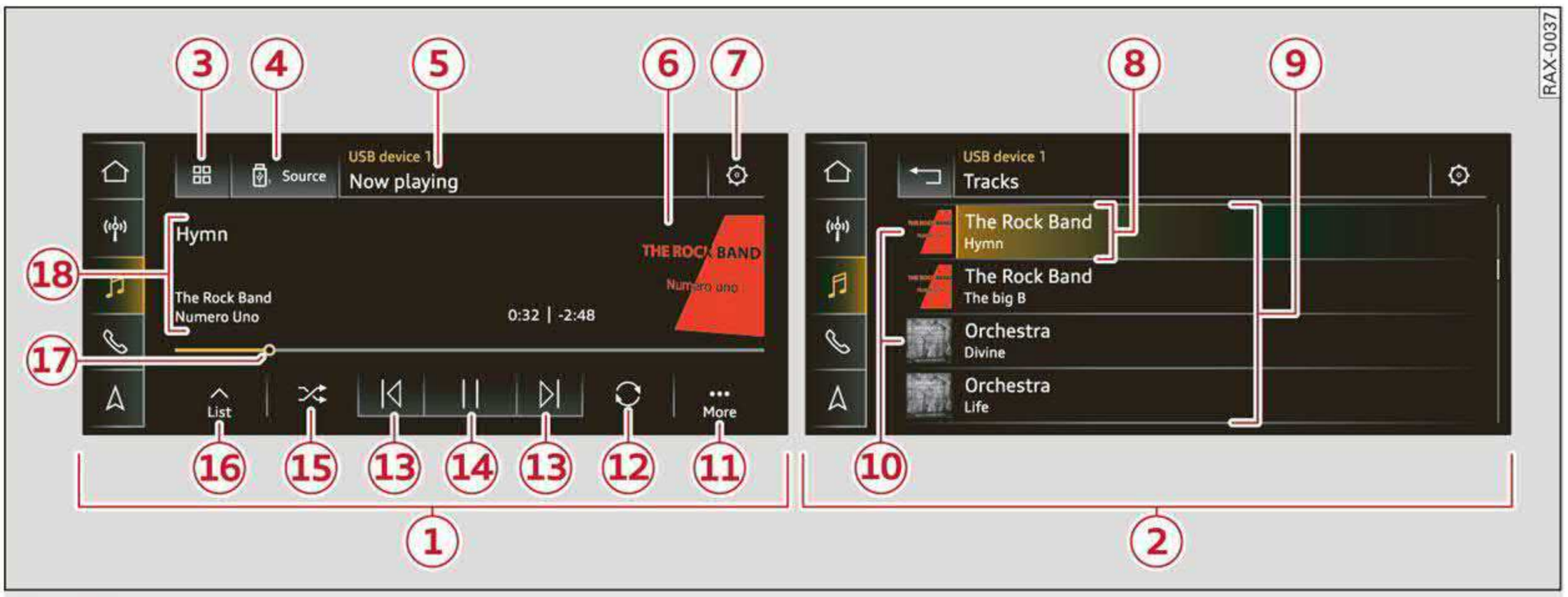


Fig. 155 Center display: left side: playback view; right side: playlist

Operating

▸ Applies to: MMI: To open the playback view ①, select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > *a source* > *a category* (such as Artists > *Album*) > *a track*.

▸ To open the playlist ②, select **List** in the playback view ⑮.

The following functions may be available depending on the selected media source and the vehicle equipment:

	Symbol/Description	Description
③	**Categories** menu	The media center categories are displayed based on the active source ⇨ *page 198*.
④	**Source** button	Displays sources in the Media menu.

	Symbol/Description	Description
⑤	**Source/device name**	Applies to: playback view: Device name of the source that is currently playing.
		Applies to: media center view: Source that you are currently browsing ⇨ *page 198*.
⑥	**Album cover** in the playback view	Requirement: a media source with album covers must be selected or the covers must be available online ⇨ *page 201*, **Online additional data**. Displays the current album cover. **Displaying playlists**: press on the cover.
⑦	**Settings**	See ⇨ *page 201*.
⑧	**Current track information**	Display of **Track** and **Artist**. Highlights the track that is currently playing.
⑨	**List**	**Browsing in the list**: drag your finger upward or downward.
⑩	**Album cover** in the playlist	Requirement: a media source with album covers must be selected or the covers must be available online ⇨ *page 201*, **Online additional data**. Displays the current album cover.
⑪	**More**	Opens options ⇨ *page 201*.
⑫	**Off**	**Switching between off/playlist/track**: press ⑪.
	Playlist	The tracks in the current playlist will repeat continuously in a loop.
	Tracks	The current track will repeat continuously in a loop.
⑬	⏮/⏭	**Selecting the previous/next track (or station/chapter)**: press ⏮ or ⏭. **Jumping to the beginning of a track**: after the first three seconds of play time, press ⏮
⑭	▷/II	Start or stop playback
⑮	**Shuffle**	When this function is switched on, all files in the playlist will play in random order.
⑯	**List**	The playlist ② is displayed.
⑰	**Playback position**	The bar shows the current playback position in the track.
⑱	**Info section**	Display of **Track**, **Artist** and **Album**.

Tips

Not all functions are available in every source and on every touch display.

Opening the search

You can search across all active sources, for example for tracks and video files.

Opening the search

Requirement: the selected source must support the search function.

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > Search.

Entries that contain the entered search term are listed in the results list. Each result is marked with the symbol for a category in the media center ⇨ *page 198*.

You can search for the following categories:

– Artists
– Albums
– Tracks
– Genres ▶

– Videos

Options and settings

Options

Context-dependent functions and settings may be available depending on the selected source, the connected mobile device, and the connection type.

Requirement: the playback view must be displayed ① ⇨ *page 199, fig. 155*.

► Press **More**.

Aspect ratio

The **Auto** aspect ratio setting is recommended. If you press on an aspect ratio, you will see a preview of the setting on the screen. Press **OK** to apply the selected aspect ratio.

The following table gives an overview of the aspect ratios. The possible aspect ratios depend on the source or video file being played.

Aspect ratio	Description
Auto	The MMI detects the picture format of the source and displays the image in the optimal ratio.
4:3, **16:9**	The image is fixed in the corresponding ratio. Select one of these options if the image is distorted or a section of the image is cut off or blurry when **Auto** is selected.
Zoom	The image is enlarged to fill the entire display.
Original	The image is displayed in the ratio of the source format. Select this option if the image is distorted or a section of the image is cut off or blurry when **Auto** is selected.

Settings

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > ⚙.

Online additional data

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet. A data plan must be available ⇨ *page 173*.

When the function is switched on, additional information (such as album cover, artist, track) will be loaded depending on the availability from the different providers.

Supported media and file formats

Overview

The USB storage device connection supports the following media file properties: ▶

Audio/video files	
Supported media	**Audi music interface**: mobile devices ⇨ *page 196* such as iPhones, MTP players, and USB storage devices in “USB Device Subclass 1 and 6” that conform to USB 2.0: USB sticks, USB MP3 players (Plug-and-Play capable), external USB flash drives, and hard drives
File system	**USB storage devices**: exFAT, FAT, FAT32, NTFS. **USB storage device partitions (primary/logical*)**: 2 per USB connection.
Playlists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX
Number of files	**USB storage device**: maximum 50,000 files; maximum 1,000 files per playlist/directory

Audio files		
Format	**File extension**	
MPEG-1/-2 Layer-3	.mp3	Up to maximum 320 kbit/s 48 kHz sampling frequencies
Windows Media Audio 9/10	.wma	
MPEG 2/4	.m4a; .m4b; .aac	
Opus	.opus; .ogg; .oga	
FLAC	.flac	48 kHz sampling frequency
ALAC	.m4a	
Monkey's Audio	.ape	

Video files		
Format	**File extension**	
MPEG 1/2	.mpg; .mpeg	Up to maximum 15 Mbit/s and 1920x1080 px at maximum 30 fps
MPEG4 AVC (H.264)	.mp4; .m4v; .mov; .avi	
Windows Media Video 9	.wmv; .asf	
MPEG-H (H.265/HEVC)	.mp4; .mov	
VP8/VP9	.webm	
Flash video	.flv; .f4v	

Tips

– The media sources do not support the Windows Media Audio 9 Voice format.
– For compressing MP3 files, Audi recommends a bit rate of at least 160 kbit/s. The display showing the remaining play time may differ for audio files with variable bit rate.
– Special characters (such as those in ID3 tag information) may display differently or may not always display, depending on the system language.
– The manufacturer of the storage device can provide information about its “USB Device Subclass”.
– Some MTP player functions are not supported, such as rating music tracks and video playback.

Troubleshooting

The information that follows lists some trouble-shooting options. They depend on the equip-ment.

Problem	Solution
Audi music interface/Bluetooth audio player: the mobile device is not supported.	Read the instructions in the chapter ⇨ *page 196, Multimedia connections/*⇨ *page 195, Bluetooth audio player*.
Audi music interface: the mobile device is not recognized as a source.	For many mobile phones or mobile devices, playback is not possi-ble when the battery level is too low (less than 5% charge level). The mobile device will only be recognized as a media source in the MMI after connecting if the battery charge level is sufficient.
Audi music interface: malfunc-tions during audio playback through an iPod touch/iPhone.	The **Bluetooth audio player** function is switched on. Switch this function off ⇨ *page 206* when you are not using the **Bluetooth audio player**.
Audi music interface: audio play-back through the connected mo-bile device is not possible.	Make sure the USB mode *MTP* is selected in the settings on your mobile device.
Bluetooth audio player: interfer-ence with track display and audio playback.	Playback interference can occur when using the **Bluetooth audio player** if a music player app from a third party provider is open. Audi recommends using the integrated media player on your Bluetooth device (such as a smartphone).

8W1012721BB

Audi smartphone interface

Setup

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

You can connect your smartphone to the MMI with a cable or wirelessly using the Audi smartphone interface. Certain content on your smartphone is adapted in the MMI while driving and can be operated through the MMI.

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on. iPhone generation 5 or higher with Lightning connector and iOS 7.1.2 operating system or higher, or smartphone with Android Auto app and Android 5.0 Lollipop operating system or higher.

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connected devices** > **Audi smartphone interface** > **New connection**.
- ▸ Connect your smartphone to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 196* using a USB adapter ⇨ *page 196, fig. 153*, or
- ▸ To connect your iPhone wireless, switch on the Bluetooth function and Wi-Fi on your iPhone. Open the CarPlay settings in your iPhone. In the MMI, press on your iPhone in the list of displayed devices.
- ▸ To update the list, press ⟳.
- ▸ Follow the system instructions.
- ▸ Pay attention to any additional system prompts on your smartphone, if applicable.
- ▸ Applies to: MMI: If you declined use of Apple CarPlay or Android Auto the first time you connected your smartphone, then select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connected devices** > **Audi smartphone interface** > *a smartphone*.
- ▸ Follow the system instructions.

WARNING

Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Never operate mobile devices while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *page 169*.

Tips

- The functions that can be used depend on the following factors, among others:
  - The brand of your smartphone
  - The version of the operating system in your smartphone
  - The software version of the app used
  - The USB adapter cable and correct connection
  - Your mobile phone service provider
  - The customized settings on your smartphone
- One of the factors above or a combination of any of them could cause your smartphone to be incompatible with the Audi smartphone interface. Compatibility cannot be guaranteed for all types of smartphones. For more information and assistance, refer to the user guide and the manufacturer of your smartphone.
- Please note that you can only connect your smartphone via the front Audi music interface in order to use the Audi smartphone interface.
- Wireless CarPlay is not available in all countries.
- Wireless CarPlay is a planned function at the time this manual was printed. Wireless CarPlay is not available in your vehicle.
- Wireless CarPlay is only possible in vehicles without a navigation system if the embedded SIM card for the vehicle is logged into the mobile phone network ⇨ *page 169*.
- If the connected smartphone has voice control, you can operate your smartphone using the external voice recognition system ⇨ *page 25*.
- The menu language shown in the MMI is based on the settings in your smartphone.
- Some MMI functions are not available when there is an active Audi smartphone interface connection.

– You cannot connect any mobile devices via Bluetooth when an Audi smartphone interface connection is active.
– Usage of the Audi smartphone interface depends on the availability of services through third party providers.
– Audi merely provides access to third party services through the MMI and does not assume any responsibility for the content of these services.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

The information that follows lists some trouble-shooting options. They depend on the equipment.

Problem	Solution
Audi smartphone interface cannot be opened.	Check the battery charge level on your smartphone. Check the USB cable and use a different one if necessary. Check if Android Auto or Apple CarPlay is available in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
	Android Auto: check if the Android Auto app is installed on your smartphone.
Connecting the smartphone to the MMI failed.	Make sure that you are using the correct USB adapter and check if the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 196*.
	Apple CarPlay: check if Apple CarPlay is activated on your iPhone.
	Android Auto: check in the Android Auto app if Android Auto permits new vehicles.
	Wireless connection: open the settings for Bluetooth and CarPlay on your iPhone. Remove your vehicle. Open the connection manager in the MMI ⇨ *page 207*. Delete your iPhone in the Telephone 1 and Audi smartphone interface submenus. Repeat the connection process. Restart the MMI ⇨ *page 18*. Restart your iPhone.
The smartphone is not automatically detected.	Make sure that you are using the correct USB adapter and check if the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 196*. Check if the requirements needed to connect a smartphone have been met.

Additional settings
System settings

Introduction

General settings are described in this chapter. You can find specific settings in the chapters about those settings. The available settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

Date and time

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Date & time**.

Possible settings:

– **Set date and time automatically**
– **Date**
– **Time**
– **Date format**
– **Time format**
– **Automatic time zone**
– **Time zone**

Measurement units

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Measurement units**.

Possible settings:

– **Speed**
– **Distance**
– **Temperature**
– **Volume**
– **Pressure**
– **Consumption**

Language and keyboard

▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Language & keyboard**.

Language

You can change the languages for the display, navigation announcements, and the voice recognition system.

Keyboard

See ⇨ *page 21*.

Sound

Requirement: an audio source must be active.

▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Sound**.

Possible settings:

– **Treble**
– **Bass**
– **Balance/fader**
– **Speed-dependent volume**
– **Subwoofer**
– **Surround Level**

Focus

You can optimize the sound distribution for various locations in the vehicle.

3D effect

You can adjust the intensity of the 3D effect. With the **Medium** setting, you will hear an optimal 3D effect for all sources.

Tips

Certain settings are automatically stored and assigned to the active user.

Bluetooth

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings** > **Bluetooth**.

Bluetooth

You can select a setting for visibility of the MMI to other Bluetooth devices. To connect a new Bluetooth device, the **Visible** setting must be selected. If **Invisible** is selected, a Bluetooth connection will only be possible with paired devices. If **Off** is selected, no Bluetooth device can be connected. ▶

Bluetooth audio player

When this function is switched on, the profile will load automatically when your Bluetooth audio player is within range.

Bluetooth name

The MMI's Bluetooth name is displayed and can be changed.

Factory default settings

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **System maintenance** > **Restore factory settings**.
- Follow the system instructions.

The settings will be reset. The system will restart. This may take some time.

Tips

Make sure that not only the settings were deleted but also the stored data, if necessary.

Tips

The software update may take some time.

Online software update

Applies to: vehicles with online software update

With the online software update, you can update the software directly in the vehicle.

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 169, Audi connect*.

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **System maintenance** > **Software update**.
- Press **Search for updates**.
- Press on the desired update.
- Press **Next**.
- Follow the system instructions.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in General information on page 169*.

Software update

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with software update

You can update your vehicle's software.

The functions depend on the country and vehicle equipment:

– Update using the online software update.
– Import a map update from the **USB connection** to your MMI ⇨ *page 184*.
– Have the software update performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. This can result in additional costs.

WARNING

– Perform the installation only when the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise, this increases the risk of an accident
– If the installation fails, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Connected devices

Displayed connected devices

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on.

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connected devices**.

Possible menu items:

– **Telephone 1**
– **Telephone 2**
– **Audio player**
– **Wi-Fi hotspot**

Audi smartphone interface

You can connect your smartphone to the MMI ⇨ *page 204*.

Managing connected devices

Requirement: the connected devices menu must be displayed ⇨ *page 207*. ▶

Connecting a device

Requirement: Bluetooth visibility must be activated in the MMI ⇨ *page 206* and mobile device.

- ▸ Press on a menu item, such as **Telephone 1**.
- ▸ To search for and connect your mobile device, press **New connection** ⇨ *page 158*.

Selecting a connected device

- ▸ Press on a menu item, such as **Telephone 1**.
- ▸ Press on the desired mobile device in the list of displayed devices. The connection will be made.

Disconnecting a connected device

- ▸ Press on a menu item, such as **Telephone 1**.
- ▸ Press on the connected mobile device. The selected mobile device will be disconnected from the MMI.

Deleting a device

- ▸ Press on a menu item, such as **Telephone 1**.
- ▸ Press and hold an element until the **Options** menu is displayed.
- ▸ Press **Delete**.

If a device is listed multiple times, it will be deleted from all menu items.

Additional options

Depending on the selected function, additional options may be available.

Requirement: the connected devices menu must be displayed ⇨ *page 207*.

- ▸ Press on a menu item, such as **Telephone 1**.
- ▸ Press and hold an element until the **Options** menu is displayed.

Bluetooth profiles

You can switch desired profiles on or off separately in the MMI.

Favorite

To set a paired mobile device as the default phone, activate this function in the MMI.

When the mobile device is in range and the Bluetooth function on the mobile device and in the MMI is switched on, the default phone will be given priority over the other Bluetooth devices and will be connected directly to the MMI.

Legal information

General information

Information on the software licenses can be found online at www.audi.com/softwareinfo.

Information in the MMI

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General**.

License subscription

Version information

Legal information

Possible options:

– **Software information**
– **About Audi connect**

Audi smartphone interface

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Requirement: a smartphone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 204*.

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connected devices** > **Audi smartphone interface**.
- ▸ Press and hold an element until the **Options** menu is displayed.
- ▸ Press **Legal notes**.

Instrument cluster

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary.

- ▸ Select in the instrument cluster: vehicle functions tab ⇨ *page 12*.
- ▸ Press and hold the ☰ button on the multifunction steering wheel until the display appears.

Possible options:

– **Engine code**
– **Software information**
– **Version information**

Head-up display

Applies to: vehicles with head-up display

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on. The head-up display is switched off.

- To display the license text in the head-up display, press and hold the ⇨ *page 23, fig. 19* button until the display appears.

Checking and Filling

Fuel

Types of gasoline

The correct gasoline grade is stated on the inside of the fuel filler door.

The vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter and must only be driven with **unleaded gasoline**.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For additional information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, visit www.toptiergas.com.

The individual gasoline grades are differentiated by **octane ratings**. This value is given with (R +M)/2 equating to AKI or in RON.

The headings below match the sticker in the fuel filler door (examples):

UNLEADED FUEL ONLY MIN. (R+M)/2 87 Regular / MIN. RON 91 Regular

Use regular gasoline with minimum 87 AKI / 91 RON ⇨ (!).

Audi recommends using premium gasoline with minimum 91 AKI / 95 RON to achieve the rated horsepower and torque.

UNLEADED FUEL ONLY PREMIUM MIN. (R +M)/2 91 / SUPER MIN. RON 95

Using premium gasoline with minimum 91 AKI / 95 RON is recommended.

If premium gasoline is not available, you can also use regular gasoline 87 AKI / 91 RON. However this does reduce the engine power slightly.

Note

– Filling the tank just one time with leaded fuel or other metallic additives will cause permanent deterioration to the catalytic converter function.
– When gasoline with an octane rating that is too low is used, high speeds or heavy engine load can lead to engine damage.

Tips

The vehicle may be filled with fuel that has a higher octane rating than what is required by the engine.

Gasoline mixture

Gasoline with alcohol or MTBE (Methyl-Tert-Butyl-Ether)

You can use unleaded gasoline mixed with alcohol or MTBE (generally labeled as oxygenated compounds) as long as the fuel meets the following conditions:

Gasoline with methanol content (methyl alcohol or methanol)

– Anti-Knock Index is at least 87 AKI
– No more than 3% methanol
– More than 2% solvent

Gasoline with ethanol content (ethyl alcohol or ethanol)

– Anti-Knock Index is at least 87 AKI
– No more than 15% ethanol

Gasoline with MTBE content

– Anti-Knock Index is at least 87 AKI
– No more than 15% MTBE

Gasoline adapted to the season

Many gasoline fuels are adapted to the seasons. When the season changes, we recommend refueling at high-traffic gas stations. It is more likely that the gasoline will be suitable for the season there.

Note

– Gasoline with methanol content that does not meet the specified conditions may cause corrosion damage and damage to plastic or rubber components in the fuel system.
– Do not use gasoline that does not meet the specifications.
– If you are unable to find out if a specific gasoline mixture meets the specifications, ask the gas station operator or their fuel supplier.

– Do not use any gasoline mixture whose composition cannot be identified.
– Audi does not assume any responsibility for damage to the fuel system or for performance problems caused by using gasoline mixtures different from those specified. This type of damage also does not fall under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty or under the emissions control system warranty.
– If you notice a higher fuel consumption or poor handling or performance problems due to such gasoline mixtures, we recommend fueling with unblended gasoline.

Gasoline additives

An important issue for many automobile manufacturers is combustion residue in the engine that results from the use of certain fuels.

Although types of gasoline differ depending on the manufacturer, there are similarities. Certain substances in the gasoline may cause deposits in the engine. Additives in the gasoline that should keep the engine and fuel system clean do not all function equally.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For additional information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, visit www.toptiergas.com.

If you use incorrect fuels over a long period of time, the maximum engine performance may be impaired by combustion residue.

Note

– Damage or malfunctions caused by the use of incorrect types of gasoline are not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
– Only gasoline additives that have been approved by Audi may be used.

Refueling

Messages

Messages

Tank system: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the fuel tank system. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Fueling procedure



Fig. 156 Right rear side of the vehicle: opening the fuel filler door



Fig. 157 Fuel filler door with attached fuel cap

The fuel filler door is unlocked or locked by the central locking system.

▸ Unlock the vehicle if necessary.
▸ Press on the left side of the fuel filler door to open it ⇨ *fig. 156*.
▸ Unscrew the tank cap counterclockwise.
▸ Place the cap from above on the open fuel filler door ⇨ *fig. 157*.
▸ Insert the fuel pump nozzle all the way into the fuel filler neck.
▸ Begin fueling. Once the fuel pump nozzle turns off the first time, the fuel tank is full. Do not continue fueling, or else the expansion space in the tank will be filled with fuel.
▸ After the fuel pump has switched off, wait five seconds before removing the nozzle to allow the rest of the fuel to finish dripping into the fuel tank. ▶

- ▸ Turn the fuel cap clockwise until it clicks into place.
- ▸ Close the fuel filler door and then press on the left side until it latches.

The correct fuel type for your vehicle can be found on a label located on the inside of the fuel filler door. For additional information on fuel, see ⇨ *page 210*.

For the tank capacity in your vehicle, refer to the Technical Data ⇨ *page 278*.

To reduce the risk of fuel leaking out or vapors escaping, make sure that the fuel tank is closed correctly. Otherwise the  [1)] indicator light will turn on.

If the central locking system malfunctions, there is a fuel filler door emergency release ⇨ *page 213*.

WARNING

Improper fueling procedures and improper handling of fuel can lead to explosions, fires, severe burns, and other injuries.

- – Do not smoke. Keep away from open flames.
- – The ignition must be switched off when refueling.
- – Mobile devices, radio devices, and other radio equipment should always be switched off when refueling. Electromagnetic rays could cause sparks and start a fire.
- – If you do not insert the fuel pump nozzle all the way into the filler tube, then fuel can leak out. Spilled fuel can ignite and start a fire.
- – Never get into the vehicle when refueling. If there is an exceptional situation where you must enter the vehicle, close the door and touch a metal surface before touching the fuel pump nozzle again. This will reduce the risk of electrostatic discharge that can cause flying sparks. Sparks can start a fire when refueling.

WARNING

Transporting fuel containers inside the vehicle is not recommended. Fuel could leak out of the container and ignite, especially during an accident. This can cause explosions, fires, and injuries.

- – If you must transport fuel in a fuel container, note the following:
  - – Always place the fuel container on the ground before filling. Never fill the fuel container with fuel while it is inside or on the vehicle. Electrostatic discharge can occur while refueling and the fuel vapors could ignite.
  - – When using fuel containers made of metal, the fuel pump nozzle must always remain in contact with the container to reduce the risk of static charge.
  - – Insert the fuel pump nozzle as far as possible into the filler opening while refueling.
  - – Follow the applicable legal regulations in the country where you are driving when using, storing and transporting fuel containers.
  - – Make sure that the fuel container meets the industry standards, for example ANSI or ASTM F852-86.

Note

- – Remove fuel that has overflowed onto any vehicle components immediately to reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle.
- – Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel may enter the exhaust system and increase the risk of damage to the catalytic converter.

For the sake of the environment

- – Do not overfill the fuel tank, or fuel could leak out when the vehicle is warming up.
- – Fuel should never enter the sewer system or come into contact with the ground. ▶

1) Depending on the engine and country

Tips

The fuel filler door on your vehicle does not lock if you lock the vehicle from the inside using the central locking switch.

Fuel filler door emergency release

If the central locking system malfunctions, the fuel filler door can be unlocked manually.



Fig. 158 Right side trim panel in the luggage compartment: opening the trim panel

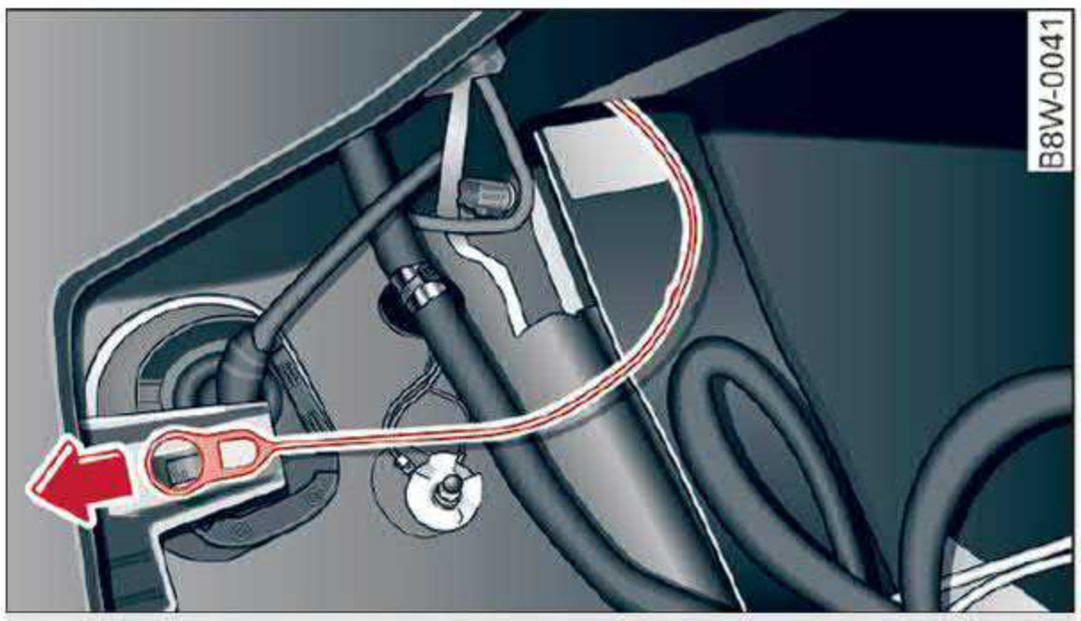


Fig. 159 Luggage compartment: fuel filler door emergency release

The emergency opening mechanism is located behind the right side trim panel in the luggage compartment.

- ▸ Open the cover in the side panel ⇨ *fig. 158*.
- ▸ To unlock the fuel filler door, loosen the loop from the retainer and then pull on the loop carefully ⇨ *fig. 159* ⇨ (!).
- ▸ Press on the left side of the fuel filler door to open it ⇨ *page 211, fig. 156*.

Note

Only pull on the loop until you feel resistance. You will not hear it release. If you continue to pull, you could damage the emergency release mechanism.

Emissions control system

General information

WARNING

The temperature of the exhaust system is high, both when driving and after stopping the engine.

- Never touch the exhaust tail pipes once they have become hot. This could result in burns.
- Do not park your vehicle over flammable materials such as grass or leaves because the high temperature of the emissions system could start a fire.
- Do not apply underbody protectant in the exhaust system area, because this increases the risk of fire.

Catalytic converter

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 213, General information*.

The vehicle may only be driven with unleaded gasoline, or the catalytic converter will be destroyed.

Never drive until the tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel could enter the exhaust system, which could cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

If the indicator light blinks or turns on, there is a malfunction that is causing poor emissions quality and that could damage the catalytic converter. Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected. ▶

The indicator light can also turn on if the fuel filler cap is not closed correctly ⇨ *page 211*[1)].

Engine compartment

General information

Special care is required if you are working in the motor compartment

For work in the motor compartment, such as checking and filling fluids, there is a risk of injury, scalding, accidents, and burns. For this reason, follow all the warnings and general safety precautions provided in the following information. The engine compartment is a dangerous area in the vehicle. ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- Turn the engine off.
- Switch the ignition off.
- Set the parking brake.
- Select the “P” (Park) selector lever position.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Keep children away from the engine compartment.
- Never spill fluids on a hot engine. These fluids (such as the freeze protection contained in the coolant) can catch fire.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system.
- Never reach into the radiator fan. The fan is temperature-controlled and can turn on suddenly, even when the ignition is switched off.
- Never open the hood when there is steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment, because there is a risk that you could be burned. Wait until no steam or coolant is escaping.
- The cap on the coolant expansion tank must never be opened when the coolant is hot. The cooling system is under pressure. There is a risk of burns
- To protect your face, hands, and arms from hot steam or coolant, cover the cap with a thick cloth when opening.
- Do not remove the engine cover under any circumstances. This increases the risk of burns.
- Due to the risk of electric shock, never touch the ignition cable or other components in the electronic high-voltage ignition system when the engine is running or is starting.
- If a gear is engaged while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running, do not press the accelerator pedal inadvertently. Pressing the accelerator pedal will cause the vehicle to move, and this could result in an accident.
- If inspections or repairs must be performed while the engine is running, moving components (such as the ribbed belt, generator, and radiator fan) pose an additional risk.
  - Set the parking brake first and select the “P” (Park) selector lever position.
  - Always make sure that no parts of the body, jewelry, ties, loose clothing, and long hair can be caught in moving engine components. Before any work, always remove any jewelry and/or ties, tie back long hair, and make sure all clothing fits close to the body to reduce the risk of anything becoming caught in engine components.
- Pay attention to the following warnings listed when work on the fuel system or on the electrical equipment is required.
  - Do not smoke.
  - Never work near open flames.
  - Always have a working fire extinguisher nearby.
- All work on the battery or electrical system in your vehicle can result in injuries, chemical burns, accidents, or burns. Because of this, all work must be performed **only** by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Limit your exposure to exhaust and chemicals to as short a time as possible.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning: ▶

1) Depending on the engine and country

– Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
– Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling.

Note

When filling fluids, be sure not to add any fluids to the wrong reservoirs. Otherwise severe malfunctions and engine damage will occur.

For the sake of the environment

You should regularly check the ground under your vehicle in order to detect leaks quickly. If there are visible spots from oil or other fluids, bring your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to be checked.

Opening and closing the hood

The hood is released from inside the vehicle.



Fig. 160 Footwell: release lever

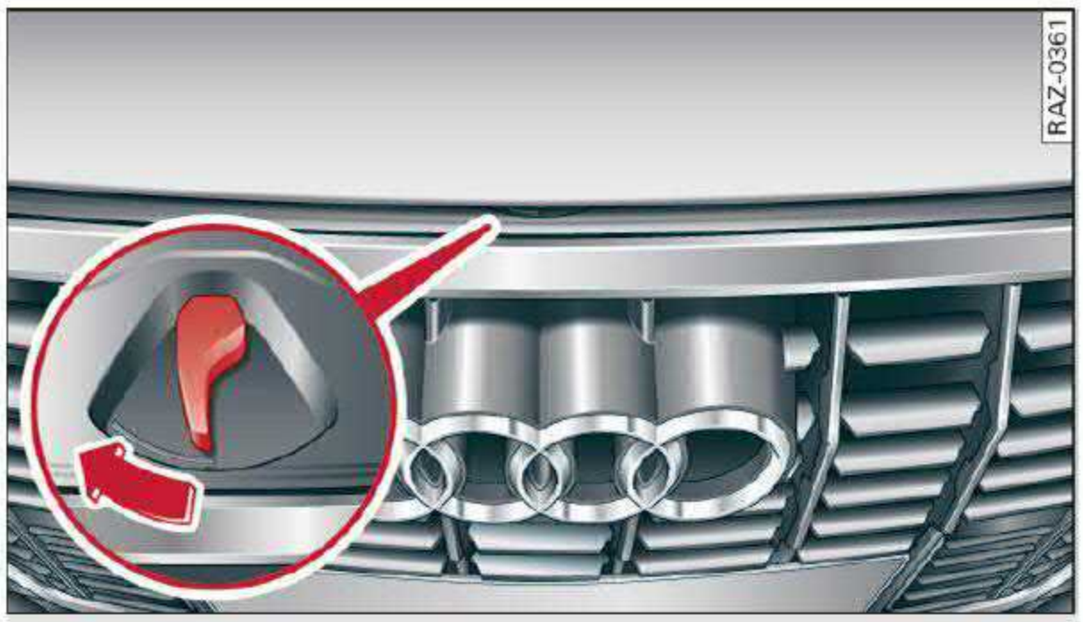


Fig. 161 Unlocked hood: lever

Make sure the wiper arms are not raised up from the windshield. Otherwise the paint could be damaged.

Opening the hood

- With the door open, pull the lever below the instrument panel in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 160*.
- Raise the hood slightly ⇨ ⚠.
- Press the lever ⇨ *fig. 161* in the direction of the arrow. This releases the hooks.
- Open the hood.

Closing the hood

- Push the hood down until you override the force of the struts.
- Let the hood fall lightly into the latch. *Do not press it in.* ⇨ ⚠.

Message

Warning! Hood is not locked. Stop vehicle and check the lock

The hood latch is not locked correctly. Stop immediately and close the hood.

WARNING

– Never open the hood when there is steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment, because there is a risk that you could be burned. Wait until no steam or coolant is escaping.
– For safety reasons, the hood must always be closed securely while driving. Because of this, always check the hood after closing it to make sure it is latched correctly. The hood is latched if the front corners cannot be lifted.

– If you notice that the hood is not latched while you are driving, stop immediately and close it, because driving when the hood is not latched increases the risk of an accident.

Engine compartment overview

The most important check points.

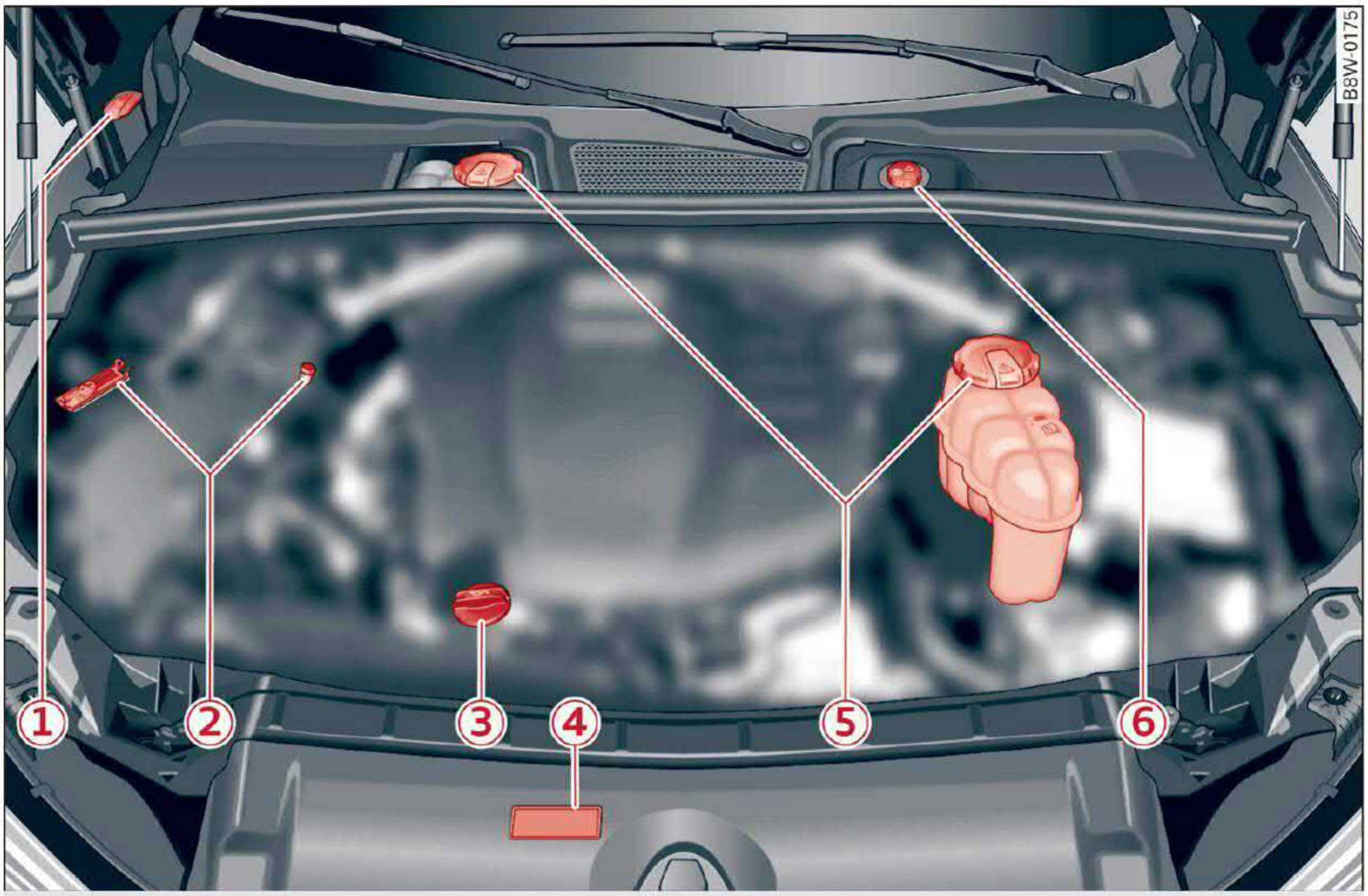


Fig. 162 Typical location of the reservoir and the engine oil filler opening (example)

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 214*.

① Washer fluid reservoir (🚿) ⇨ *page 225*

② Jump start points: (+) under the cover ⇨ *page 225, Charging the battery* ⇨ *page 260, Preparation*

③ Engine oil filler opening (🛢) ⇨ *page 217*

④ Sticker* for engine oil specification ⇨ *page 216*

⑤ Coolant expansion tank (🌡) ⇨ *page 221*

⑥ Brake fluid reservoir (🛞) ⇨ *page 222*

The coolant expansion tank and the engine oil filling opening may be located in different places within the engine compartment, depending on the engine version.

Engine oil

If the engine oil level is too low

If you need to add engine oil, use an oil that is listed on the sticker. The sticker is located at the front of the engine compartment ⇨ *page 216, fig. 162*.

If the recommended engine oil is not available, **in an emergency** you may add a maximum of 1 quart (1 liter) of ACEA C3 or API SN engine oil **one time** until the next oil change.

For more information on the correct engine oil for your vehicle, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Have the oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Service Facility. ▶

Audi recommends
Castrol EDGE Professional
Audi recommends using the LongLife high-performance engine oil from Audi Genuine Parts.

Messages

Engine oil pressure

Turn off engine. Oil pressure too low

Stop driving and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level ⇨ *page 217*.

– If the engine oil level is too low, add engine oil ⇨ *page 218*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.
– If the engine oil level is correct and the indicator light still turns on, turn the engine off and do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Engine oil level

Applies to: vehicles with oil level warning

Please add oil immediately

Stop driving and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level ⇨ *page 217* and add engine oil immediately ⇨ *page 218*.

Please add max. x qt (x l) oil. You can continue driving

Add the amount of oil shown immediately ⇨ *page 218*.

Reducing the oil level

Please reduce oil level

There is too much oil in the engine and there is a risk of damaging the catalytic converter or engine. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have engine oil extracted if necessary. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration, and heavy engine loads.

Engine oil sensor

Oil level sensor: oil change necessary. Please contact Service

Fuel has entered the engine oil. This will cause the engine oil level to rise slowly and the engine oil quality to decrease. Do not extract engine oil to reduce the level, because this will increase the risk of engine damage. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have engine oil extracted.

Oil level system: malfunction! Please contact Service

The sensor that checks the engine oil level has malfunctioned. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Oil pressure sensor: malfunction! Please contact Service

The sensor that checks the engine oil pressure has malfunctioned. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Engine warm-up request

Please drive to warm up engine

Fuel has entered the engine oil, either due to low outside temperatures or frequent short drives. Drive until the engine is warm so that the fuel in the engine oil will evaporate. Avoid high engine speeds, full accelerating, and heavy engine loads when doing this.

Tips

The oil pressure warning is not an oil level indicator. Always check the oil level regularly.

Checking the engine oil level

The engine oil level can be checked in the MMI.

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 214*.

- Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- Shut the engine off when it is warm.
- Switch only the ignition back on.
- Wait approximately two minutes.
- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Oil level**. ▶

▸ Read the oil level in the display. Add engine oil if the bar in the oil level indicator is just below "min" ⇨ *page 218*.

Note

If the engine oil level is too low or too high, there is a risk of engine damage.

Tips

The oil level indicator in the display is only an informational display. If the oil level is too low, a minimum oil warning appears in the instrument cluster. Add oil and close the hood. The current oil level will be displayed on the MMI the next time the ignition is switched on.

Tips

The engine oil consumption may be up to 0.5 quart/600 miles (0.5 liter/1,000 km), depending on driving style and operating conditions. Consumption may be higher during the first 3,000 miles (5,000 km). The engine oil level must be checked regularly. It is best to check each time you refuel your vehicle and before long drives.

– Because of the lubrication and cooling of the engine, combustion engines consume oil. The oil consumption varies depending on the engine and may change during the service life of the engine. Engines generally consume more oil at the beginning during the break-in period. Then oil consumption stabilizes after the break-in period.
– Under normal conditions, oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of the oil, the engine RPM, the climate conditions, and the road conditions. The dilution of oil from condensation or fuel residue as well as the age of the oil also play a role. Because engine wear increases with mileage, oil consumption will increase again over time until it may be necessary to replace worn components.
– Because all these variables play a role, it is not possible to define an oil consumption standard. Therefore, the oil level must be checked regularly.
– If you believe that your engine has increased its oil consumption, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to determine the cause. Please note that an exact oil consumption measurement must be done with the necessary care and accuracy and may take time. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility is trained in accurately measuring the oil consumption.
– You can find information on engine oil and engine oil capacities for the USA at www.audiusa.com/help/maintenance, or for Canada at www.audi.ca/ca/web/en/customer-area/care-and-maintenance/audi-service-schedules.html, or call 800-822-2834.

Adding engine oil

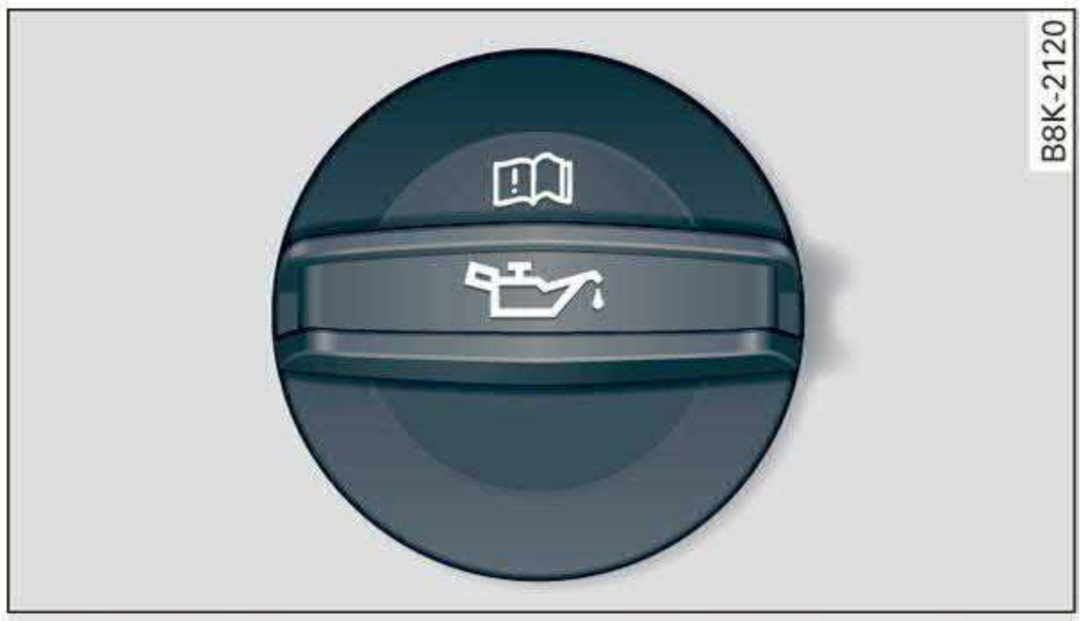


Fig. 163 Engine compartment: engine oil filler opening cover

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 214*.

▸ Turn the engine off.
▸ Open the hood ⇨ *page 215*.
▸ Unscrew the cap for the engine oil filler opening ⇨ *fig. 163*.
▸ Carefully add 0.5 quart (0.5 liter) of the correct oil ⇨ *page 216*.
▸ Close the engine oil filler opening cap.
▸ Close the hood ⇨ *page 215*.
▸ Restart the ignition after two minutes and read the current oil level in the MMI ⇨ *page 217, Checking the engine oil level*.
▸ Add more oil if necessary. ▶

WARNING

- When adding oil, do not let oil drip onto hot engine components. This increases the risk of a fire.
- You must seal the cap on the oil filler opening correctly so that oil does not leak out onto the hot engine and exhaust system when the engine is running, because this is a fire hazard.
- Always clean skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.
- Engine oil is poisonous and must be kept out of reach of children.
- Store the engine oil securely in the original container.

Note

- The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions if the recommended intended use of the vehicle and maintenance measures listed in the Audi Owner's Manual and the Warranty & Maintenance Booklet were not followed.
- Only use high-grade engine oil that explicitly meets the Audi oil quality standard for your vehicle. Using another oil may cause severe vehicle damage.
- Do not mix any additives with the engine oil. Additives may cause engine damage that is not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

For the sake of the environment

- Oil should never enter the sewer system or come into contact with the ground.
- Follow the legal regulations in the country where you are located when disposing of empty oil containers.

Changing engine oil

We recommend having the oil changed at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 214, General information*.

The engine oil must be changed at the intervals specified in the Warranty & Maintenance Booklet. This is very important because the lubrication function of the oil gradually declines during regular vehicle operation.

The engine oil should be changed more frequently under certain circumstances. Have the oil changed more frequently if you often drive short distances, your vehicle is predominantly in stop-and-go traffic situations, is in very dusty environments, or is operated for long periods of time in temperatures below zero.

Cleansing additives in the oil make fresh oil appear darker after the engine has run briefly. This is normal and no reason to change the engine oil more frequently than recommended.

Because correctly disposing of engine oil is difficult and special tools and technical knowledge are needed for an oil change, having your engine oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility is recommended.

If you change the engine oil yourself, please note the following important information:

WARNING

If you change the engine oil on the vehicle yourself, the following precautions must be followed:

- Wear protective eyewear.
- Due to the risk of scalding, allow the engine to cool down sufficiently.
- Maintain enough distance when you are removing the oil drain plug. While doing this, keep your forearm parallel to the ground to reduce the risk of hot oil dripping down your arm.
- Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose that is large enough to hold the full amount of oil in your engine.
- Engine oil is poisonous. Always store out of reach of children.
- Prolonged contact of used engine oil with the skin may cause skin damage. Always wash oil off immediately with soap and water to protect your skin.

Note

Do not mix any additives with the engine oil. Additives may cause engine damage that is not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

For the sake of the environment

– Before changing the engine oil, make sure you can dispose of the used engine oil correctly.
– Engine oil must always be disposed of correctly. Do not dump it in the yard, in the forest, or in open water, river channels, or sewers.
– Have your used engine oil recycled by bringing it to a used oil collection site or contact a gas station.

Cooling system

Coolant

The engine cooling system is filled with a mixture of purified water and coolant additive at the factory. This coolant must not be not changed.

The coolant level is monitored using the indicator light. However, occasionally checking the coolant level manually is recommended.

Messages

Turn off engine and check coolant level. See owner's manual

The coolant level is too low.

Stop driving and switch the engine off. Check the coolant level ⇨ *page 221*.

– If the coolant level is too low, add coolant ⇨ *page 221*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.

Coolant temperature: too high. Please let engine run while vehicle is stationary

Let the engine run at idle for a few minutes to cool off, until the indicator light turns off.

– If the indicator light does not turn off, do not continue driving the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Coolant system: malfunction! Please turn off engine

Do not continue driving, shut the engine off, and switch the ignition off.

– See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Coolant additive

The coolant additive is made of anti-freezing and corrosion protection agents. Only use the following coolant additives. These additives may be mixed with each other.

Coolant additive	Specification
G12evo	**TL 774 L**
G12++	TL 774 G
G13	TL 774 J

The amount of coolant additive that needs to be mixed with water depends on the climate where the vehicle will be operated. If the coolant additive percentage is too low, the coolant can freeze and damage the engine.

	Coolant additive	Freeze protection
Warm regions	min. 40% max. 45%	min. -13 °F (-25 °C)
Cold regions	min. 50% max. 55%	max. -40 °F (-40 °C)

Note

– Before the start of winter, have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check if the coolant additive in your vehicle matches the percentage appropriate for the climate. This is especially important when driving in colder climates.
– If the appropriate coolant additive is not available in an emergency, do not add any other additive. You could damage the engine. If this happens, only use water and restore the correct mixture ratio with the specified coolant additive as soon as possible.

– Only refill with new coolant.
– Radiator sealant must not be mixed with the coolant.
– Due to the risk of engine damage, the cooling system should only be refilled by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can also provide you with important information about the recommended coolant additive.

Checking coolant

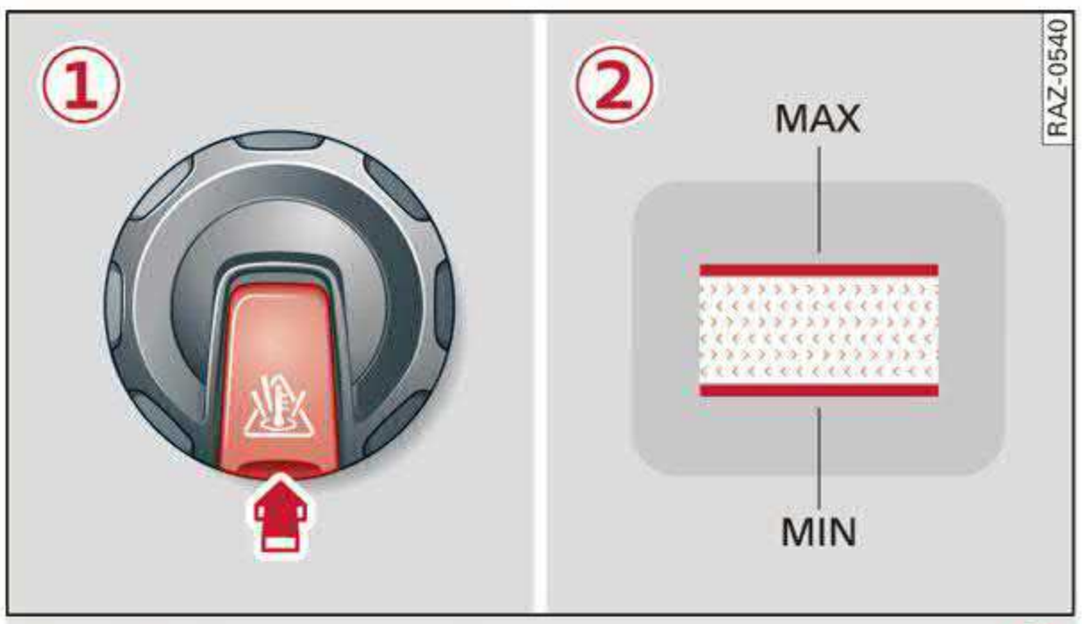


Fig. 164 Engine compartment - coolant expansion tank: ① cover; ② markings

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 214, General information*.

Checking the coolant level

► Park the vehicle on a level surface.
► Switch the ignition off.
► Open the hood ⇨ *page 215*.

The coolant expansion tank for some engines is located in the water drip tray under a cover. If necessary, remove the cover that is located under the windshield wiper on the front passenger's side.

► Check the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank ⇨ *page 216, fig. 162* using the outer markings ② ⇨ *fig. 164*. The coolant level must be between the markings ② when the engine is cold. When the engine is warm it can be slightly above the upper marking.
► Applies to: vehicles with 6-cylinder engine: There is a float located in the coolant expansion tank. Read the coolant level using the coolant level float. When the engine is cold, the float must be located between the MIN marking and the edge of the filler opening on the coolant expansion tank.

Adding coolant

Requirement: there must be a residual amount of coolant in the expansion tank ⇨ (!).

If you must add coolant, use a mixture of water and coolant additive. Mixing the coolant additive with distilled water is recommended.

► Allow the engine to cool.
► Place a large, thick towel on the coolant expansion tank cap.
► Push the release button ① ⇨ *fig. 164* on the cap and carefully turn it to the left until you feel resistance ⇨ ⚠.
► Push the release button again and remove the cap completely.
► Add coolant in the correct mixture ratio ⇨ *page 220* up to the MAX marking. Or, in vehicles with a 6-cylinder gasoline engine, the float must be located between the MIN marking and the edge of the filler opening on the coolant expansion tank.
► Make sure that the fluid level remains stable. Add more coolant if necessary.
► Vehicles with 6-cylinder engine: if necessary, press the float into the coolant expansion tank using the cover.
► Turn the cap to the right to tighten it until you feel resistance a second time.

Coolant loss usually indicates that there is a leak. Immediately drive your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the cooling system inspected. If the cooling system is not leaking, coolant loss can result from the coolant boiling due overheating and then being forced out of the cooling system.

⚠ WARNING

– The engine compartment in any vehicle can be a dangerous area. Stop the engine and allow it to cool before working in the engine compartment. Always follow the information found in ⇨ *page 214, General information*.
– Never open the hood if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine ▶

compartment. This increases the risk of burns. The cooling system is under pressure. When you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping, you may open the engine compartment with caution.
– When working in the engine compartment, remember that the radiator fan can switch on even if the ignition is switched off, which increases the risk of injury.
– Coolant additive and coolant can be dangerous to your health. For this reason, store the coolant in the original container and away from children. There is a risk of poisoning.

Note

Do not continue driving if the coolant expansion tank is empty. Do not add any coolant, because air could enter the cooling system and damage the engine. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Brake fluid

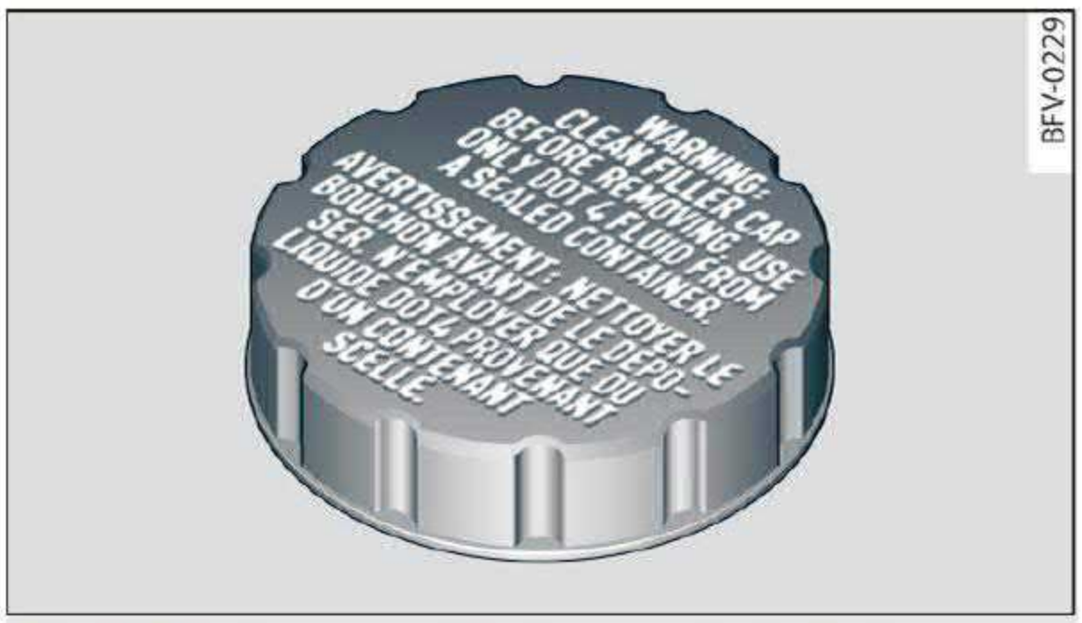


Fig. 165 Engine compartment: cap on brake fluid reservoir

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 214, General information*.

Checking the brake fluid level

Read the brake fluid level on the brake fluid reservoir ⇨ *page 216, fig. 162*. The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX markings ⇨ ⚠.

The brake fluid level is monitored automatically.

Message

BRAKE / Brakes: stop vehicle and check brake fluid level

Stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Changing the brake fluid

Brake fluid should be changed at regular intervals. Have the brake fluid changed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. The authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will inform you of the replacement intervals.

WARNING

– If the brake fluid level is below the MIN marking, it can impair the braking effect and driving safety, which increase the risk of an accident. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
– If the brake fluid is old, bubbles may form in the brake system during heavy braking. This could impair braking performance and driving safety, which increases the risk of an accident.
– The brake fluid in your vehicle must meet the standard VW 501 14 and is available at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. If this brake fluid is not available, another high-grade brake fluid of equivalent quality may be used, and it must meet the U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Standard (FMVSS) 116 DOT 4, Class 6.

Note

– If the brake fluid level is above the MAX marking, brake fluid may leak out over the edge of the reservoir and result in damage to the vehicle.
– Do not allow any brake fluid to come into contact with the vehicle paint, because it will corrode the paint.

Electrical system

If the or indicator light turns on, there is a malfunction in the generator, the battery, or the vehicle electrical system. ▶

Electrical system: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle

Do not continue driving and switch the engine off ⇨ ⚠. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Electrical system: malfunction! Restart not possible. Please contact Service

If you switch the ignition off, you will not be able to restart the vehicle. Vehicle functions/driving stability may be limited. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately.

Electrical system: malfunction! Please contact Service

Switch off all electrical equipment that is not needed. Vehicle functions/driving stability may be limited. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately.

Electrical system: low battery charge. Battery will be charged while driving

The starting ability may be impaired.

If this message turns off after a little while, the vehicle battery has charged enough while driving.

If this message does not turn off, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

WARNING

When there is an electrical system malfunction, vehicle functions may not work and driving stability may be limited, which increases the risk of an accident. Stop driving and switch the engine off. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Battery

Battery general information

Because of the complex power supply, all work on batteries such as disconnecting, replacing, etc., should **only** be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility ⇨ ⚠.

Multiple batteries with different technologies may be installed in your vehicle:

- Vehicle battery (for example, for starting the engine, basic power supply) ⇨ *page 224, Lead battery* or ⇨ *page 224, Other battery types*
- Auxiliary battery (for example, for recuperation or optional equipment) ⇨ *page 224, Other battery types*

Not running the vehicle for long periods of time

The battery will gradually drain if the vehicle does not run for long periods of time. To ensure that the vehicle can still be started, the electrical equipment will be reduced or switched off ⇨ *page 99*. Some convenience functions, such as interior lighting or power seat adjustment, may not be available under certain circumstances. These convenience functions will be available again once you switch the ignition on and start the engine.

Even when electrical equipment is switched off, the equipment can still drain the battery if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time. Deep draining results in a chemical reaction that destroys the inside of the battery. The battery must be charged every month to prevent this ⇨ *page 225*. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Winter operation

Cold weather places higher demands on the battery. This results in reduced starting ability. Have the battery checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before cold weather begins.

WARNING

- All work on the battery or electrical system in your vehicle can result in injuries, chemical burns, accidents, or burns. Because of this, all work must be performed **only** by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Never connect the charging cable or jump start cable directly to your vehicle battery. ▶

Only use the connections in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 225*.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:

– Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling.

Note

– If the vehicle will be parked for long periods of time, protect the battery against the cold so that it will not be destroyed by "freezing" ⇨ *page 225, Charging the battery*.
– There are electrical components under the cargo floor behind a trim panel that warm up during operation. To reduce the risk of the components overheating, do not store objects such as blankets under the cargo floor. If the components overheat, they will switch off temporarily. This will be indicated by a message that will be displayed in the instrument cluster until the temperature returns to normal.

Lead battery

Explanation of warnings:

	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is highly corrosive. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection.
	Fire, sparks, open flame, and smoking are forbidden.
	A highly explosive mixture of gases can form when charging batteries.
	Always keep children away from battery acid and the battery.
/	Always follow the instructions in the operating manual.

For the sake of the environment

Lead-acid batteries must be disposed of using methods that will not harm the environment. Do not dispose of them in household trash. They contain harmful substances, such as sulfuric acid and lead, and also recyclable raw materials. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Other battery types

Explanation of warnings:

	Fire, sparks, open flame, and smoking are forbidden.
	Always keep children away from battery acid and the battery.
/	Always follow the instructions in the operating manual.

WARNING

All work on the batteries must **only** be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

– Gases that escape from these different battery types can be poisonous or flammable.
– The contents of these battery types can be corrosive. If any battery contents come into contact with the skin, flush the affected area for at least 15 minutes with clean water. Then wash the affected area with soap. Have the affected area examined by a medical professional.

Note

Components must not be connected to the battery terminals and wires on these battery types because this increases the risk of damage, for example due to overvoltage.

For the sake of the environment

These types of batteries must be disposed of using methods that will not harm the environment. Do not dispose of them in household trash. They contain harmful substances and recyclable raw materials. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Charging the battery

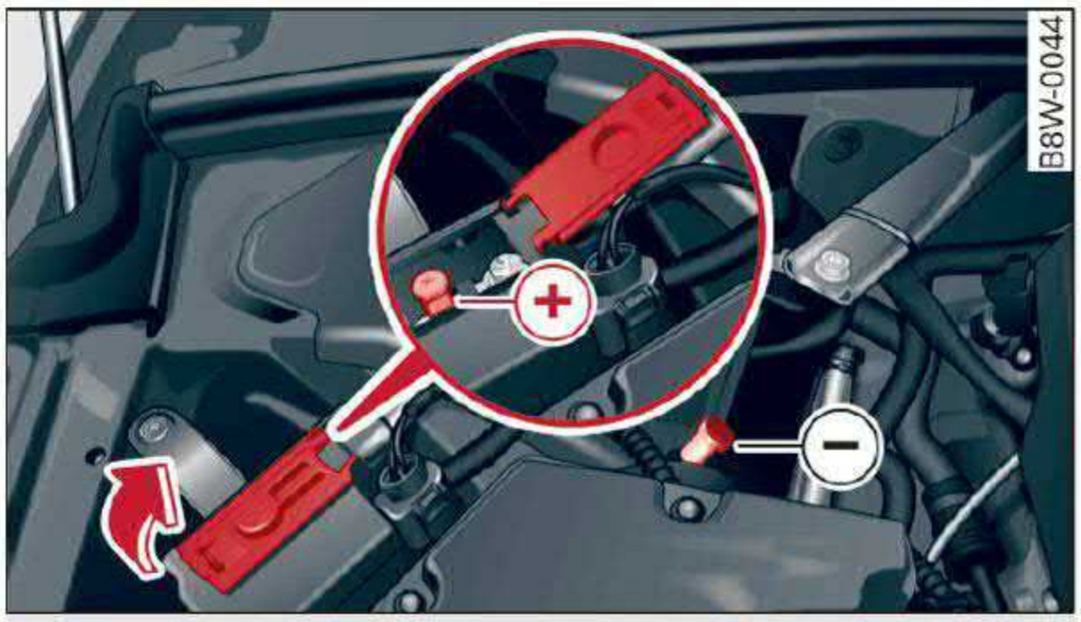


Fig. 166 Engine compartment: connectors for a charger or jump start cables

Note the safety precautions ⇨ *page 214, General information*, ⇨ ⚠ *in Battery general information on page 223* and ⇨ ⚠.

Requirement: only use chargers with a **maximum charging current of 14.8 volts**. The battery cables remain connected.

The battery is located in the engine compartment. The ground point ⊖ is always located on the vehicle body.

- ▸ Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- ▸ Open the hood ⇨ *page 215*.
- ▸ Press the release lever on the positive terminal and fold the cover upward ⇨ *fig. 166*.
- ▸ Clamp the charger terminal clamps to the jump start pins according to the instructions. (Pin under the cover = “positive”).
- ▸ Insert the power cable for the charging device into the socket and switch the device on.
- ▸ At the end of the charging process, switch the charger off and pull the power cable out of the socket.
- ▸ Remove the charging device terminal clamps.
- ▸ Close the cover on the positive terminal.
- ▸ Close the hood ⇨ *page 215*.

⚠ WARNING

– Never connect the charging cable directly to your vehicle battery. Only use the connections in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 225*.

– A highly explosive mixture of gases can form when charging batteries. Only charge the battery in well-ventilated areas.
– A drained battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 °F (0 °C). Do not charge or use a frozen or thawed battery. If ice forms, the battery housing can crack and battery electrolyte can leak out, which increases the risk of an explosion and chemical burns. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.
– Do not connect or disconnect the charging cable while charging because this increases the risk of an explosion.

Tips

Read all of the manufacturer's instructions for the charger before charging the battery.

Windshield washer system



Fig. 167 Engine compartment: washer fluid reservoir cap

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 214, General information*.

The windshield washer fluid reservoir contains the cleaning solution for the windshield and the headlight washer system ⇨ *fig. 167*, ⇨ *page 216*. The reservoir capacity can be found in ⇨ *page 278*.

To reduce the risk of lime scale deposits on the spray nozzles, use clean water with low amounts of calcium. Always add window cleaner to the water. When the outside temperatures are cold, an anti-freezing agent should be added to the water so that it does not freeze. ▶

Messages

Please add washer fluid

Fill the washer fluid for the windshield washer system and the headlight washer system* when the ignition is switched off.

Note

– The concentration of anti-freezing agent must be adjusted to the vehicle operating conditions and the climate. A concentration that is too high can lead to vehicle damage.
– Never add radiator anti-freeze or other additives to the washer fluid.
– Do not use a glass cleaner that contains paint solvents, because this could damage the paint.

Service interval display

The service interval display detects when your vehicle is due for service.

The service interval display works in two stages:

– **Inspection or oil change reminder:** after driving a certain distance, a message appears in the instrument cluster display each time the ignition is switched on or off. The remaining distance or time is displayed briefly.
– **Inspection or oil change due:** if your vehicle has reached an inspection or oil change interval or both intervals at the same time, the message **Inspection due!** or **Oil change due!** or **Oil change and inspection due!** will appear briefly after switching the ignition on or off.

Checking service intervals

You can check the remaining distance or time until the next oil change or next inspection in the Infotainment system.

Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Service intervals**.

Resetting the indicator

An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will reset the service interval display after performing service.

If you have changed the oil yourself, you must reset the oil change interval.

Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Service intervals** > **Reset oil change interval**.

Note

– Only reset the oil change indicator if the oil was changed.
– Following the service intervals is critical to maintaining the service life and value of your vehicle, especially the engine. Even if the mileage on the vehicle is low, do not exceed the time for the next service.

Wheels

Wheels and Tires

General information

►Check your tires regularly for damage, such as punctures, cuts, cracks, and bulges. Remove foreign objects from the tire tread.

►If driving over curbs or similar obstacles, drive slowly and approach the curb at an angle.

►Have faulty tires or rims replaced immediately.

►Protect your tires from oil, grease, and fuel.

►Mark tires before removing them so that the same running direction can be maintained if they are reinstalled.

►Lay tires flat when storing and store them in a cool, dry location with as little exposure to light as possible.

WARNING

–Never drive faster than the maximum permitted speed for your tires. This could cause the tires to heat up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst.

–Always adapt your driving to the road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tires can lose traction on black ice.

Note

–Please note that summer and winter tires are designed for the conditions that are typical in those seasons. Audi recommends using winter tires during the winter months. Low temperatures significantly decrease the elasticity of summer tires, which affects traction and braking ability. If summer tires are used in very cold temperatures, cracks can form on the tread bars, resulting in permanent tire damage that can cause loud driving noise and unbalanced tires.

–Burnished, polished or chromed rims must not be used in winter driving conditions. The surface of the rims does not have sufficient corrosion protection for this and could be permanently damaged by road salt or similar substances.

8W1012721BB

Tire designations

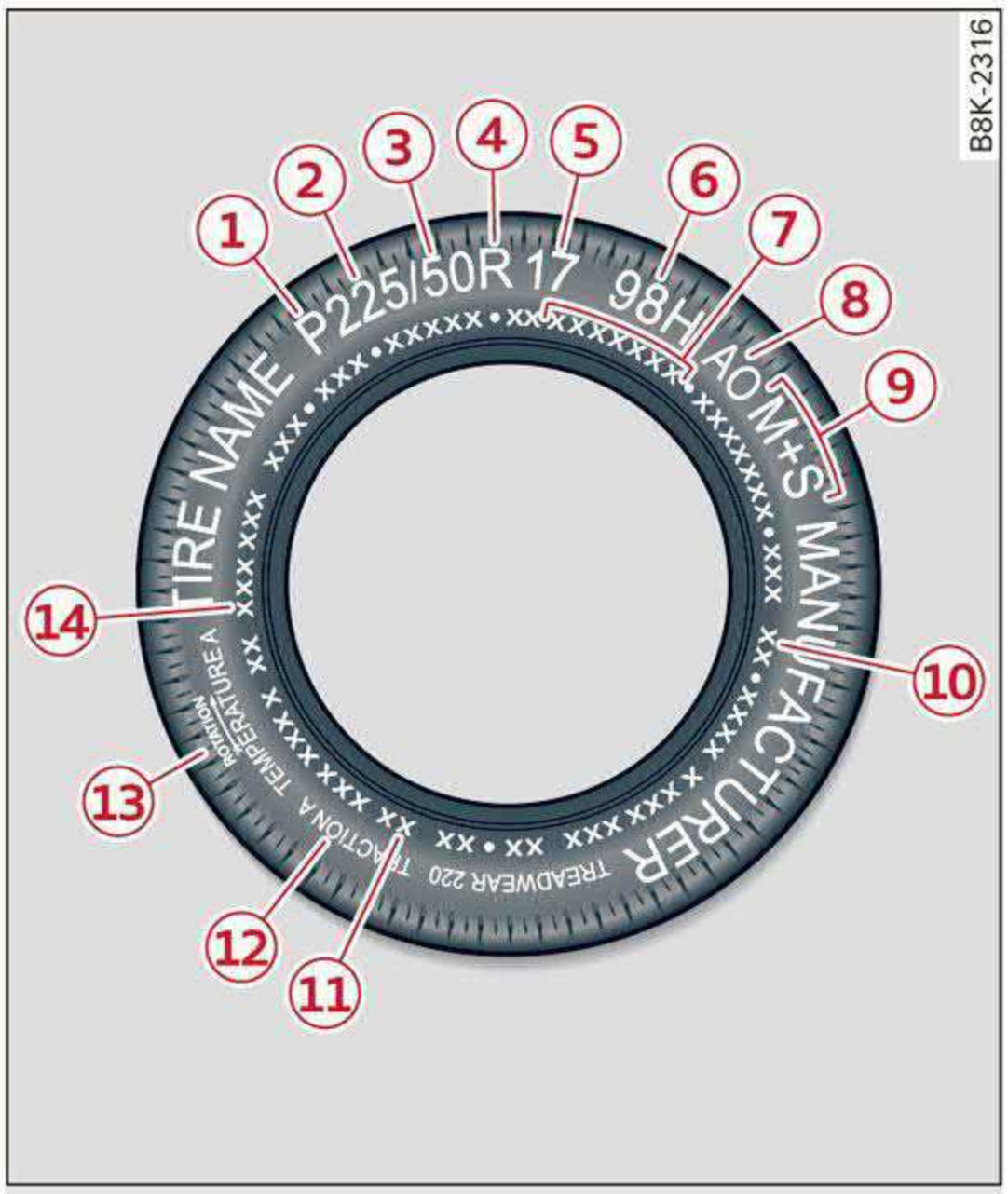


Fig. 168 Tire designations on the sidewall

① Tires for passenger vehicles (if applicable)

"P" indicates a tire for a passenger vehicle. "T" indicates a tire designated for temporary use.

② Nominal width

Nominal width of the tire between the sidewalls in millimeters. In general: the larger the number, the wider the tire.

③ Aspect ratio

Height/width ratio expressed as a percentage.

④ Tire construction

"R" indicates a radial tire.

⑤ Rim diameter

Size of the rim diameter in inches.

⑥ Load index and speed rating

The load index indicates the tire's load-carrying capacity.

The speed rating indicates the maximum permitted speed. Also see ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 227*.

"EXTRA LOAD", "xl" or "RF" indicates that the tire is reinforced or is an Extra Load tire.

Speed rating	Maximum permitted speed
P	up to 93 mph (150 km/h)
Q	up to 99 mph (160 km/h)
R	up to 106 mph (170 km/h)
S	up to 110 mph (180 km/h)
T	up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
U	up to 124 mph (200 km/h)
H	up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
V	up to 149 mph (240 km/h)[a)]
Z	above 149 mph (240 km/h)[a)]
W	up to 168 mph (270 km/h)[a)]
Y	up to 186 mph (300 km/h)[a)]

a) For tires above 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the code "ZR". ▶

⑦ US DOT number (TIN) and manufacture date

The manufacture date is listed on the tire sidewall (it may only appear on the inner side of the tire):

DOT ... 2219 ...

means, for example, that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of the year 2019.

⑧ Audi Original Tires

Audi Original equipment tires with the designation “AO” have been specially matched to your Audi. When used correctly, these tires meet the highest standards for safety and handling. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will be able to provide you with more information.

⑨ Mud and snow capability

“M/S” or “M+S” indicates the tire is suitable for driving on mud and snow. ❄ indicates a winter tire.

⑩ Composition of the tire cord and materials

The number of plies indicates the number of rubberized fabric layers in the tire. In general: the more layers, the more weight a tire can carry. Tire manufacturers must also specify the materials used in the tire. These include steel, nylon, polyester and other materials.

⑪ Maximum permitted load

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that the tire can carry.

⑫ Uniform tire quality grade standards for treadwear, traction and temperature resistance

Treadwear, traction, and temperature ranges ⇨ *page 243*.

⑬ Running direction

The arrows indicate the running direction of unidirectional tires. You must always follow the specified running direction ⇨ *page 258*.

⑭ Maximum permitted inflation pressure

This number indicates the maximum pressure to which a tire can be inflated under normal operating conditions.

8W1012721BB

Glossary of tire and loading terminology

Accessory weight

means the combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

Aspect ratio

means the ratio of the height to the width of the tire in percent. Numbers of 55 or lower indicate a low sidewall for improved steering response and better overall handling on dry pavement.

Bead

means the part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim.

Bead separation

means a breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

Cord

means the strands forming the plies in the tire.

Cold tire inflation pressure

means the tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a designated size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the three hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

Curb weight

means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioning and additional weight of optional equipment.

Extra load tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Extra load tires may be identified as “XL”, “xl”, “EXTRA LOAD”, or “RF” on the sidewall. ▶

Gross Axle Weight Rating ("GAWR")

means the load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured at the tire-ground interfaces.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ("GVWR")

means the maximum total loaded weight of the vehicle.

Groove

means the space between two adjacent tread ribs.

Load rating (code)

means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

Maximum load rating

means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum loaded vehicle weight

means the sum of:

(a) Curb weight
(b) Accessory weight
(c) Vehicle capacity weight, and
(d) Production options weight

Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure

means the maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called "maximum inflation pressure."

Normal occupant weight

means 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

Occupant distribution

means distribution of occupants in a vehicle.

Outer diameter

means the overall diameter of an inflated new tire.

Overall width

means the linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs.

Ply

means a layer of rubber-coated parallel cords. ▶

8W10127218B

Production options weight

means the combined weight of those installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs. (2.3 kg) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

Radial ply tire

means a pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Recommended inflation pressure

see ⇨ *page 230, Cold tire inflation pressure*.

Reinforced tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Reinforced tires may be identified as “XL”, “xl”, “EXTRA LOAD”, or “RF” on the sidewall.

Rim

means a metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Rim diameter

means nominal diameter of the bead seat. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new rim diameter.

Rim size designation

means rim diameter and width.

Rim width

means nominal distance between rim flanges.

Sidewall

means that portion of a tire between the tread and bead.

Speed rating (letter code)

means the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph (150 km/h) to 186 mph (298 km/h) ⇨ *table on page 228*. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall and indicates the ▶

maximum permissible road speeds. See also ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 227*.

Tire pressure monitoring system

means a system that detects when one or more of a vehicle's tires are underinflated and illuminates a low tire pressure warning telltale.

Tread

means that portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Tread separation

means pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass.

Treadwear indicators (TWI)

means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread. See ⇨ *page 236, Treadwear indicator* for more information on measuring tire wear.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

is a tire information system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers make relative comparisons among tires. The UTQG is not a safety rating and not a guarantee that a tire will last for a prescribed number of miles (kilometers) or perform in a certain way. It simply gives tire buyers additional information to combine with other considerations, such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturers in three areas: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. The UTQG information on the tires, molded into the sidewalls.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

This is the tire's "serial number". It begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example,

DOT ... 2219 ...

means that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of 2019. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used ▶

8W1012721BB

by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Vehicle capacity weight

means the rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity.

Vehicle maximum load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight and dividing by two.

Vehicle normal load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with ⇨ *table on page 239*) and dividing by two.

Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Refer to the tire inflation pressure label ⇨ *page 237, fig. 171* for the number of seating positions. Refer to the table ⇨ *table on page 239* for the number of people that correspond to the vehicle normal load.

New tires or wheels

Audi recommends having all work on tires or wheels performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. These facilities have the proper knowledge and are equipped with the required tools and replacement parts.

- ►New tires do not yet have the optimal gripping properties. Drive carefully and at moderate speeds for the first 350 miles (500 km) with new tires.
- ►Only use tires with the same design, size (rolling circumference), and as close to the same tread pattern as possible on all four wheels.
- ►Do not replace tires individually. At least replace both tires on the same axle at the same time.
- ►Audi recommends that you use Audi Original Tires. If you would like to use different tires, please note that the tires may perform ►

differently even if they are the same size ⇨ ⚠.

► If you would like to equip your vehicle with a tire and rim combination that is different from what was installed at the factory, consult with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before making a purchase ⇨ ⚠.

Because the spare tire* is different from the regular tires installed on the vehicle (such as winter tires or wide tires), only use the spare tire* temporarily in case of emergency and drive carefully while it is in use. It should be replaced with a regular tire as soon as possible.

Applies to: vehicles with all wheel drive: All four wheels must be equipped with tires that are the same brand and have the same construction and tread pattern so that the drive system is not damaged by different wheel speeds. For this reason, in case of emergency, only use a spare tire* that is the same circumference as the regular tires.

⚠ WARNING

– Do not use steel rims that are 17 inches or larger. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
– Only use tire/rim combinations and suitable wheel bolts that have been approved by Audi. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
– For technical reasons, it is not possible to use tires from other vehicles. In some cases, you cannot even use tires from the same vehicle model.
– Make sure that the tires you select have enough clearance to the vehicle. Replacement tires should not be chosen simply based on the nominal size, because tires with a different construction can differ greatly even if they are the same size. If there is not enough clearance, the tires or the vehicle can be damaged and this can reduce driving safety and increase the risk of an accident. ▶

8W1012721BB

– Only use tires that are more than six years old when absolutely necessary and drive carefully when doing so.
– Do not use run-flat tires on your vehicle. Using them when not permitted can lead to vehicle damage or accidents.
– If you install wheel covers on the vehicle, make sure they allow enough air circulation to cool the brake system. If they do not, this could increase the risk of an accident.

Tire wear and damage



Fig. 169 Tire profile: treadwear indicator

Tire wear

Check the tires regularly for wear.

– Inflation pressure that is too low or high can increase tire wear considerably.
– Driving quickly through curves, rapid acceleration, and heavy braking increase tire wear.
– Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check the wheel alignment if there is unusual wear.
– Have the wheels rebalanced if an imbalance is causing noticeable vibration in the steering wheel. If you do not, the tires and other vehicle components could wear more quickly.

Treadwear indicator

Original equipment tires contain treadwear indicators in the tread pattern, which are bars that are 1/16 in (1.6 mm) high and are spaced evenly around the tire perpendicular to the running direction ⇨ *fig. 169*. The letters “TWI” or triangles on the tire sidewall indicate the location of the treadwear indicators.

The tires have reached the minimum tread depth [1)] when they ▶

[1)] Obey any applicable regulations in the country where the vehicle is being operated.

have worn down to the treadwear indicators. Replace the tires with new ones ⇨ ⚠.

Tire rotation

Rotating the tires regularly is recommended to ensure the tires wear evenly. To rotate the tires, install the tires from the rear axle on the front axle and vice versa. This will allow the tires to have approximately the same length of service life.

For unidirectional tires, make sure the tires are installed according to the running direction indicated on the tire sidewall ⇨ *page 258*.

Hidden damage

Damage to tires and rims can often occur in locations that are hidden. Unusual vibrations in the vehicle or pulling to one side may indicate that there is tire damage. Reduce your speed immediately. Check the tires for damage. If no damage is visible from the outside, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the vehicle inspected.

⚠ WARNING

Tread that has worn too low or uneven tread depths on the tires can reduce driving safety. This can increase the risk of an accident because it has a negative effect on handling, driving through curves, and braking, and because it increases the risk of hydroplaning when driving through deep puddles.

Tire pressure



Fig. 170 Driver's side B-pillar: tire pressure label

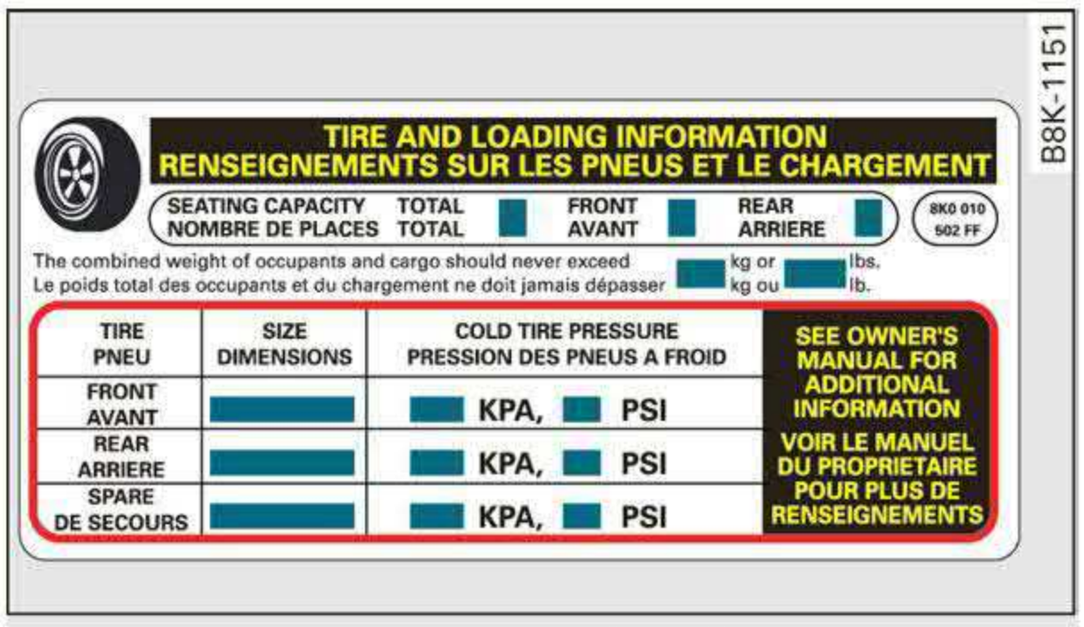


Fig. 171 Tire pressure label

The correct tire pressure for tires installed at the factory is listed on a label. The label is located on the ▶

B-pillar (driver's side) ⇨ *fig. 170*, ⇨ *fig. 171*. The location may vary depending on the model.

Use the tire pressure specified for a normal vehicle load when the vehicle is partially loaded ⇨ *table on page 239*. If driving the vehicle when fully loaded, you must increase the tire pressure to the maximum specified pressure ⇨ ⚠.

Checking and correcting tire pressure

- ►Check the tire pressure at least once per month and also check it before every long drive.
- ►Always check the tire pressure when the tires are *cold*. Do not reduce the pressure if it increases when the tires are warm.
- ►Refer to the sticker ⇨ *fig. 171* for the correct tire pressure.
- ►Correct the tire pressure if necessary.
- ►Save the changed tire pressure ⇨ *page 246*.
- ►Check the pressure in the spare tire (compact spare tire)*. Always maintain the maximum temperature that is specified for the tire.

⚠ WARNING

Always adapt the tire pressure to your driving style and the vehicle load.

–Overloading can lead to loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of an accident. Read and follow the important safety precautions in ⇨ *page 240*.

–The tire must flex more if the tire pressure is too low or if the vehicle speed or load are too high. This heats the tire up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst and result in loss of vehicle control.

–Incorrect tire pressure increases tire wear and has a negative effect on driving and braking behavior, which increases the risk of an accident.

! Note

Replace lost valve caps to reduce the risk of damage to the tire valves.

For the sake of the environment

Tire pressure that is too low increases fuel consumption.

Tire pressure table

Please note that the information contained in the following table was correct at the time of printing, and the information is subject to change. If there are any differences, you should always follow the tire pressure sticker ⇨ *page 237, fig. 170*.

Make sure that the tire designation on your tire matches the designation on the tire pressure label and the tire pressure table.

The following table lists recommended tire pressures in cold tires according to the load and the size of the tires installed.

Model/ Engine	Tire designation	Tire pressure							
		Normal load (up to 3 people)[a]				Maximum load			
		Front		Rear		Front		Rear	
		PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA
A4 sedan: 2.0L 4-cylinder (190 hp)	225/50 R17 94Y	30	210	28	190	32	220	32	220
	245/40 R18 93Y	30	210	28	190	32	220	32	220
	225/50 R17 94H	30	210	28	190	33	230	33	230
	245/40 R18 97H	35	240	32	220	35	240	35	240
	245/35 R19 93Y	35	240	32	220	36	250	39	270
A4 sedan: 2.0L 4-cylinder (252 hp)	225/50 R17 94Y	30	210	28	190	33	230	33	230
	245/40 R18 93Y	30	210	28	190	33	230	33	230
	225/50 R17 94H	30	210	28	190	35	240	35	240
	245/40 R18 97H	35	240	32	220	36	250	36	250
	245/35 R19 93Y	36	250	33	230	41	280	44	300
S4 sedan: 3.0L 6-cylinder	245/40 R18 97H	35	240	32	220	38	260	38	260
	245/40 R18 97Y	36	250	33	230	39	270	39	270
	255/35 R19 96Y	39	270	35	250	44	300	45	310
A4 allroad: 2.0L 4-cylinder	225/55 R17 97Y	32	220	29	200	33	230	30	210
	245/45 R18 96Y	32	220	29	200	35	240	32	220
	245/45 R18 100H	32	220	32	220	35	240	35	240
	245/40 R19 98Y	35	240	32	220	38	260	35	240

a) Two people in the front, one person in the rear

WARNING

Please note the important safety precautions regarding tire pressure ⇨ *page 237* and load limits ⇨ *page 240*.

8W1012721BB

Tires and vehicle load limits

There are limits to the amount of load or weight that any vehicle and any tire can carry. A vehicle that is overloaded will not handle well and is more difficult to stop. Overloading can not only lead to loss of vehicle control, but can also damage important parts of the vehicle and can lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation that can cause the vehicle to crash.

Your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** ("GVWR").

The "GVWR" includes the weight of the basic vehicle, all factory installed accessories, a full tank of fuel, oil, coolant and other fluids plus maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of passengers that the vehicle is intended to carry ("seating capacity") with an assumed weight of 150 lbs. (68 kg) for each passenger at a designated seating position and the total weight of any luggage in the vehicle. If you tow a trailer, the weight of the trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer must be included as part of the vehicle load.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles.

The fact that there is an upper limit to your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating means that the total weight of whatever is being carried in the vehicle (including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer) is limited. The more passengers in the vehicle or passengers who are heavier than the standard weights assumed mean that less weight can be carried as luggage.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker on the driver's side B-pillar respectively on the front end of the driver's door. ▶

WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

–Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.

–The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance.

–Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of control and a crash.

–Always make sure that the total load being transported – including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of a loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

Determining correct load limit

Use the example below to calculate the total weight of the passengers and luggage or other things that you plan to transport so that you can make sure that your vehicle will not be overloaded.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS" on your vehicle's placard (tire inflation pressure label) ⇨ *page 237, fig. 171*.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from "XXX" kilograms or "XXX" pounds shown on the sticker ⇨ *page 237, fig. 171*.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will ▶

8W1012721BB

be five 150 lbs. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

► Check the tire sidewall (⇨ *page 228, fig. 168*) to determine the designated load rating for a specific tire.

Wheel bolts and rims

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must be clean and loosen/tighten easily.

Rims

Rims with a bolted rim ring* or with bolted wheel covers* consist of multiple pieces. These components were bolted together using special bolts and a special procedure. You must not repair or disassemble them ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

Wheel bolts that are tightened or repaired incorrectly can become loose and result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident. For the correct tightening specification, see ⇨ *page 258, Finishing*.

– Always keep the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hub clean and free of grease.
– Only use wheel bolts that fit the rim.
– Always have damaged rims repaired by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Never repair or disassemble rims yourself, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Winter tires

Winter tires significantly improve the vehicle's handling when driving in winter conditions. Because of their construction (width, compound, tread pattern), summer tires provide less traction on ice and snow.

► Use winter tires on all four wheels.
► Only use winter tires that are approved for your vehicle.
► Please note that the maximum permitted speed may be lower with winter tires ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 227*. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can inform you about the maximum permitted speed for your tires.
► Check the tire pressure after installing wheels ⇨ *page 237*.

The effectiveness of winter tires is reduced greatly when the tread is worn down to a depth of 0.16 in (4 mm). The characteristics of winter tires also decrease greatly as the tire ages, regardless of the remaining tread.

For the sake of the environment

Reinstall summer tires at the appropriate time, because they provide better handling when roads are free of snow and ice. Summer tires cause less road noise, tire wear, and fuel consumption. ▶

Tips

You can also use all season tires instead of winter tires. Please note that in some countries where winter tires are required, only winter tires with the ❄ symbol may be permitted.

Snow chains

Snow chains improve both driving and braking in winter road conditions.

- Only install snow chains on the front wheels.
- Check and correct the seating of the snow chains after driving a few feet, if necessary. Follow the instructions from the manufacturer.
- Note the maximum speed of 30 mph (50 km/h). Observe the local regulations.

Use of snow chains is only permitted with certain rim/tire combinations due to technical reasons. Check with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to see if you may use snow chains.

Use **fine-mesh snow chains**. They must not add more than 0.53 in (13.5 mm) in height, including the chain lock.

You must remove the snow chains on roads without snow. Otherwise, you could impair driving ability and damage the tires.

WARNING

Using incorrect snow chains or installing snow chains incorrectly can result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Snow chains can damage the rims and wheel covers* if the chains come into direct contact with them. Remove the wheel covers* first. Use coated snow chains.

Tips

When using snow chains, it may be advisable to limit the ESC ⇨ *page 110*.

Low-profile tires

Applies to: vehicles with low-profile tires

Compared to other tire/rim combinations, low-profile tires offer a wider tread surface and a larger rim diameter with shorter tire sidewalls. This results in an agile driving style. However, it may reduce the level of comfort and increase road noise when driving on roads in poor condition.

Low-profile tires can become damaged more quickly than standard tires when driving over large bumps, potholes, manhole covers, and curbs. Therefore, it is particularly important to maintain the correct tire pressure ⇨ *page 237*.

To reduce the risk of damage to the tires and rims, drive very carefully on poor roads.

Check your wheels regularly every 2,000 mi (3,000 km) for damage. For example, check for bulges/cracks on the tires or deformations/cracks on the rims.

After a heavy impact or damage, have the tires and rims inspected or replaced immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Low-profile tires can wear out faster than standard tires.

Uniform tire quality grading

– Tread wear
– Traction AA A B C
– Temperature A B C

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire side wall between tread shoulder and maximum section width ⇨ *page 228, fig. 168*.

For example: Tread wear **200**, Traction **AA**, Temperature **A**.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Tread wear

The *tread wear* grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested ▶

8W1012721BB

under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The *traction* grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance ⇨ ⚠.

Temperature

The *temperature* grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure ⇨ ⚠.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

⚠ WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

⚠ WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

⚠ WARNING

Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over or underinflated.

Tire pressure monitoring system

(!) General notes

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. ▶

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

If the tire pressure monitoring indicator appears

Applies to: vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator

The tire pressure indicator in the instrument cluster informs you if the tire pressure is too low or if there is a system malfunction.

Using the ABS sensors, the tire pressure monitoring system compares the tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics of the individual tires. If the pressure changes in one or more tires, this is indicated in the instrument cluster display with an indicator light and a message. If only one tire is affected, the location of that tire will be indicated.

The tire pressures must be stored again each time you change the pressures (switching between partial and full load pressure) or after changing or replacing a tire on your vehicle ⇨ *page 246*. The tire pressure monitoring system only monitors the tire pressure you have stored. Refer to the tire pressure label for the recommended tire pressure for your vehicle ⇨ *page 237, fig. 171*.

Tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics can change and cause a tire pressure warning if:

– The tire pressure in one or more tires is too low
– The tires have structural damage
– The tire was replaced or the tire pressure was changed and it was not stored ⇨ *page 246*
– Tires that are only partially used are replaced with new tires

Indicator lights

If the indicator light turns on, there is a loss of pressure in at least one tire .⇨ ⚠ Check the tires and replace or repair if necessary. Check and correct the pressures of all four tires and store the pressure again ⇨ *page 246*.

TPMS Tire pressure: malfunction! See owner's manual

If TPMS appears after switching the ignition on or while driving and the indicator light in the instrument cluster blinks for approximately one minute and then stays on, there is system malfunction. Try to store the correct tire pressures ⇨ *page 246*. In some cases, you must drive for several minutes after storing the pressures until the indicator light turns off. If the indicator light does turn off or turns on again after a short period of time, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

⚠ WARNING

– If the tire pressure indicator appears in the display, reduce your speed immediately and avoid any hard steering or braking maneuvers. Stop as soon as possible and check the tires and their pressure.
– The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct tire pressure. You must check the tire pressure regularly.
– Under certain conditions (such as a sporty driving style, winter conditions, or unpaved roads), the tire pressure monitoring system indicator may be delayed. ▶

8W1012721BB

Tips

– The tire pressure monitoring system can also stop working when there is an ESC malfunction.
– Using snow chains may result in a system malfunction.
– The tire pressure monitoring system in your Audi was calibrated with “Audi Original Tires” ⇨ *page 234*. Using these tires is recommended.

Storing tire pressures

Applies to: vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator

If the tire pressure changes or a tire is replaced, it must be confirmed in the system.

- Before storing the tire pressures, make sure the tire pressures in all four tires meet the specified values and are adapted to the load ⇨ *page 237*.
- Switch the ignition on.
- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Tire pressure monitoring** > **Store tire pressure** > **Yes, store now**.

Tips

Do not store the tire pressures if snow chains are installed.

Care and cleaning

General information

Regular, proper care helps to maintain your vehicle's value. It can also be a requirement when submitting warranty claims for corrosion damage and paint defects on the body.

The required cleaning and care products can be obtained from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Service Facility. Read and follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

WARNING

- Using cleaning and care products incorrectly can be dangerous to your health.
- Always store cleaning and care products out of reach of children to reduce the risk of poisoning.

For the sake of the environment

- Purchase environmentally-friendly cleaning products if possible.
- Do not dispose of cleaning and care products with household trash.

Car washes

The longer that deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap or road salt remain on the vehicle, the more the surface can be damaged. High temperatures such as those caused by sunlight increase the damaging effect.

Before washing, rinse off heavy deposits with plenty of water.

Stubborn deposits such as bird droppings or tree sap are best removed with plenty of water and a microfiber cloth.

Also, wash the underside of your vehicle once road salt stops being used for the season.

Pressure washers

When washing your vehicle with a pressure washer, always follow the operating instructions provided with the pressure washer. This is especially important in regard to the pressure and spraying distance. Do not aim the spray directly at the seals on the side windows, doors, lids or the sunroof* or at tires, rubber hoses, insulating material, sensors* or camera lenses*. Keep a distance of at least 16 in (40 cm).

Do not remove snow and ice with a pressure washer.

Never use cone nozzles or high pressure nozzles.

The water temperature must not be above 140 °F (60 °C).

Automatic car wash

Spray off the vehicle before washing.

Make sure that the windows and roof* are closed and the windshield wipers are off. Follow instructions from the car wash operator, especially if there are accessories attached to your vehicle.

If possible, use car washes that do not have brushes.

Washing by hand

Clean the vehicle starting from the top and working downward using a soft sponge or cleaning brush. Use solvent-free cleaning products.

Washing vehicles with matte finish paint by hand

To reduce the risk of damaging the paint when washing, first remove dust and large particles from your vehicle. Insects, grease spots, and fingerprints are best removed with a special cleaner for matte finish paint.

Apply the product using a microfiber cloth. To reduce the risk of damaging the paint surface, do not use too much pressure.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with water. Then clean using a neutral shampoo and a soft microfiber cloth.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly again and let it air dry. Remove any water residue using a chamois.

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of accidents, only wash the vehicle when the ignition is off and follow the instructions from the car wash operator.

– To reduce the risk of cuts, protect yourself from sharp metal components when washing the underbody or the inside of the wheel housings.
– After washing the vehicle, the braking effect may be delayed due to moisture on the brake rotors or ice in the winter. This increases the risk of an accident. The brakes must be dried with a few careful brake applications.

Note

– If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage to the mirrors. Power folding exterior mirrors* must only be folded in and out using the power folding function.
– To reduce the risk of damage to the rims and tires, compare the width between the wheels on your vehicle with the distance between the guide rails in the car wash.
– To reduce the risk of damage, compare the height and width of your vehicle with the height and width of the inside of the car wash.
– To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
– To reduce the risk of damage, do not wash decorative decals* with a pressure washer.
– To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use insect removing sponges, kitchen sponges, or similar items.
– When washing matte finish painted vehicle components:
  – To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use polishing agents or hard wax.
  – Never use protective wax. It can destroy the matte finish effect.
  – Do not place any stickers or magnetic signs on vehicle components painted with matte finish paint. The paint could be damaged when the stickers or magnets are removed.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle in facilities specially designed for that purpose. This will reduce the risk of dirty water contaminated with oil from entering the sewer system.

Cleaning and care information

When cleaning and caring for individual vehicle components, refer to the following tables. The information contained there is simply recommendations. For questions or for components that are not listed, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Also follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠.

Exterior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Windshield wiper blades	Deposits	Soft cloth with glass cleaner ⇨ *page 56*
Headlights / Tail lights	Deposits	Soft sponge with a mild soap solution[a)]
Sensors/ Camera lenses	Deposits	Sensors: soft cloth with a solvent-free cleaning solution Camera lenses: soft cloth with an alcohol-free cleaning solution
	Snow/ice	Hand brush/solvent-free de-icing spray
Wheels	Road salt	Water
	Brake dust	Acid-free special cleaning solution

Component	Situation	Solution
Exhaust tail pipes	Road salt	Water, cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary
Decorative parts/ Trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a)], a cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary
Paint	Paint damage	Repair with touch-up paint
	Spilled fuel	Rinse with water immediately
	Surface rust	Rust remover, then treat with hard wax; for questions, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Corrosion	Have it removed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Water no longer beads on the surface of clean paint	Treat with hard wax (at least twice per year)
	No shine even though paint has been protected/paint looks poor	Treat with suitable polish; then apply paint protectant if the polish that was used does not contain any protectant
	Deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap, and road salt	Dampen with water immediately and remove with a microfiber cloth
	Grease-based contaminants such as cosmetics or sunblock	Remove immediately with a mild soap solution [a)] and a soft cloth
Carbon components	Deposits	Clean the same way as painted components ⇨ *page 247*
Decorative decals	Deposits	Soft sponge with a mild soap solution[a)]

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

Interior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Window glass	Deposits	Glass cleaner, then wipe dry
Decorative parts/ Trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution[a)]
Plastic parts	Deposits	Damp cloth
	Heavier deposits	Mild soap solution [a)], detergent-free plastic cleaning solution, if necessary
Displays/instrument cluster	Deposits	Soft cloth with LCD cleaner; dust in the lower area of the instrument cluster can be removed using a soft brush.
Controls	Deposits	Soft brush, then a soft cloth with a mild soap solution[a)]
Safety belts	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a)], allow to dry before letting them retract

8W1012721BB

Component	Situation	Solution
Textiles, Artificial leather, Alcantara	Deposits adhering to the surface	Vacuum cleaner
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Absorbent cloth and mild soap solution[a)]
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Apply a mild soap solution [a)], blot away the dissolved oil or dye, treat afterward with water, if necessary
	Certain types of deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Special stain remover, blot with absorbent material, treat afterward with mild soap solution, if necessary[a)]
Natural leather	Fresh stains	Cotton cloth with a mild soap solution[a)]
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth Dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and stain remover suitable for leather Dried stains: oil cleaning spray
	Certain types of deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Spot remover suitable for leather
	Care	Regularly apply conditioning cream that protects from light and penetrates into the material. Use special colored conditioning cream, if necessary.
Carbon components	Deposits	Clean the same way as plastic components

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

WARNING

The windshield must not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Under unfavorable conditions, such as wetness, darkness, and when the sun is low, these coatings can cause increased glare, which increases the risk of an accident. They can also cause wiper blade chatter.

Note

– **Headlights and tail lights**
  – Never clean headlights or tail lights with a dry cloth or sponge.
  – Do not use any cleaning products that contain alcohol, because they could cause cracks to form.
– **Wheels**
  – Never use any paint polish or other abrasive materials.
  – Damage to the protective layer on the rims, such as stone chips or scratches, must be repaired immediately.
– **Camera lenses** ▶

- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow or ice from the camera lens. This could cause the lens to crack.
- Never use abrasive cleaning materials or alcohol to clean the camera lens. This could cause scratches and cracks.

– **Door windows**
- Remove snow and ice on windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper. To reduce the risk of scratches, move the scraper only in one direction and not back and forth.
- Never remove snow or ice from door windows and mirrors using warm or hot water because this could cause cracks to form.
- To reduce the risk of damage to the rear window defogger, do not apply any stickers on the heating wires on the inside of the window.

– **Decorative parts and trim**
- Never use chrome care or cleaning products.

– **Paint**
- To reduce the risk of scratches, the vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before polishing or waxing.
- To prevent paint damage, do not polish or wax the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not polish away rust spots.
- Remove cosmetics and sunscreen immediately because they could damage the paint.

– **Decorative decals**
- To reduce the risk of damage, do not use any rough powder or abrasive cleaning products.
- To reduce the risk of damage, do not polish decorative decals that have a matte or printed finish.
- Due to the risk of damage, do not use an ice scraper to remove snow and ice on windows with decorative decals on them.

– **Displays and instrument cluster**
- Make sure that the display and instrument cluster are switched off and have cooled down before cleaning. To switch the center display off, select on the MMI home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **MMI** > **Screen cleaning**.
- Displays, the instrument cluster, and the trim surrounding it must not be cleaned with dry cleaning methods because they could become scratched.
- Make sure no fluids enter the spaces between the instrument cluster and the trim, because that could cause damage.

– **Controls**
- Make sure that no fluids enter the controls, because this could cause damage.

– **Safety belts**
- Do not remove the safety belts to clean them.
- Never clean safety belts or their components with chemicals or with corrosive fluids or solvents and never allow sharp objects to come into contact with the safety belts. This could cause damage to the belt webbing.
- If there is damage to the webbing, the connections, the retractors, or the buckles, have them replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

– **Textiles, artificial leather, and Alcantara**
- Never treat artificial leather or Alcantara with leather care products, solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remover, or similar products.
- Have a cleaning specialist remove stubborn stains to reduce the risk of damage.
- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
- Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
- Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
- Open hook and loop fasteners, for example on clothing, can damage seat covers. Make sure hook and loop fasteners are closed.

– **Natural leather** ▶

– Never treat leather with solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remover or similar products.
– Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
– Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
– Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
– To help prevent the leather from fading, do not leave the vehicle in direct sunlight for long periods of time. If leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, you should cover the leather to protect it from direct sunlight.

Tips

– Insects are easier to remove from paint that has been freshly waxed.
– Regular waxing can prevent rust spots from forming.
– Decorative decals can age due to environmental conditions, which can result in damage such as brittleness. The color may fade if exposed to excessive sunlight.

Taking your vehicle out of service

If you would like to take your vehicle out of service for a long period of time, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. They will advise you of important measures, such as corrosion protection, service, and storage procedures. Also follow the information about the vehicle battery ⇨ *page 223*.

Emergency assistance

General information

- Park the vehicle as far as possible from moving traffic in the event of a breakdown. In the event of a flat tire, park the vehicle on a level surface. If you are on a steep hill, be especially careful.
- Set the parking brake.
- Switch the emergency flashers on.
- Have the passengers exit the vehicle. They should move to a safe place, for example behind a guard rail.

WARNING

Follow the steps given above. This is for your protection and the for the safety of others on the road.

Equipment

Vehicle tool kit, tire mobility kit, and vehicle jack

Applies to: vehicles with the vehicle tool kit, tire mobility kit, and vehicle jack



Fig. 172 Luggage compartment: cargo floor cover

The vehicle tool kit, vehicle jack, tire mobility kit and compressor are stored in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover.

- Applies to: sedan: To open the front compartment, lift the cargo floor cover by the strap (1).
- Applies to: allroad: To open the front compartment, pull the cargo floor cover by the plastic handle (2) slightly toward the rear. Lift the cargo floor cover over the front compartment.
- To open the rear compartment, lift the cargo floor cover by the plastic handle (2).
- Applies to: sedan: Hook the plastic handle (2) into the luggage compartment seal.
- To remove the cargo floor cover completely, pull it toward the rear at the plastic handle (2).
- Applies to: vehicles with spare tire: Turn the handle counter-clockwise and remove the spare tire.
- Applies to: sedan: Unhook the cargo floor cover again before closing the luggage compartment lid.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the vehicle tool kit, tire mobility kit, and compressor may be located under another cover that is secured with a handwheel.

Applies to: vehicles with vehicle jack in the storage bag: The bag with the vehicle jack is secured to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment and must be secured to the tie-downs again after using it.

WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with vehicle jack in the storage bag

A vehicle jack that is unsecured, incorrectly secured, or not secured in the luggage compartment may slide out of place when braking, turning, or in an accident, which increases the risk of injuries to vehicle passengers. To reduce the risk of an accident, never transport the vehicle jack without securing it.

Tips

- In some vehicles, the rear compartment may not open.
- The vehicle jack in your vehicle is maintenance-free.

Tire mobility kit

Preparation

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

- Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ *page 253*.
- Set the parking brake.
- Select the “P” position.
- Check if a repair with the tire mobility kit is possible ⇨ *page 254*.

8W1012721BB

Using the tire mobility kit

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit



Fig. 173 Tire: tire damage that cannot be repaired

The tire repair is only meant for temporary use. Change the damaged tire as soon as possible ⇨ ⚠.

If the tire is pierced by an object such as a nail, do not remove the object from the tire.

The tire mobility kit can be used at temperatures as low as -4 °F (-20 °C).

The tire mobility kit must not be used:

– If the tire has cuts or punctures that are larger than 0.16 in (4 mm) (1) ⇨ *fig. 173*
– If the rim is damaged (2)
– If you have driven with very low tire pressure or without air in the tire (3)

See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance in these situations.

WARNING

– Please note that the tire mobility kit cannot be used in all situations, and that it may only be used temporarily.
– The tire sealant must not come in contact with skin, eyes, or clothing.
– If tire sealant comes into contact with your eyes or your skin, thoroughly rinse the affected area immediately with clean water.
– Do not inhale the fumes.
– If you swallow any of the tire sealant, thoroughly rinse your mouth immediately and drink a lot of water. Do not induce vomiting. Seek medical attention immediately.
– Change your clothing immediately if it comes into contact with tire sealant.
– If an allergic reaction occurs, seek medical attention immediately.
– Keep the tire sealant away from children.

Tips

– If sealant leaks, allow it to dry in place. You can then peel it off like a sticker.
– Note the expiration date on the sealant bottle. Replace the tire sealant at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Radio reception can be interrupted when operating the compressor.
– Follow the legal regulations that are applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle.

Repairing tires

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

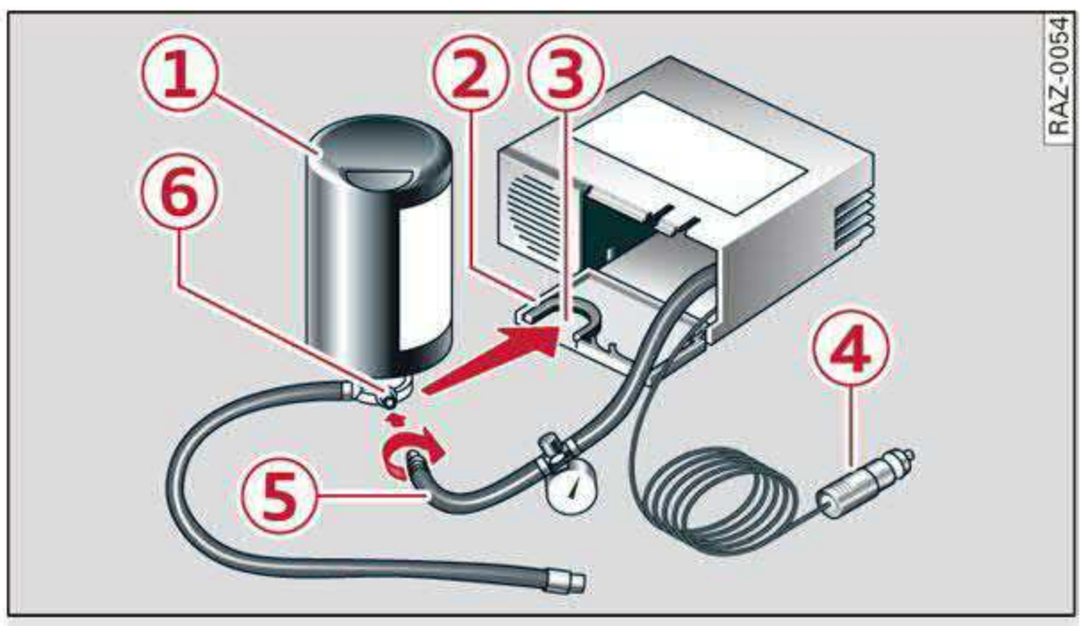


Fig. 174 Components of the tire mobility kit

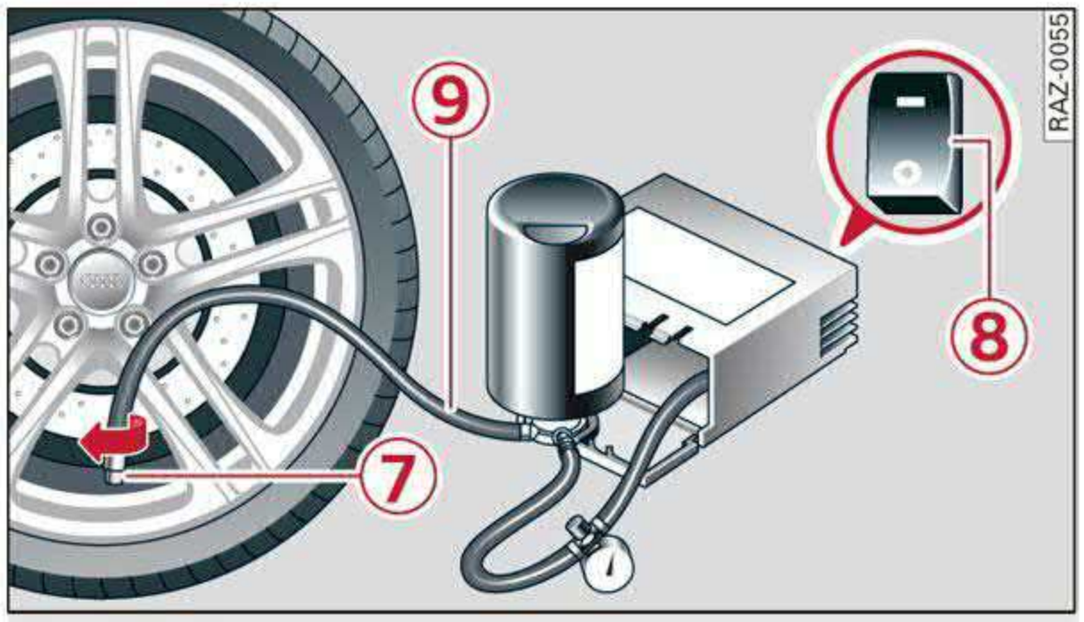


Fig. 175 Tire mobility kit connection

Requirement: the tire mobility kit must be laid out and ready for use ⇨ *page 253*. ▶

Setting up the tire mobility kit

- ▸ Open the cover ② on the compressor[1] ⇨ *fig. 174*.
- ▸ Remove the connector ④ and pressure hose ⑤ with pressure gauge from the housing.
- ▸ Connect the compressor pressure hose ⑤ to the flange ⑥ on the tire sealant bottle ①.
- ▸ Insert the sealant bottle with the flange at the bottom into the opening ③ on the compressor cover.
- ▸ Remove the valve cap from the faulty tire.
- ▸ Install the filler hose ⑨ on the valve ⑦ ⇨ *fig. 175*.
- ▸ Connect the plug ④ ⇨ *fig. 174* to an outlet in the vehicle.
- ▸ Switch the ignition on.

Inflating a tire

- ▸ Move the switch ⑧ ⇨ *fig. 175* on the compressor into position **I**.
- ▸ Inflate the tire to between 29 psi (200 kPA) and 36 psi (250 kPA) and read the pressure on the gauge.
- ▸ If this tire pressure is not reached, remove the filler hose. Drive slowly approximately 33 feet (10 m) forward or in reverse so that the sealant can be distributed in the tire. Inflate the tire again ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

– Read and follow the manufacturer's safety precautions on the compressor and in the instructions on the bottle of sealant.
– If a tire pressure of 29 psi (200 kPA) cannot reached after inflating for 6 minutes, then the tire is too severely damaged. Do not continue driving.
– If the tire cannot be repaired with the tire sealant, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tips

Do not operate the compressor for more than six minutes continuously, or it can overheat.

Once the compressor has cooled, you can continue to use it.

Completing

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

- ▸ Affix the sticker that says "max. 50 mph (max. 80 km/h)" that is provided with the tire mobility kit within the driver's field of vision.
- ▸ Stop the vehicle after driving for about 10 minutes and check the tire pressure.
- ▸ If the tire pressure is lower than 19 psi (130 kPA), then the tire is too severely damaged. Do not continue driving.

⚠ WARNING

Pay attention to the following after repairing the tire:
– Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h).
– Avoid hard acceleration or braking and driving fast around curves.
– The vehicle may become more difficult to control.
– If the tire is too severely damaged, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

For the sake of the environment

You can give the used tire sealant bottle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for disposal.

Tips

Remember to obtain a new bottle of sealant from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility after repairing a tire.

Changing a tire

Preparation

You must complete the preparation before changing a tire.

- ▸ Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ *page 253*.

1) The compressor may look different. However, the way it is operated is generally the same.

- ▸ Set the parking brake.
- ▸ Select the “P” position.
- ▸ When towing a trailer: disconnect the trailer from your vehicle.
- ▸ Lay out the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 253* and the spare tire ⇨ *page 258*.
- ▸ Switch the ignition off.

WARNING

The vehicle must also be secured to prevent it from rolling when using the vehicle jack*. Use suitable objects to block the front and back of the wheel that is diagonal from the wheel with the flat tire.

Removing the caps



Fig. 176 Wheel: wheel bolts with caps

- ▸ Slide the plastic clip from the vehicle tool kit onto the cap until it engages ⇨ *fig. 176*.
- ▸ Remove the cap with the plastic clip.

Loosening the wheel bolts



Fig. 177 Wheel: loosening the wheel bolt

- ▸ Slide the wheel wrench from the vehicle tool kit all the way onto the wheel bolt.
- ▸ Turn the wheel bolt approximately one turn to the left. To achieve the required torque, hold the end of the wheel wrench. If the wheel bolt will not loosen, press carefully on the wheel wrench with your foot. Hold onto the vehicle securely while doing this and make sure your footing is stable.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of an accident, only loosen the wheel bolts gently one turn before raising the vehicle with the vehicle jack*.

Raising the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with vehicle jack

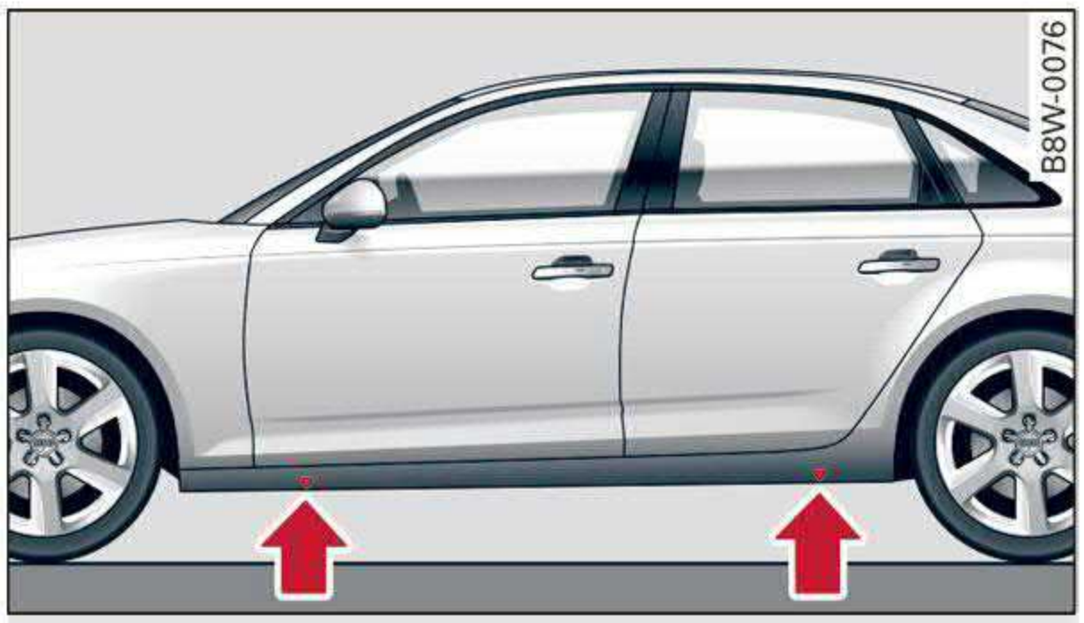


Fig. 178 Sill panels: markings

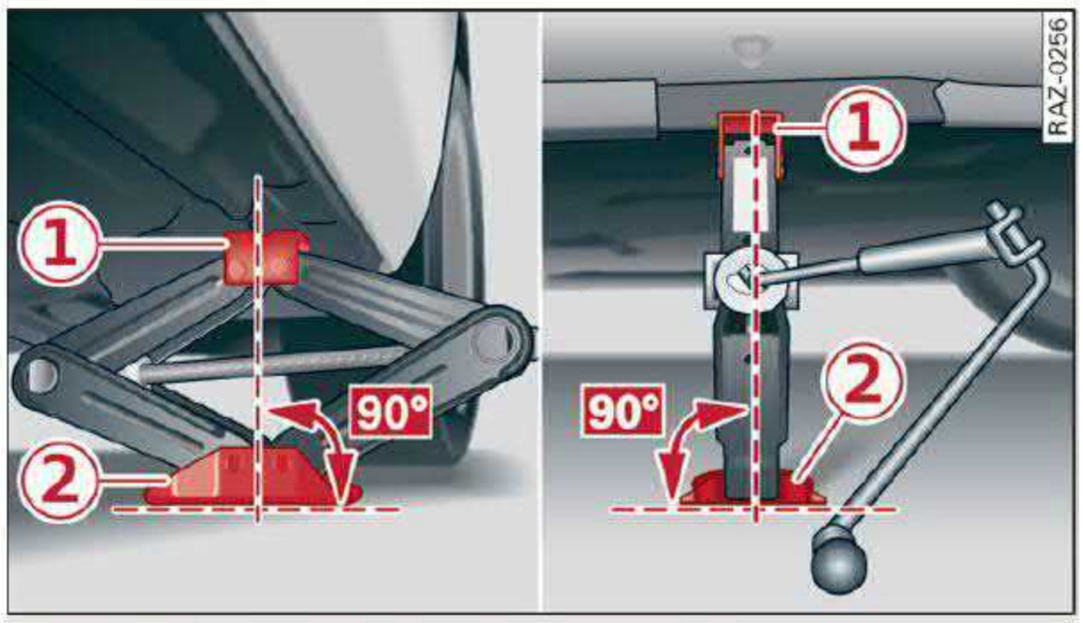


Fig. 179 Sill: positioning the vehicle jack

- ▸ Place the vehicle jack from the vehicle tool kit on a firm surface. Use a flat, stable support if necessary. On a slippery surface such as tile, you should use a non-slip pad such as a rubber mat ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Find the marking on the sill that is closest to the tire that will be changed ⇨ *fig. 178*. Behind the marking, there is a lifting point on the side sill for the vehicle jack.
- ▸ Turn the handwheel to raise the vehicle jack under the lifting point on the side sill until the ▶

bracket on the jack ① completely covers the notch on the vehicle.

- ▸ Align the vehicle jack so the bracket ① covers the notch and the base ② is flat on the ground. The base ② must be directly under the mounting point ①.
- ▸ Mount the crank on the vehicle jack: insert the crank into the opening on the handwheel. Turn the crank to the left or right to secure it.
- ▸ Continue raising the vehicle jack with the crank until the wheel lifts off the ground slightly.

⚠ WARNING

- To reduce the risk of injury, make sure no one is in the vehicle before raising it.
- Make sure the vehicle jack is stable. The risk of injury is increased when the ground is slippery or soft, because the vehicle jack could slide or sink.
- Only raise your vehicle with the vehicle jack provided by the factory. If you use a vehicle jack designed for another vehicle, your vehicle could slip and cause injury.
- Position the vehicle jack only at the designated mounting points on the side sill and align the jack. Otherwise, the vehicle jack could slip and cause an injury if it does not have sufficient hold on the vehicle.
- To reduce the risk of injury, do not raise any other vehicles or other loads using the vehicle jack provided by the factory.
- To reduce the risk of an accident, never start the engine when the vehicle is raised.
- To reduce the risk of injury, no work should be performed under the vehicle while it is raised.

! Note

Do not lift the vehicle by the sill. Position the vehicle jack only at the designated mounting points on the side sill. Otherwise, your vehicle could be damaged.

Removing and installing a wheel

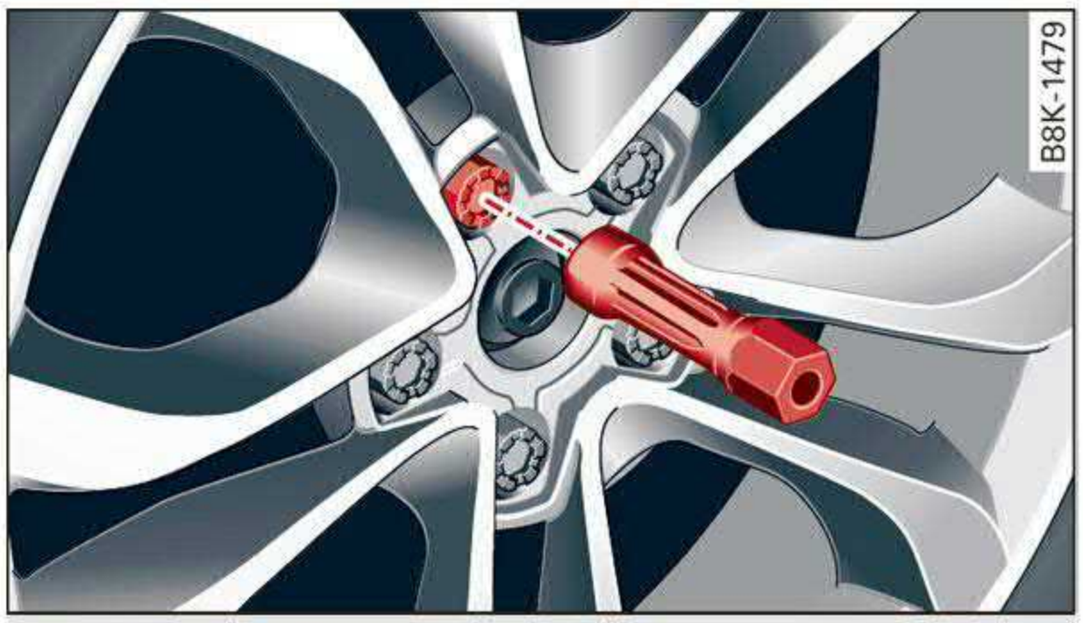


Fig. 180 Wheel: internal hex socket to turn the wheel bolts



Fig. 181 Wheel: alignment pin in the top hole

Removing a wheel

- ▸ Remove the top wheel bolt completely using the hex socket in the screwdriver handle from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *fig. 180* and place it on a clean surface.
- ▸ Then install the alignment pin from the vehicle tool kit in the empty wheel bolt hole by hand ⇨ *fig. 181*.
- ▸ Remove the rest of the wheel bolts.
- ▸ Remove the wheel ⇨ (!). The alignment pin remains in the hole while doing this.

Installing a wheel

Read the directions on ⇨ *page 258* when installing unidirectional tires.

- ▸ Slide the wheel on over the alignment pin ⇨ (!).
- ▸ Install the wheel bolts and tighten them gently using the hex socket.
- ▸ Remove the alignment pin and tighten the remaining wheel bolt.
- ▸ Carefully lower the vehicle using the vehicle jack*.
- ▸ Tighten the wheel bolts in a diagonal pattern using the wheel wrench. ▶

The wheel bolts must be clean and loosen and tighten easily. Check the contact surfaces for the wheel and hub. Contaminants on these surfaces must be removed before installing the wheel.

WARNING

– Read and follow the important information and notes under ⇨ *page 234*.
– Never use the hex socket in the screwdriver handle or the hex socket wrench with the ratchet to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts. This increases the risk of an accident, because you will not be able to achieve the correct tightening specification.

Note

When removing or installing the wheel, the rim could hit the brake rotor and damage the rotor. Work carefully and have a second person help you.

Unidirectional tires

A unidirectional tire profile is identified by arrows on the tire sidewall that point in the running direction. You must always maintain the specified running direction. This is necessary to ensure the tire's optimal performance in regard to adhesion, running noise, and friction, and to reduce the risk of hydroplaning.

To benefit fully from the advantages of the unidirectional tire design, you should replace faulty tires as soon as possible and restore the correct running direction on all of the tires.

Finishing

- ▸ Reinstall the caps on the wheel bolts if necessary.
- ▸ Store the vehicle tool kit in its designated place.
- ▸ If the removed wheel does not fit in the spare wheel well, store it securely in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 79*.
- ▸ Check the tire pressure on the installed wheel as soon as possible.
- ▸ Correct the tire pressure and store it in the MMI ⇨ *page 246*.

- ▸ The wheel bolt tightening specification must be 90 ft lbs (120 Nm). Have it checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench. Drive carefully until then.
- ▸ Have the faulty wheel replaced as quickly as possible.

Space-saving spare tire

Applies to: vehicles with space-saving spare tire (compact spare tire)

The spare tire is intended for short-term use only. Have the damaged tire checked and replaced if necessary by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible.

There are some restrictions on the use of the compact spare tire. The compact spare tire has been designed specifically for your type of vehicle. Do not replace it with the spare tire from another type of vehicle.

The compact spare tire is located in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover ⇨ *page 253*.

The tire pressure must be adjusted to a specified value listed on the tire pressure sticker ⇨ *page 237, fig. 171*.

Snow chains

For technical reasons, the use of snow chains on the compact spare tire is not permitted.

If you have to drive with snow chains and a front tire fails, mount the spare tire in place of a rear tire. Install the snow chains on the rear tire that you removed, and install that in place of the front tire that failed.

WARNING

– After installing a spare tire, the tire pressure must be checked as soon as possible.
– Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h) with a compact spare tire. Driving faster than that increases the risk of an accident.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, avoid hard acceleration or braking and driving fast around curves with the compact spare tire.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, never drive with more than one compact spare tire. ▸

– Normal summer or winter tires must not be mounted on the compact spare wheel rim.

Collapsible spare tire

Applies to: vehicles with collapsible spare tire

The collapsible spare tire is intended for short-term use only. Have the damaged tire checked and replaced if necessary by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible.

There are some restrictions on the use of the collapsible spare tire. The collapsible spare tire has been designed specifically for your type of vehicle. Do not replace it with the collapsible spare tire from another type of vehicle.

The collapsible spare tire is located in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover.

Requirement: the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 253* and the compressor must be laid out.

Removing

- ▸ Lift the cargo floor using the handle.
- ▸ Turn the handwheel counter-clockwise and remove it.
- ▸ Remove the collapsible spare tire.

You must inflate the collapsible spare tire beforehand in order to use it.

Inflating

- ▸ Remove the valve cap from the collapsible spare tire.
- ▸ Tighten the compressor hose on the collapsible spare tire valve.
- ▸ Connect the compressor hose to a vehicle socket and switch it on.
- ▸ Let the compressor run until the specified value on the tire pressure sticker is reached ⇨ *page 237, fig. 171* ⇨ (!).
- ▸ Screw the valve cap back onto the valve.

Returning to storage

- ▸ To release air, turn the valve insert. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- ▸ Turn the valve insert back once the air has been released.
- ▸ Wait several hours before placing the collapsible spare tire in the spare wheel well. Only then will it fold down completely so that you can store it securely.
- ▸ Then screw the valve cap back onto the valve.
- ▸ Secure the collapsible spare tire with the handwheel.
- ▸ Fold the cargo floor cover back into place.

Snow chains

Using snow chains on the collapsible spare tire is not permitted for technical reasons.

If you have to drive with snow chains and a front tire fails, mount the collapsible spare tire in place of a rear tire. Install the snow chains on the rear tire that you removed, and install that in place of the front tire that failed.

WARNING

– Only use the collapsible spare tire in emergencies and drive very carefully, especially if it is more than six years old.
– The compressor and the hose can become very hot during operation which increases the risk of burn injuries.
– After installing a collapsible spare tire, the tire pressure must be checked as quickly as possible to reduce the risk of an accident.
– Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h) with the collapsible spare tire. Driving faster than that increases the risk of an accident.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, avoid hard acceleration or braking and driving fast around curves with the collapsible spare tire.
– Never drive using more than one collapsible spare tire, because this increases the risk of an accident.
– Normal tires or winter tires must not be mounted on the collapsible spare tire rim.

Note

The compressor must be switched off after six minutes at the most to reduce the risk of overheating. Let the compressor cool down for several minutes before using it again.

Jump starting

Preparation

You should only perform the steps that follow if you have the necessary tools and technical expertise.

If the engine does not start because the vehicle battery is drained, you can jump start your vehicle using another vehicle. Jump start cables are needed to do this.

Both vehicle batteries must have 12 V nominal voltage. The voltage capacity (Ah) of the vehicle battery that is giving power must not be less than the capacity of the drained vehicle battery.

Jump start cable

Only use a jump start cable with a large enough diameter. Note the manufacturer's specifications.

Only use a jump start cable with insulated terminal clamps.

Positive cable - usually red.

Negative cable - usually black.

WARNING

- A drained battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 °F (0 °C). If the vehicle battery is frozen, it must be thawed before connecting the jump start cables. If it is not, the risk of an explosion and chemical burns increases. After jump starting the vehicle, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the vehicle battery checked.
- Read the warnings when working in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 214*.
- Handling the jump start cables incorrectly may cause the vehicle battery to explode and lead to serious injuries.

Note

Jump start cables can cause considerable damage to the vehicle electrical system if they are connected incorrectly.

Tips

- There must be no contact between the vehicles, or else voltage could flow when connecting the positive terminal and drain the vehicle battery of the vehicle providing the jump start.
- The drained vehicle battery must be connected correctly to the electrical system.
- Switch off electrical equipment that is not needed.

Jump starting

Both jump start cables must be connected in the correct order.



Fig. 182 Engine compartment: connectors for jump start cables or a charger

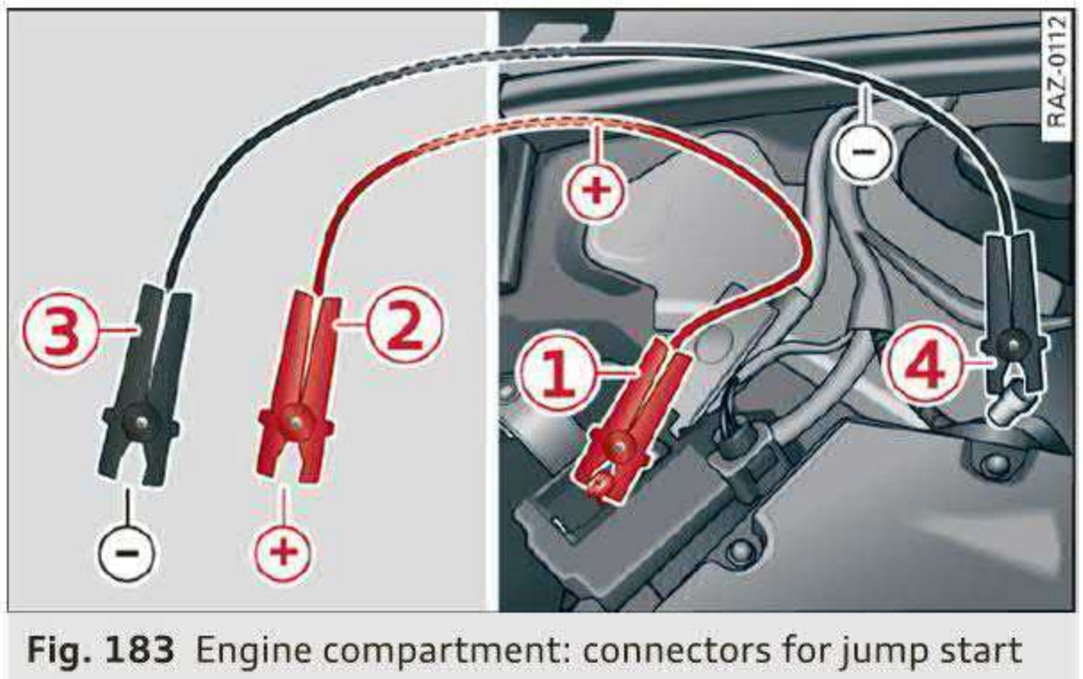


Fig. 183 Engine compartment: connectors for jump start cables or a charger

The jump start cable connections are located in the engine compartment.

Follow the information about the vehicle battery ⇨ *page 223*.

Connecting the positive cable (red) to the positive terminal

▸ Open the red cover on the positive terminal ⇨ *fig. 182*. ▶

1. Attach one end of the positive cable (red) to the jump-start pin ① ⇨ *fig. 183* on your vehicle.
2. Attach the other end of the positive cable (red) to the positive terminal ② on the power source.

Connecting the negative cable (black) to the negative terminal

3. Attach one end of the negative cable (black) to the negative terminal ③ on the power source.
4. Attach the other end of the negative cable (black) to the negative terminal ④ on the vehicle.

Starting the engine

- ▸ Start the engine in the vehicle giving the charge and let it run at idle.
- ▸ Now start the engine in your vehicle, which has the drained battery.
- ▸ If the engine does not start, stop the starting procedure after 10 seconds and then repeat it after approximately 30 seconds.
- ▸ Turn on the rear window defogger in your vehicle in order to reduce any voltage peaks that may occur when disconnecting the jump start cables. The headlights must be switched off.
- ▸ With the engines running, remove the cables in reverse order of the way they were installed.
- ▸ Close the red cover on the positive terminal.

WARNING

- Never connect the jump start cable directly to your vehicle battery. Only use the connections in the engine compartment.
- Do not touch the non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps. The cable must also not come into contact with vehicle components that conduct electricity when it is connected to the positive vehicle battery terminal. This can cause a short circuit.
- The plugs on the battery cells must not be opened.
- Keep ignition sources (such as open flames, burning cigarettes, etc.) away from the vehicle batteries to reduce the risk of an explosion.
- Route the jump start cables so they cannot get caught in the moving parts in the other vehicle's engine compartment.

Note

Please note that the connecting process previously described for the jump start cables is intended for when your vehicle is being jump started.

Tips

Make sure that the connected jump start cables have sufficient contact with metal.

Towing

General information

You should only perform the steps that follow if you have the necessary tools and technical expertise.

Towing requires a certain amount of practice. Audi recommends contacting a towing company to have the vehicle transported.

You should only have your vehicle towed by another vehicle when disabled in exceptional circumstances. Inexperienced drivers should not tow.

Notes on towing

When the engine is stopped, the transmission will not be sufficiently lubricated if traveling at high speeds and long distances:

- The maximum permitted towing speed is 30 mph (50 km/h).
- The maximum permitted towing distance is 30 miles (50 km).

Additional information on towing with a tow truck

The vehicle may only be towed with the front axle raised. Do not wrap any chains or cables around the brake lines.

Tow bar and towing cable

The vehicle can be towed with a tow bar or towing cable. Both drivers should be familiar with ▶

the special considerations when towing, especially when using a towing cable.

Always make sure the traction force does not exceed the permitted level and there are no shock loading conditions. There is always the risk of the coupling becoming overloaded when driving off-road.

For the most safety and security, drive with a tow bar. You should use a towing cable only if a tow bar is not available. Use a towing cable made of synthetic elastic cable similar elastic material.

WARNING

– Towing highly increases the risk of an accident, for example from colliding with the towing vehicle.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, do not allow anyone to remain inside the vehicle when it is being transported by a tow truck or a special transporter.

Note

– If normal towing is not possible, for example if the transmission is faulty or if the towing distance is greater than 30 miles (50 km), then transport the vehicle on a special carrier.
– If the vehicle is towed by a tow truck at the axle that is not permitted, this can cause severe damage to the transmission.
– The vehicle must not be tow started for technical reasons.

Tips

– If the power supply is interrupted, then it will not be possible to move the selector lever out of the "P" position. The parking lock must be released using the emergency release before towing the vehicle ⇨ *page 97*.
– Follow the local legal regulations for towing.

Towing

Read and follow the important information under ⇨ *page 261*.

Preparations

- ▸ Only secure the towing cable or tow bar at the designated towing loop ⇨ *page 262*.
- ▸ Make sure the towing cable is not twisted. Otherwise it could disconnect from the towing loop while towing.
- ▸ Switch the emergency flashers on in both vehicles ⇨ *page 50*. However, do not do this if it prohibited by law.

Towing vehicle (front)

- ▸ Only start to drive when the towing cable is taut.
- ▸ Press the brake pedal very carefully.
- ▸ Avoid sudden braking or driving maneuvers.

Vehicle being towed (rear)

- ▸ Make sure the ignition is switched on so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that you can use the turn signals, the horn, and the windshield wipers if needed ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Switching it off before the vehicle has stopped may impair the function of the brake booster and power steering. You would then need to use more force to steer and brake the vehicle.
- ▸ Release the parking brake ⇨ *page 102*.
- ▸ Select the “N” selector lever position.
- ▸ Make sure the towing cable is always taut.

WARNING

Never tow a vehicle using a tow bar or towing cable if the vehicle does not have electrical power.

Rear towing loop

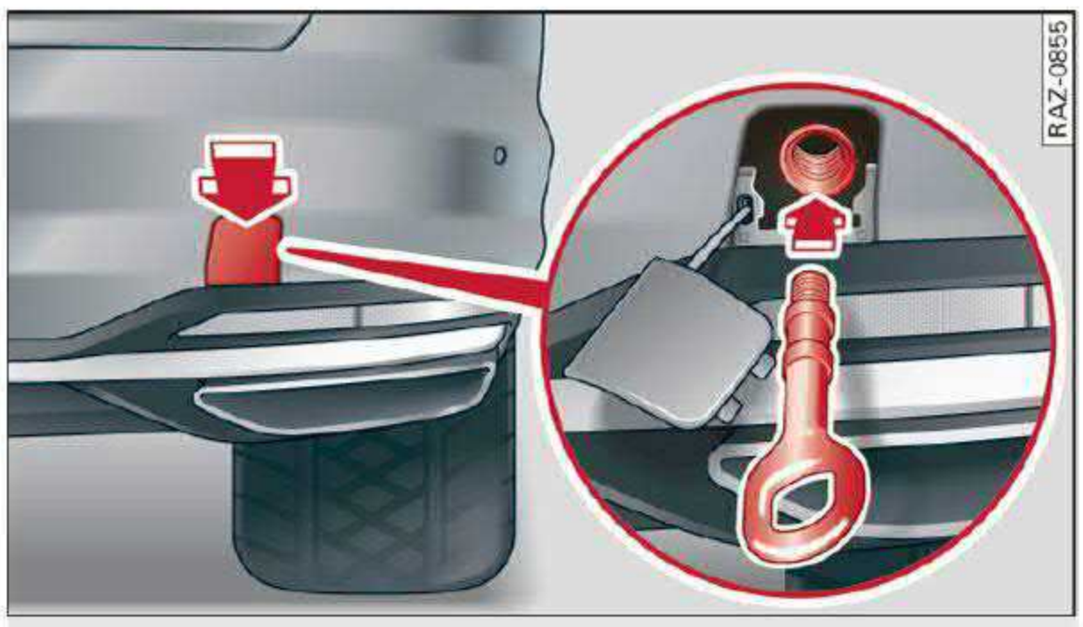


Fig. 184 Rear bumper: installing the towing loop

The threaded opening for the towing loop is located on the right rear of the bumper.

- ▸ Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 253*.
- ▸ Press the cap inward with brief, strong pressure ⇨ *fig. 184*. The cap will loosen from the bumper.
- ▸ Tighten the towing loop in the threaded opening until it stops and then tighten it with a wheel wrench.
- ▸ After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit.

WARNING

If the towing loop is not tightened until it stops when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and result in an accident.

Tips

Depending on the model, the shape of the cover can vary.

Fuses and bulbs

Fuses

Replacing fuses

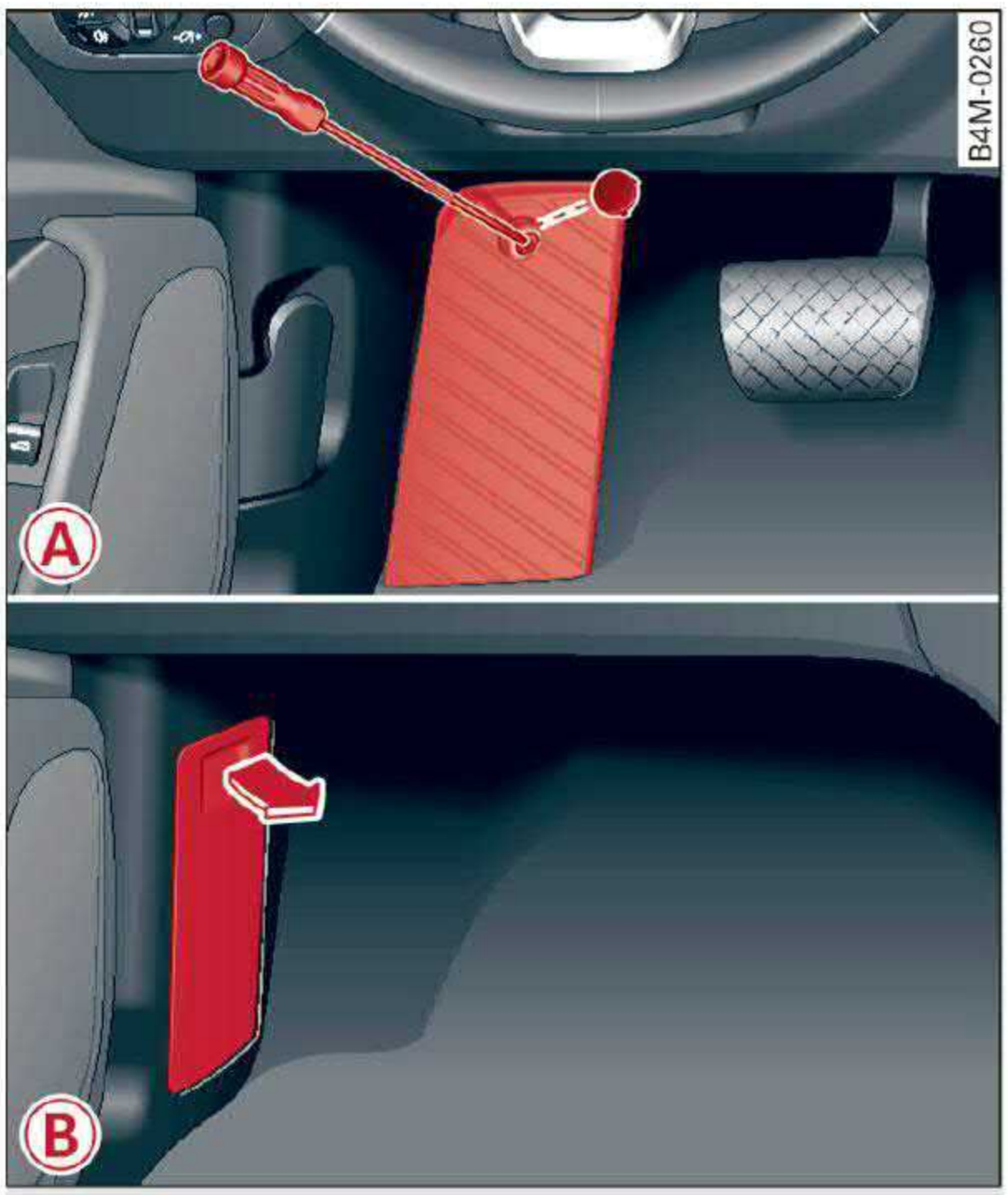


Fig. 185 Driver's side footwell (left-hand drive vehicles): footrest Ⓐ, front passenger's footwell (right-hand drive vehicles): cover Ⓑ

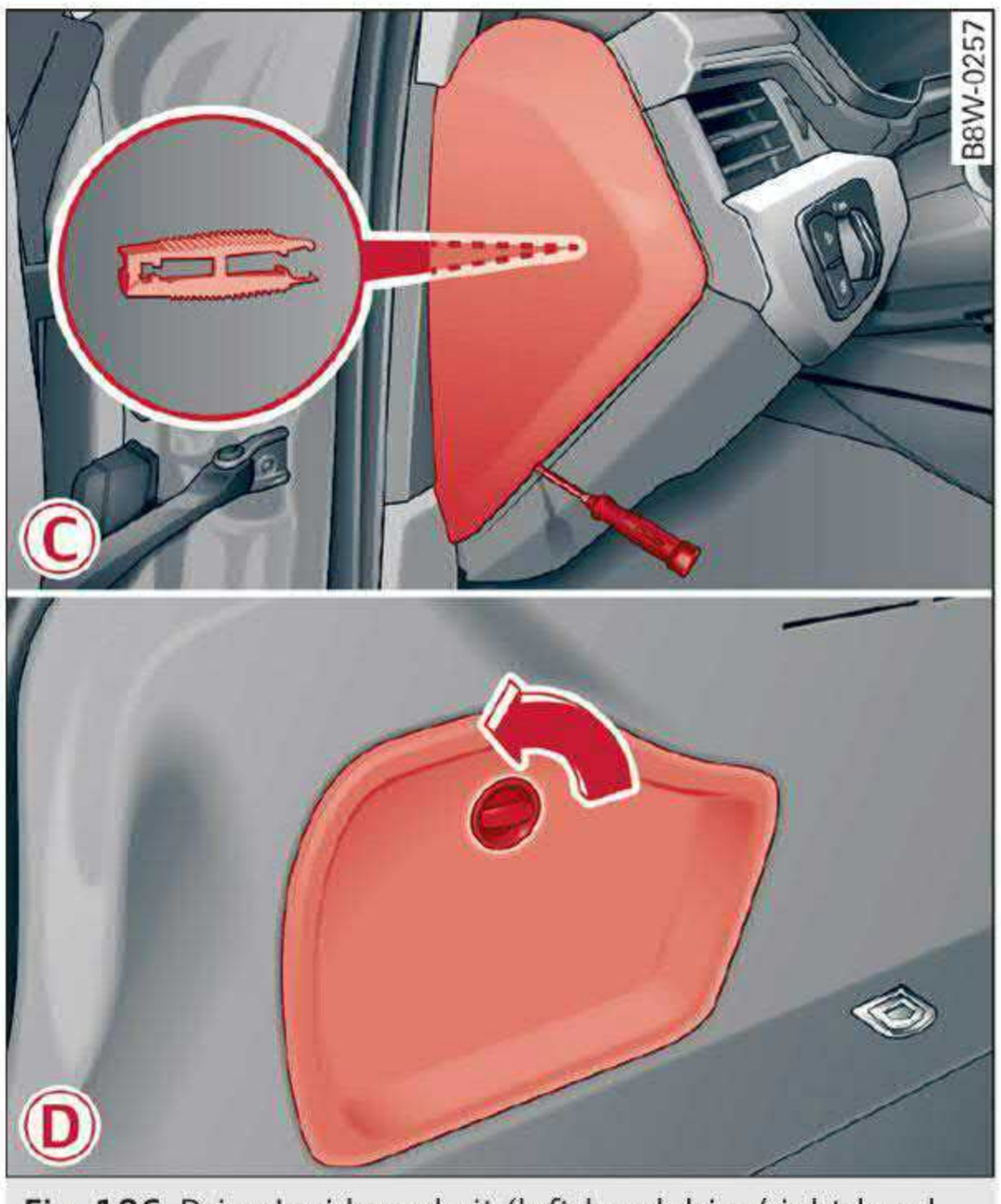


Fig. 186 Driver's side cockpit (left-hand drive/right-hand drive vehicles): cover Ⓒ, left side of luggage compartment: cover Ⓓ

A fuse that has blown will have metal strips that have burned through.

The fuses are located in the footwell under the foot rest (left-hand drive vehicle) Ⓐ or behind the cover (right-hand drive vehicle) Ⓑ. Additional fuses are located on the front side of the cockpit (driver's side) Ⓒ and under the left cover in the luggage compartment Ⓓ.

- ▸ Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off.
- ▸ Check the table that follows to see which fuse belongs to the equipment.
- ▸ Remove the screwdriver and the reversible Torx bit from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 253*.
- ▸ Remove the footrest or the corresponding cover.
- ▸ Remove the colored plastic clip from the fuse panel, if necessary ⇨ *page 265, fig. 187*.
- ▸ Remove the clip from the rear side of the cover Ⓒ.
- ▸ Remove the fuse using the clip.
- ▸ Replace the blown fuse only with a fuse that has the same amp rating.
- ▸ Reinstall the plastic bracket.
- ▸ Reattach the footrest or the cover.

Fuse color identification

Color	Current rating in amps
Black	1
Purple	3
Light brown	5
Brown	7.5
Red	10
Blue	15
Yellow	20
White or transparent	25
Green	30
Orange	40

WARNING

Do not repair fuses and never replace a blown fuse with one that has a higher amp rating. This can cause damage to the electrical system and increases the risk of fire.

Note

If a new fuse burns out again shortly after you have installed it, have the electrical system checked as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Tips

– The following table does not list fuse locations that are not used.
– Some of the equipment listed in the following tables applies only to certain model versions or certain optional equipment.

Fuse assignment - Driver's/front passenger's footwell

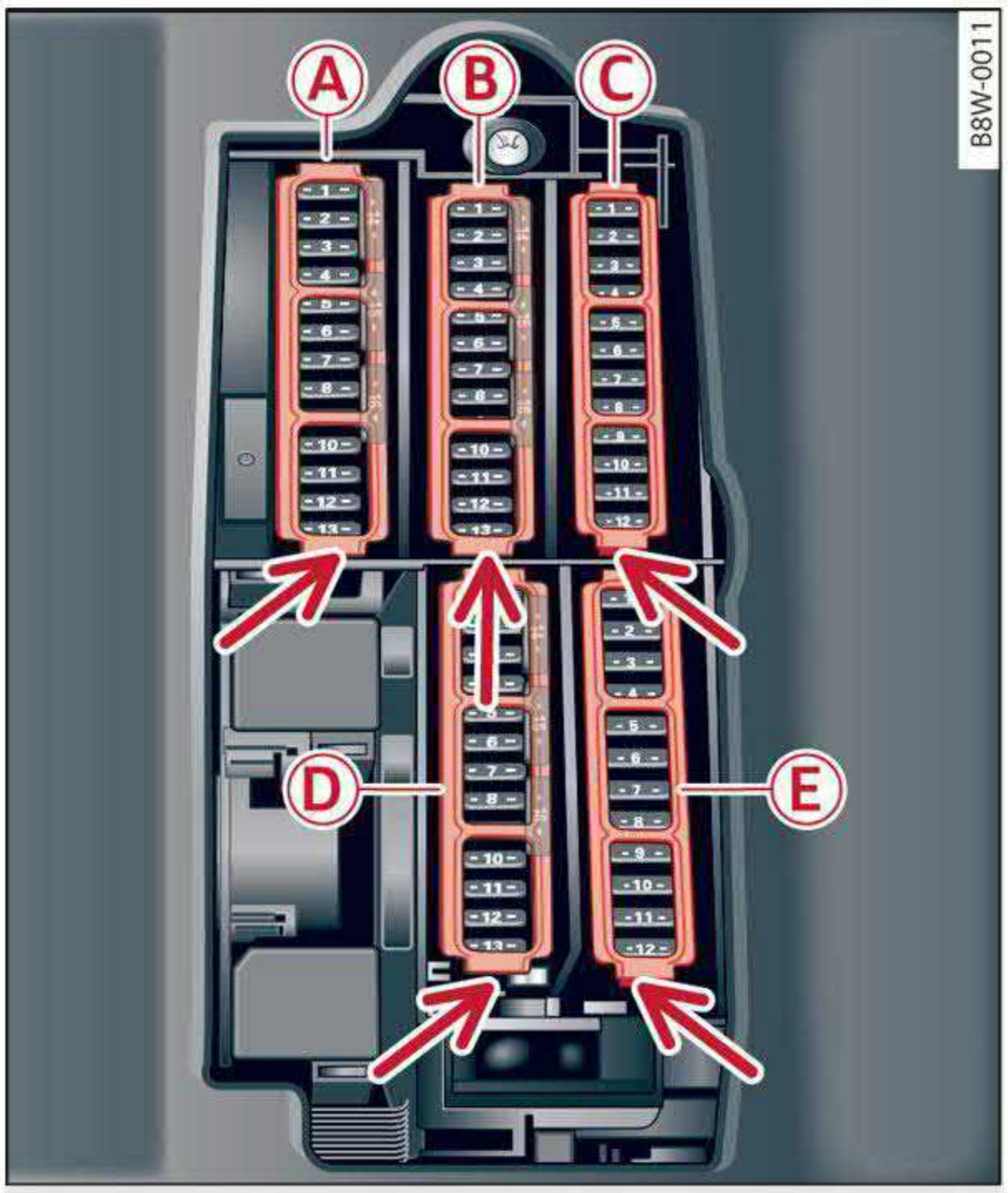


Fig. 187 Driver's footwell (left-hand drive vehicle): fuse panel with plastic clip

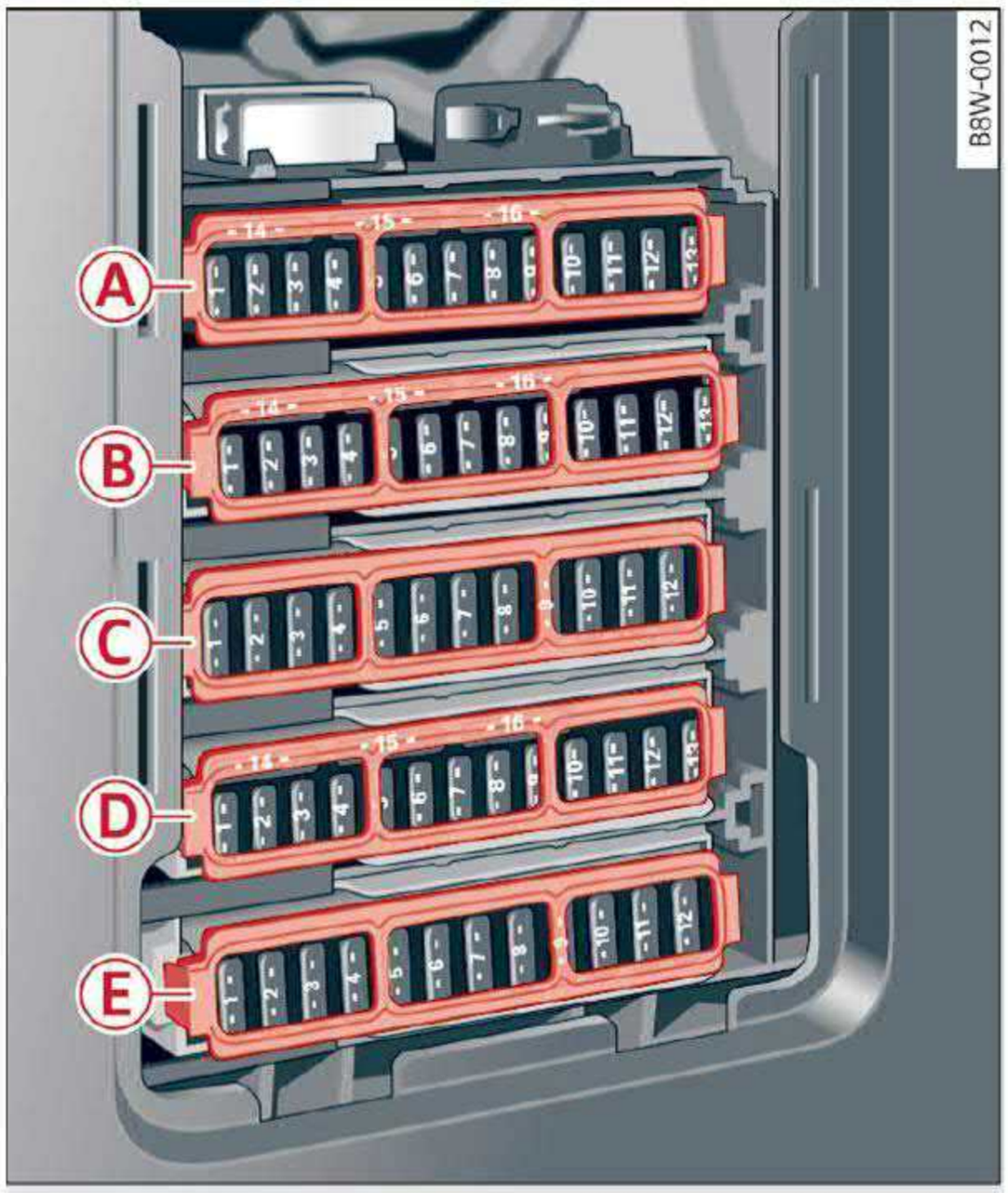


Fig. 188 Front passenger's footwell (right-hand drive vehicle): fuse panel with plastic clip

Fuse panel Ⓐ (brown)	
No.	**Equipment**
2	Engine components
3	Exhaust doors, fuel injectors, radiator inlet, crankcase housing heating
4	Vacuum pump, hot water pump, NOx sensor, particulate sensor, biodiesel sensor, exhaust doors
5	Brake light sensor
6	Engine valves, camshaft adjustment
7	Heated oxygen sensors, mass airflow sensor, water pump
8	Water pump, high pressure pump, high pressure regulator valve, temperature valve, engine mount
9	Hot water pump, engine relay
10	Oil pressure sensor, oil temperature sensor
11	Clutch pedal position sensor, engine start, water pump
12	Engine valves, engine mount
13	Radiator fan
14	Fuel injectors, engine control module

Fuse panel Ⓐ (brown)	
15	Ignition coils, heated oxygen sensors
16	Fuel pump

Fuse panel Ⓑ (red)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Anti-theft alarm system
2	Engine control module
3	Left front seat electronics, lumbar support, massaging seat
4	Automatic transmission selector mechanism
5	Horn
6	Parking brake
7	Gateway control module
8	Roof electronics control module
9	Emergency call system
10	Airbag control module
11	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)
12	Diagnostic connector, light/rain sensor
13	Climate control system
14	Right front door control module
15	A/C compressor

Fuse panel Ⓒ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Front seat heating
2	Windshield wipers
3	Left headlight electronics
4	Panoramic glass roof / sliding/tilting sunroof
5	Left front door control module
6	Sockets
7	Door control module, right rear window regulator
8	AWD control module
9	Right headlight electronics
10	Windshield washer system/headlight washer system
11	Door control module, left rear window regulator
12	Parking heater

Fuse panel Ⓓ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Front seat electronics, seat ventilation, rearview mirror, rear climate control system controls, windshield defogger, Gateway diagnostics
2	Gateway diagnosis, vehicle electrical system control module
3	Sound actuator/exhaust sound tuning
4	Clutch pedal position sensor
5	Engine start, emergency shut-off
6	Gateway
7	USB charging port
8	Garage door opener
9	Adaptive cruise control, distance regulation
11	Video camera
12	Right headlight
13	Left headlight
14	Transmission fluid cooling valve
15	Alarm and hands-free calling system

Fuse panel Ⓔ (red)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Ignition coils
2	Compressor clutch, CNG system
5	Left headlight
6	Automatic transmission
7	Instrument panel
8	Climate control system fresh air blower
9	Right headlight
10	Dynamic steering
11	Engine start

Fuse assignment - Driver's side of the cockpit

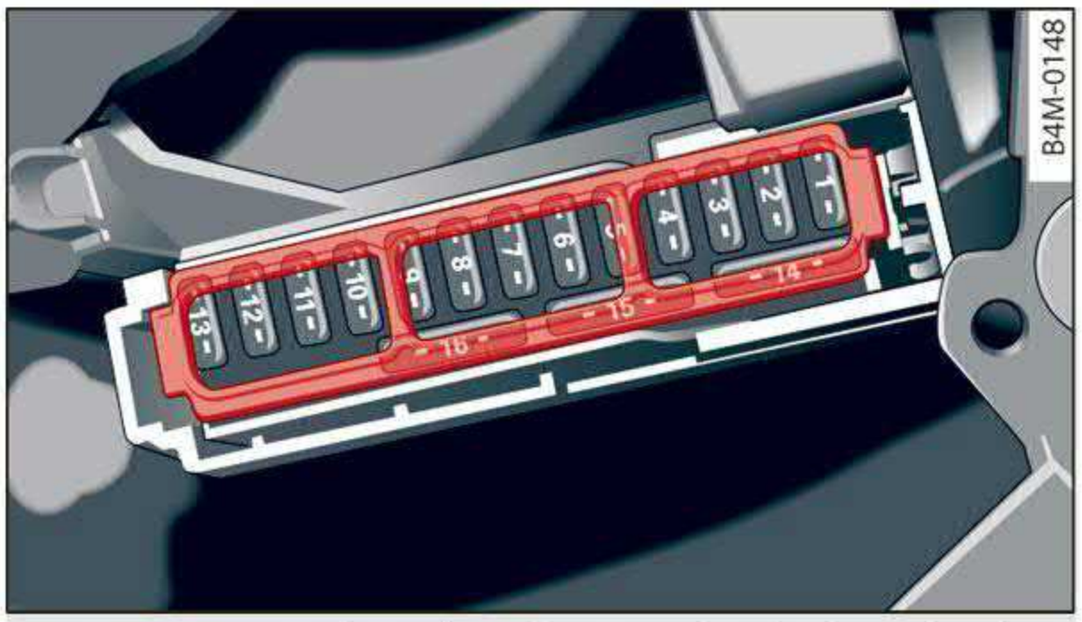


Fig. 189 Driver side cockpit: fuse panel with plastic bracket

Fuse panel	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Vehicle opening/start (NFC)
2	Telephone, mobile device charger
4	Head-up display
5	Audi music interface, USB charging port
6	Front climate control panel, instrument panel
7	Steering column lock
8	Infotainment system display
9	Instrument cluster
10	Infotainment unit
11	Light switch, switch module
12	Steering column electronics
13	Particulate matter sensor for climate control system
14	Infotainment system
16	Steering wheel heating

Fuse assignment - Left side of the luggage compartment

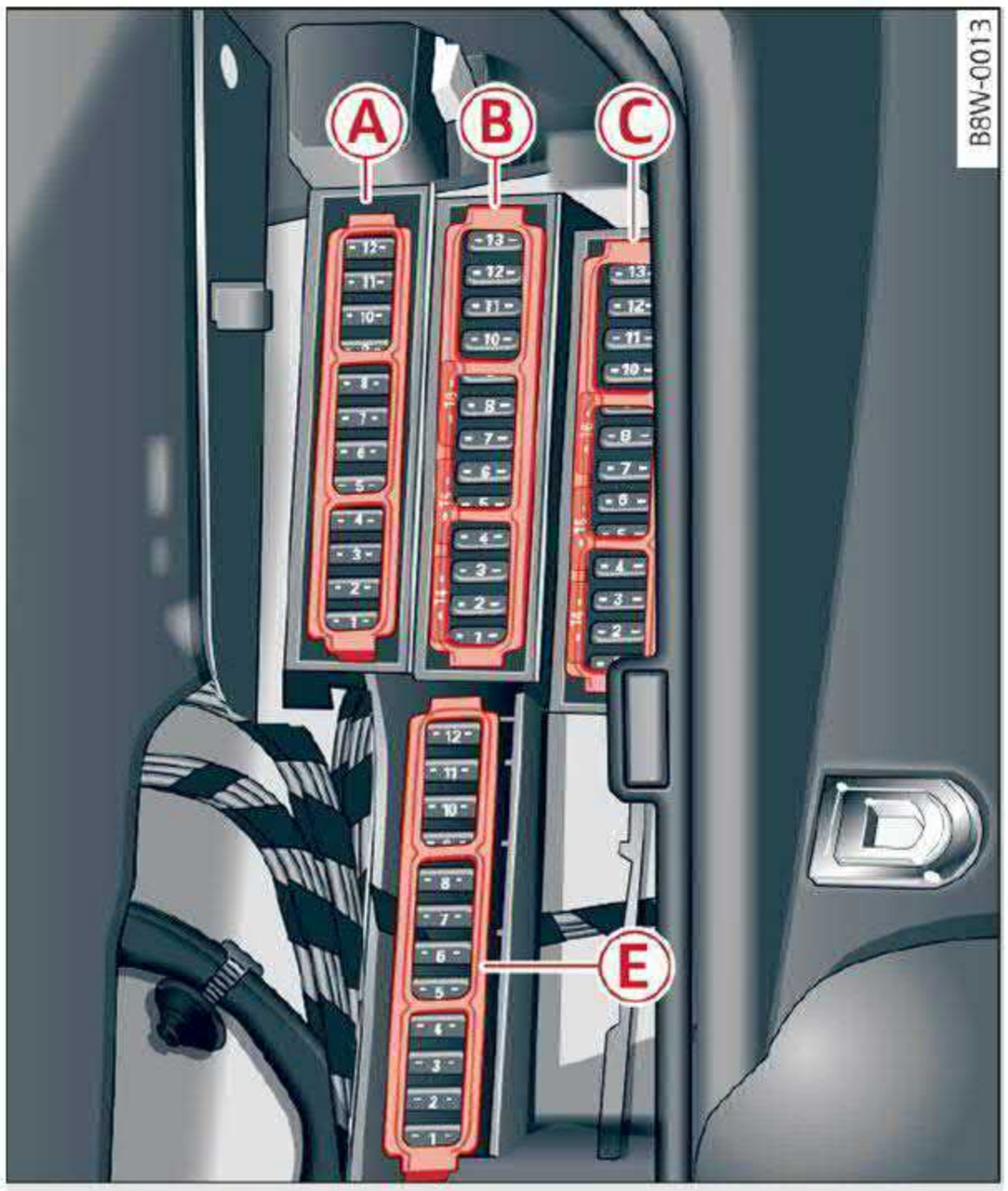


Fig. 190 Left side of the luggage compartment: fuse panel with plastic clip

Fuse panel Ⓐ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
2	Windshield defroster
3	Windshield defroster
5	Suspension control
6	Automatic transmission
7	Rear window defogger
8	Rear seat heating
9	Left tail lights
10	Airbag control module
11	Luggage compartment lid central locking, fuel filler door, luggage compartment cover
12	Luggage compartment lid control module

Fuse panel Ⓑ (red)	
No.	**Equipment**
6	Battery power interrupt

Fuse panel Ⓒ (brown)	
No.	**Equipment**
2	Telephone, mobile device charging function
3	Right front seat electronics, lumbar support
4	Side assist
6	Tire pressure monitoring system
7	Vehicle opening/start (NFC)
8	Auxiliary heating radio receiver, smart module (fuel tank)
10	TV tuner, gateway
11	Auxiliary battery control module
12	Garage door opener
13	Rearview camera, peripheral cameras
14	Right tail lights
16	Right safety belt tensioner

Fuse panel Ⓔ (red)	
No.	**Equipment**
3	Exhaust treatment
5	Trailer hitch (right light)
7	Trailer hitch
8	Trailer hitch (left light)
9	Trailer hitch (socket)
10	Allroad sport differential
11	Exhaust treatment

WARNING

If you still would like to try replacing the bulbs in your vehicle yourself, read the warnings regarding working in the engine compartment ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 214*.

Note

Make sure the covers are fitted correctly on the headlight and tail light so that no water will leak in from the outside and the light function will not be impaired.

Bulbs

Replacing bulbs

Having a bulb replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility in cases of doubt is recommended. These facilities have the correct tools and replacement parts as well as the required technical knowledge.

LED lights*

Your vehicle is equipped with maintenance-free headlights and tail lights. However, if a light bulb needs to be replaced, please contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Data privacy

Image recording

Surrounding area monitoring

Applies to: vehicles with surrounding area monitoring

Some vehicle functions require the vehicle's path to be detected and evaluated. This is done by cameras installed permanently on the vehicle that detect objects in the vehicle's surroundings (such as obstacles or guard rails). The live images from the cameras are transmitted to the applicable control module.

The camera images are transmitted to the applicable control module and stored for processing. The control module analyzes the current camera image using image evaluation software. This image evaluation software detects anonymized technical measurements, such as distances to objects. The control module evaluates these technical measurements and makes it possible for the assist systems to control the vehicle, if necessary.

Data memories

Vehicle control modules

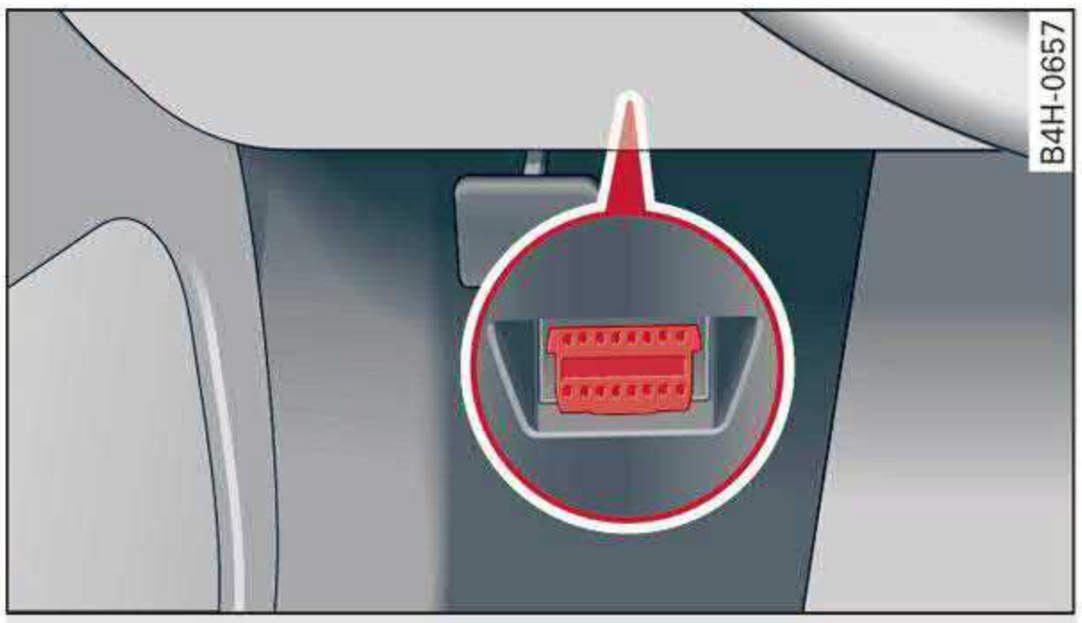


Fig. 191 Driver's side footwell: connection port for the On Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic control modules for various vehicle systems such as the airbags. These vehicle control modules store data while driving normally that is required by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for diagnosis and repair purposes. Only certain types of data are recorded for a very short period of time if a control module has detected a system event. No noises, conversations, or images will be recorded in the vehicle.

The data may include information such as the vehicle speed, the direction of travel, and information about the brake system, or also the behavior of the restraint system in the event of an accident. The stored data can be exported and downloaded with special devices, which must be connected directly to the vehicle.

On Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

There is a diagnostic connector socket in the driver's side footwell to read out the various control modules and the event data recorder. Data regarding the function and condition of the electronic control modules is stored in the event memory. Only have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility read out and delete the event memory.

WARNING

- Incorrect use of the connection port for the On Board Diagnostic System can cause malfunctions, which can then result in accidents and serious injuries.
- Only allow an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to read out the engine data.

Crash data recorder

Event Data Recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's system performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g. name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Data usage

Audi can read out the information stored in the data memories or similar data, or give this information to third parties, especially in the following situations:

– If the vehicle owner or lessee agrees
– If there is an official request from the police
– If a court or authorities request it

If legally permitted, Audi can also use the data for analysis of vehicle operation and safety performance or provide this data to third parties for research purposes.

Transmitted information

Data collection

Applies to: vehicles with data collection

Depending on the country, AUDI AG may collect data for the following purposes, for example: offer and product optimization, public safety, provision of Audi connect remote vehicle services, and adaptation to customer expectations. For example, various technical function data, environmental data, driving data, and usage data will be collected for a specific purpose and forwarded to AUDI AG. The data will be sent from the vehicle at the time the data was collected.

Applies to: MMI: You can find additional information about data collection in the MMI. Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Legal notes** > **About Audi connect**.

If you would like to deny data transmission to AUDI AG, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information. You also have the option to deactivate data transmission within the privacy settings.

Privacy settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Privacy settings**.

When using Audi connect services or during data collection, data will be transmitted from the vehicle.

▸ To display additional information about the privacy settings and the associated symbols in the status bar, press ⓘ in the MMI.

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

Setting the maximum privacy settings

When the **Activate privacy mode** function is switched on, the data connection is deactivated or sending of data is restricted, but all safety-related, legal, or contractually required Audi connect services remain activated. The majority of the Audi connect services are deactivated.

When the function is switched off, the data connection will be available in order to use Audi connect services.

Adjusting individual privacy settings

In the MMI, you can adjust individually which data should be transmitted from the vehicle. If you switch on a data category, the data will be transmitted.

Note

You are responsible for all precautions taken for data protection, anti-virus protection, and protection against loss of data on mobile devices that are used to access the Internet through the Wi-Fi hotspot. ▶

Tips

– The following interfaces are not affected by changes to the privacy settings: Bluetooth, Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE), Wi-Fi, Audi smartphone interface (ASI), Near Field Communication (NFC), charging communication (high-voltage system), Electronic Toll Collect (ETC), On-Board Diagnostic System (OBD) if equipped.
– If the maximum privacy settings are switched on, your vehicle may not receive security updates and certificates for establishing an encrypted connection, depending on vehicle equipment. In order to receive security updates and certificates, switch the maximum privacy settings off for at least ten minutes every six months. Make sure that your vehicle is connected to the Internet. A symbol in the MMI status bar indicates if the required data connection is available ⇨ *page 20*.
– If the transmission of data is limited, it will have the following effects on the exchange of data for Audi connect services and emergency calls, if equipped:
– The emergency call function will remain available without restrictions and will continue to transmit data.
– If an online roadside assistance call is initiated, no data will be transmitted, but a call will be made.
– If the Geofencing Alert, Speed Alert, and/or Valet Alert services have been activated by the key user, then they will remain available without restrictions and continue to transmit data.
– Stored destinations (favorites, last destinations) are only stored in the vehicle. If you allow transmission of data again, these destinations will be synchronized via the myAudi account. To prevent synchronization of destinations, delete the destinations before you allow data to be transmitted again.

Audi connect

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

AUDI AG collects, uses, stores and shares your personal information, such as contact data, vehicle data, usage data, driving data and precise geolocation, in order to provide you with the products and services you have purchased or requested, and for a number of other purposes, for example, to track quality issues, to performance and safety, to meet our internal compliance or legal requirements and to market to customers and potential customers. For a more complete list of the data we collect, how we use it and with whom we share it, please visit your Audi national/sales region website at www.audi.com.

The collection, use and sharing may vary depending on your model and model year, your subscription status, or the service offering. For example, collection, use and sharing may vary between Audi connect services, if you have designated a key user, or if you are driving a model equipped with persistent data logging. Please review the complete Privacy Statement to understand our data handling practices with respect to a particular service.

You can find additional information about our data privacy practices in your MMI.

▸ Applies to: MMI: On the home screen, select: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Legal notes** > **About Audi connect**.

Information about our privacy practices in conjunction with the mobile Audi connect application can be found in the Application's Privacy Statement.

For additional information about the privacy practices relating to Audi connect, myAudi, or other websites, applications or online services as well as your obligations with respect to using these services, and for additional information regarding Audi connect terms and conditions, please visit your Audi national/sales region website at www.audi.com.

8W1012721BB

Accessories and technical changes

Warranty

Your vehicle is covered by various warranties:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation
- Emissions Control System Warranties: *Federal Emissions Control System Defect Warranty, Federal Emissions Performance Warranty*
- Applies to: USA models: Kansas Safety Belt Limited Warranty
- Applies to: USA models: California Emissions Control Warranties: *Short-term Emissions Defects Warranty, Long-term Emissions Defects Warranty, TZEV models Emissions Defects Warranty, California Emissions Performance Warranty*

You can find detailed information in your Warranty & Maintenance Booklet and in the California Emissions Booklet*.

Audi Literature Shop

Service information is made available as soon as possible after a model is introduced and can be ordered in the Audi Literature Shop: http://literature.audiusa.com

Driving in other countries

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require motor vehicles to comply with emissions regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles that were produced for the U.S. and Canadian markets are different from vehicles produced for other countries.

If you plan to use your vehicle outside of the United States or Canada, it is possible that:

- Fuel may have a significantly lower octane rating. Unsuitable fuels can cause engine damage.
- Proper maintenance and repair work may not be possible because special service equipment, tools, or measuring devices needed for your vehicle may not be available.
- Replacement parts may not always be available.
- Navigation systems for vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada will not necessarily work in Europe, and may not work in other countries.

Note

Audi is not liable for damage to the vehicle resulting from these country-specific differences.

Maintenance, repairs, and technical modifications

Note the safety precautions ⇨ *page 214, General information* and ⇨ *page 256, Raising the vehicle*.

General information

Due to the increasing complexity of technology in these vehicles, as well as the safety and environmental standards that apply, you can only perform a very limited amount of repairs and modifications to the vehicle yourself.

Proof of maintenance work may be required to submit a claim within the warranty period.

We recommend that you have your vehicle serviced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and that Audi Genuine Parts and Audi Genuine Accessories are used. This helps to ensure that your vehicle's functionality, performance, and safety are not impaired.

Maintenance and repairs

Your vehicle was designed to help keep maintenance requirements to a minimum. Some regular maintenance is required to help ensure that your vehicle runs in a safe, economical, and reliable manner. Please refer to your Warranty & Maintenance Booklet for more detailed information about vehicle maintenance.

When operating the vehicle under more extreme operating conditions, for example when outside temperatures are very low or in very dusty environments, certain maintenance should be performed between the specified intervals. ▶

Usually maintenance and repair work requires special tools, measuring devices, and other equipment that is available to trained vehicle technicians in order to help ensure that your vehicle and all of its systems operate correctly, reliably, and safely. Performing work on the vehicle incorrectly can impair the operation and reliability of your vehicle and may void one or more of your vehicle's warranties.

Technical Modifications

Interference with electronic components, their software, the wiring, and data transfer may cause malfunctions. Because of the way electronic components are interconnected, such malfunctions can also impair systems that are not directly involved. This means that you risk both a substantial reduction in the operational safety of your vehicle and increased wear of vehicle components.

Some convenience functions, such as the convenience turn signal function, individual door opening function, and displays, can be reprogrammed using special workshop equipment. If functions are reprogrammed, the information and descriptions about these functions in this Owner's Manual may no longer apply to the changed functions. Audi recommends that an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility perform and verify any reprogramming procedures.

WARNING

Maintenance procedures, repairs, or technical modifications that are performed incorrectly increase the risk of an accident and can lead to serious injuries.

WARNING

The engine compartment in any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

- Always use extreme caution when doing any work in the engine compartment. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and use common sense. Never risk personal injury.
- Never perform any work in the engine compartment unless you know exactly how to carry out the job and have the correct technical information and the correct tools.
- If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Audi dealer, an authorized Audi Service Facility, or another qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.

Note

- Maintenance procedures, repairs or technical modifications that are performed incorrectly can cause damage to the vehicle, such as corrosion.
- If emergency repairs must be performed, take your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible.
- Audi is not liable for damage to the vehicle resulting from failure to comply with these guidelines.

For the sake of the environment

- Regular maintenance can help protect the environment.
- Technical modifications to the vehicle can have a negative impact on fuel consumption and vehicle emissions.

For the sake of the environment

Certain components in your vehicle such as undeployed airbag modules, pretensioners and remote control batteries may contain Perchlorate Material – special handling may apply, See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Tips

Because of your vehicle's aluminum body design, all service and repair procedures ▶

affecting the body should be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility, who will perform the work according to Audi factory specifications. Only Audi Genuine Parts are used when Audi experts perform repair or service procedures. Failure to use Audi Genuine Parts or Audi Genuine Accessories or performing repairs incorrectly may result in severe vehicle damage, such as corrosion.

Accessories and parts

Consult with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before purchasing accessories or replacement parts. We recommend that you have your vehicle serviced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and that Audi Genuine Parts and Audi Genuine Accessories are used.

Audi does not endorse the use of products and accessories that it has not evaluated, even if the product is approved by a certified testing agency or government agency.

WARNING

- Installing unapproved accessories or incorrect replacement parts can cause vehicle damage and can increase the risk of an accident.
- On vehicles that have factory-installed license plate brackets on the front of the vehicle, the brackets may only be replaced with ones that are the same size and made of the same material. Do not install any license plate brackets on the front of vehicles that do not have factory-installed brackets. Otherwise, the function of the system could be impaired.

Note

A correctly-installed exterior antenna is required for operating radio equipment in the vehicle. Otherwise, the increased electromagnetic waves can cause malfunctions in the vehicle. Observe the regulations in the country where the vehicle is being operated and the instructions from the radio equipment manufacturer.

Reporting Safety Defects Applicable to U.S.A.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying

Audi of America, Inc.
2200 Ferdinand Porsche Drive
Herndon, VA 20171

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Audi of America, Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; ▶

or write to:

Administrator NHTSA
1200 New Jersey Ave.,
S.E. West Building
Washington, DC
20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

Applicable to Canada

If you live in Canada and you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls. You should also notify Audi Canada.

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may either call Transport Canada toll-free at:

Tel.: 1-800-333-0510 or
Tel.: 1-819-994-3328 (Ottawa region and from other countries)
TTY for hearing impaired:
1-888-675-6863

or contact Transport Canada by mail at:

Transport Canada
Motor Vehicle Safety Investigations Laboratory
80 Noel Street
Gatineau, QC
J8Z 0A1

For additional road safety information, please visit the Road Safety website at:

English:
http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/menu.htm

French:
http://www.tc.gc.ca/fra/securiteautomobile/menu.htm

Declaration of compliance for telecommunications equipment and electronic systems

The manufacturer is not liable for radio malfunctions that are caused by unauthorized changes to the equipment.

Equipment

The following equipment complies with FCC section 15 and RSS-Gen:

– Audi adaptive cruise control*
– Remote control key
– Mobile phone package*
– Garage door opener (HomeLink)*
– Side assist*
– Exit warning*
– Rear cross traffic assist*
– Wi-Fi hotspot*

FCC Part 15.19

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two ▶

8W1012721BB

conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC Part 15.21

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

RSS-Gen

This device complies with Industry Canada's licence-exempt RSSs. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause interference; and

(2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Long Range Radar*

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

Radiofrequency radiation exposure Information: This equipment complies with FCC and IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator and your body. This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Technical data

Identification data

Vehicle data label

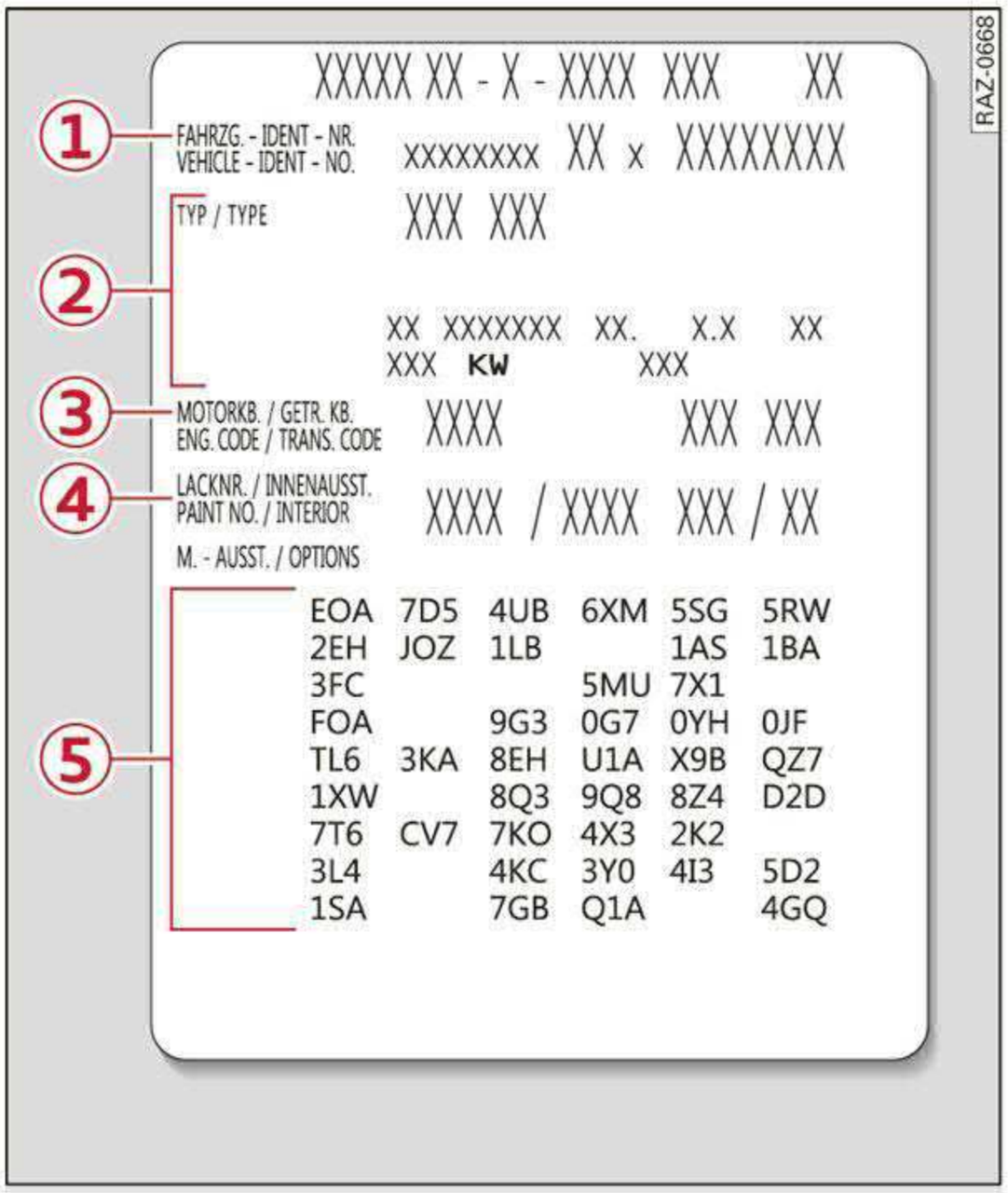


Fig. 192 Vehicle identification label

The vehicle identification label ⇨ *fig. 192* is located in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover.

The vehicle identification label information can also be found in the Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

The sticker contains the following vehicle data:

1. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
2. Vehicle type/engine output/transmission
3. Engine and transmission codes
4. Paint and interior codes
5. Optional equipment numbers

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The VIN is located in the following areas:

– Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Vehicle information**.
– On the vehicle identification label
– At the front behind the windshield*
– In the motor compartment on the right side

Notes about technical data

The values may vary based on special equipment as well as market-specific equipment and measuring methods.

Please note that the specifications listed in the vehicle documentation always take precedence.

Tips

Any technical data that is missing was not available at the time of printing.

Vehicle data

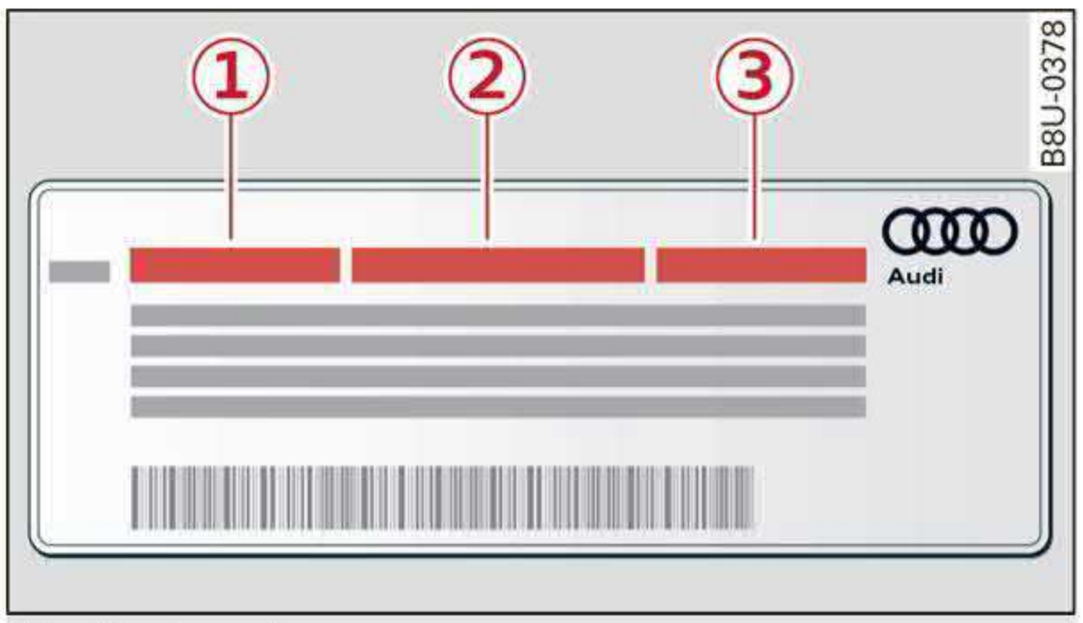
Dimensions

	Length (in (mm))	Width (in (mm))	Width across the mirrors (in (mm))	Height at curb weight (in (mm))
A4 allroad	187.5 (4,762)	72.7 (1,847)	79.6 (2,022)	58.8 (1,493)
A4 sedan	187.5 (4,762)	72.7 (1,847)	79.6 (2,022)	1,428 (56,2)
S4 sedan	187.5 (4,762)	72.7 (1,847)	79.6 (2,022)	1,428 (56,2)

Capacities

	Approximate capacities
Fuel tank	15.3 gal (58 L)
Windshield and headlight washer system*	5.1 qt (4.8 L)

Weights



Applies to: sedan
Fig. 193 Safety certificate



Applies to: allroad
Fig. 194 Safety certificate

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)

The maximum permitted total weight (1) of the vehicle is listed on the safety certificate on the side area of the door or on the driver's door pillar.

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)

The maximum permitted load on the front axle (2) or the rear axle (3) is listed on the safety certificate on the side area of the door or on the driver's door pillar.

Load

The maximum permitted load is listed on the tire pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Roof load

The maximum permitted roof load is 198 lb (90 kg).

Numbers and Symbols

3-zone deluxe automatic climate control 88

A

A/C cooling mode 88
Accelerator pedal 96
also refer to Accelerator pedal 96
Accessories 78, 274
Active lane assist
refer to Audi active lane assist 137
Adaptive cruise control 127
Adaptive dampers 106
Adjusting air distribution (automatic climate control system) 89
Adjusting the brightness 52
Adjusting the sound 206
Adjusting the temperature (automatic climate control system) 89
Adjusting the volume 26
Airbag system 67
Alarm system
refer to Anti-theft alarm system 33
Alignment pin (changing the wheel) 253
All-weather lights 48
All season tires 242
All wheel drive
refer to quattro 108
AMI
refer to Audi music interface 196
Android Auto
refer to Audi smartphone interface 204
Anti-freeze
Windshield washer system 225
Anti-lock braking system 109
Anti-Slip Regulation 109
Anti-theft alarm system 33
Apple CarPlay
refer to Audi smartphone interface 204
Aspect ratio (video) 199, 201
ASR
refer to Anti-Slip Regulation 109
Audi active lane assist 137
Cleaning the camera area 248
Audi adaptive cruise control
Cleaning the sensors 248
Predictive control 126
Traffic jam assist 134
Audi adaptive light 48
Audi connect
refer to connect 169
Audi connect Remote & Control
refer to Vehicle control services 171
Audi drive select 106
Audi music interface 196
Audio files 197
Audi phone box 160
Audi pre sense 139
basic 140
city 141
Messages 143
rear 141
Safety measures 139
Audi pre sense front 140
Audi side assist
refer to Side assist 143
Audi smartphone interface 204
Legal information 208
Audi virtual cockpit
refer to Instrument cluster 11
AUTO
Automatic climate control system 89
Automatic headlights 48
Auto Lock (central locking) 30
Automatic climate control system 87
Automatic luggage compartment lid 38, 39
Automatic transmission 94
Automatic wipe/wash system 55
Average consumption 15
Average speed 15

B

Band
refer to Frequency band 188
Battery 223
Charging 225
Winter operation 223
Block route 182
Blower 89

8W1012721BB

Bluetooth
Audio player 195
Connecting a device 207
Connecting a mobile phone 158
Deleting a device 208
Device overview 207
Disconnecting a device 207
Displaying profiles 208
Selecting a device 207
Specifying a favorite 208
Boost 14
Boost pressure indicator 14
Brake fluid
Checking the brake fluid level 222
Brakes 101
Brake assist 109
Brake fluid 222
Emergency braking function 103
Hot 104
New brake pads 101
Break-in security feature 33
Breaking in
New brake pads 101
New tires 234
Browser
refer to Media center 198
Business address 183

C

California Proposition 65 Warning 214
Battery specific 224
Call list 162, 164
Cameras
Coverage areas 115
Locations 116
Capacities
Fuel tank 278
Washer fluid reservoir 278
Cargo mat 85
Car key 34
Car phone
Serial number (IMEI) 165
Car wash 247
Catalytic converter 213
Central locking 30
Auto Lock 30
Convenience key 35
Convenience opening and closing 42
Luggage compartment lid 37
Mechanically unlocking and locking 32
Messages 32
Remote control key 35
Setting 31
Vehicle key 35
Central locking switch 32
Ceramic brakes 101
Certification 275
Charging
refer to Power sources 78
Charging the battery
Mobile devices 196
USB 160
Wireless 160
Child safety lock
Climate control system controls in the rear . 41
Power windows 41
Rear doors 41
Child safety seats 72
Securing to the top tether anchor 76
Securing with a safety belt 75
Securing with LATCH 74
Cleaning 247
Cleaning Alcantara 250
Cleaning artificial leather 250
Cleaning carbon components 249, 250
Cleaning controls 249
Cleaning decorative parts/trim 249
Cleaning exhaust tail pipes 249
Cleaning plastic parts 249
Cleaning textiles 250
Climate control system 87
also refer to Automatic climate control system 87
Climate control system controls in the rear
Child safety lock 41
Closing
Automatic luggage compartment lid 38
Convenience closing 42
Hood 215
Luggage compartment lid 37
Luggage compartment lid with foot motion . 39

Panoramic glass roof 44
Sliding/tilting sunroof 43
Sunshade (roof) 44
Windows 42
Cockpit dimming 52
Cockpit (overview) 6
Collapsible spare tire 259
Collapsible tire
refer to Collapsible spare tire 259
Color code 277
Compact spare tire 258
Compartments 78
Compass in the mirror 57
Compliance 275
Conference call 164
Configuration wizard 18
connect 169
Data plans 173
Data Privacy 271
Emergency call 174
Infotainment 169
Infotainment services 170
Online roadside assistance 175
Vehicle control services 171
Connected devices
Device overview 207
Connections
refer to Media 195, 197
Consumer information 272
Consumption
Reducing 99
Consumption (fuel) 15
Contacts
Importing and exporting 166
Updating in the MMI 166
also refer to Directory 163
Convenience key 30
Convenience closing 42
also refer to Vehicle key 34
Convenience opening and closing
Windows or panoramic glass roof 42
Coolant temperature display 13
Cooling system
Adding coolant 221
Checking the coolant level 221
Coolant 220
Cornering light 48
Cruise control system 123
Cup holders 78
Current consumption 15

D

Data module
Serial number (IMEI) 165
Data plans 173
Data Privacy 271
Date 15
Setting 206
Daytime running lamps 48
Declaration of compliance 275
DEF (instrument cluster) 11
Demo mode
refer to Presentation mode 186
Destination on the map 179
Details 179
Determining correct load limit 241
Digital compass 57
Dimensions 277
Dimming the exterior mirrors 53
Dimming the rearview mirror 53
Directory 163
Business card 163
Settings 165
Display
Cleaning 249
Displaying tool tips 18
Disposal 272
Distance 15
Distance warning 136
Doors
Child safety lock 41
Door contact switch 51
Mechanically unlocking and locking 32
Driver information system 12
Drives
refer to Media 195, 197
Drive select
refer to Audi drive select 106
Drive system 98
Audi drive select 106
Drive system (message) 100

Driving down hills 104
Driving program 133
Driving through water 105
Driving time 15
Driving tips
Driving through water 105
Efficient driving 99
Offroad driving 104
Uphill and downhill 104
Driving up hills 104
Dust filter
refer to Pollutant filter 87
Dynamic steering 107

E

E-mail
Message options 167
Settings 167
EDL
refer to Electronic Differential Lock 109
EDR
Event Data Recorder 269
Efficiency assist 124
Electrical system 222
Electromechanical parking brake 102
Electronic Differential Lock 109
Electronic immobilizer 34
Electronic Stabilization Control 109
Embedded SIM card 170
Emergency assistance 253
Emergency braking function 103
Emergency call 165, 174
Emergency flashers 50
Emergency mode 97
Emergency operation
Doors 32
Fuel filler door 213
Luggage compartment lid 40
Panoramic glass roof 44
Sliding/tilting sunroof 43
Emissions control system 213
Energy consumers 15
Energy management 99
Engine
Breaking in 98
Coolant 220
Emergency stop 92
Jump starting 260
Start/Stop system 99
Starting/stopping 92
Engine compartment
Opening and closing the hood 215
Overview 216
Safety precautions 214
Engine oil
Adding 216
Changing 219
Checking oil level 216
Consumption 216
Indicator light 217
Replacement interval 226
Temperature display 14
Engine sound
Audi drive select 106
Engine Start/Stop mode
refer to Start/Stop system 99
Engine start system 93
Engine stop
refer to Start/Stop system 99
Entry/exit lighting 50
Entry assistance 62
also refer to Exit assistance 62
Environment
Unleaded gasoline 210
ESC Offroad 110
ESC Sport 110
eSIM
refer to Embedded SIM card 170
Event Data Recorder (EDR) 269
Exit assistance 62
Exit warning 145
Exterior antenna 160
Exterior lighting 48
Exterior mirrors 52
Folding settings 31
External voice operation 25

F

Factory default settings
Multi Media Interface 207
Fast forwarding and rewinding (media files) . 197
Fast forwarding (media files) 197
Fast route 177
Favorites
Bluetooth 208
Navigation 178
Telephone 163
Federal Communications Commission (FCC) . 275
File formats (media drives) 201
Filling
Tank capacities 278
Fixture set 84
For the sake of the environment
Disposing of engine oil 219
Fueling 211
Leaks 215
Forward gear
refer to Gears 94
Free text search
Media 200
Radio 190
also refer to Intelligent search 177
Freeze protection
Coolant 220
Frequency band 188
also refer to Frequency band 188
Front center armrest 62
Front collision warning
refer to Audi pre sense front 139
Front passenger's seat adjustment
Rear 62
Front wiper blades
Changing 56
Cleaning 56
Fuel 210
Additives 211
Current consumption 15
Fuel display 11
Gasoline 210
Reducing fuel consumption 99
Tank capacity 278
Fueling
Fuel filler door 211
Fuel filler door emergency release 213
Functions on demand 171
Functions that require a license
refer to Functions on demand 171
Fuses
Assignment 265
Replacing 264

G

Garage door opener 45
Garment hooks 78
Gasoline 210
Additives 211
Gasoline mixture 210
GAWR
refer to Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) . 278
Gears 94
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . . 230
Glove compartment 78
Lockable 78
Valet parking 44
Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) 278
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) 278
GVWR
refer to Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) 278

H

Handsfree 159
Hands Free Profile 159
Head-up display
Adjusting 23
Adjusting the brightness 52
Operating 23
Headlight range control 48
Headlights 48
Cleaning 248
Headlight range control 48
Washer system 55
Head restraints 63
Heated rear window 90
Heated steering wheel 90
Heating 87

8W1012721BB

HFP
refer to Hands Free Profile 158
High beams
High beam assistant 49
Highway lights 48
Hill descent assist 105
Hill descent control 104
Hill hold assist 94
Home
refer to Home address 183
Home address 183
HomeLink
refer to Garage door opener 45
Home screen 17
Horn 6
Hotspot
refer to Wi-Fi 172

I

Idle
refer to Gears 94
Ignition
Switching on and off 92
Imbalance (wheels) 236
Immobilizer
refer to Electronic immobilizer 34
Indicator lights 7
Inspection interval 226
Instrument cluster 11
Adjusting the layout 12
Cleaning 249
Engine code 208
Failure 11
On-board computer 15
Operating 12
Service interval display 226
Software information 208
Switching tabs 12
Switching the view 12
Vehicle functions 15
Version information 208
Instruments
Adjusting illumination 52
Intelligent search
Navigation 177
Interior lighting 51, 52
Interior monitoring 33
Intermittent mode (windshield wipers) 55
International travel 173
Internet
refer to connect 169
Internet radio
refer to Online radio 191, 192
iPhone
refer to Audi music interface 196

J

Jump starting 260

K

Key 30, 34
Convenience opening and closing 42
Key replacement 34
Mechanical key 34
PANIC key 34
Replacing the battery 36
Unlocking and locking 35
Vehicle code 34
Key user 28
Kick-down 96

L

Lane assist
refer to Audi active lane assist 137
Lap timer 121
Evaluating 122
Starting 121
LATCH (securing child safety seats) 74
Leather care and cleaning 250
Legal information
License subscriptions 208
Software information 208
Software licenses 208
Version information 208
License plate bracket 274
Lifting points (vehicle jack) 256
Light/rain sensor
Automatic headlights 48
Intermittent mode (windshield wipers) 55

Lighting
Exterior 48
Interior 51
Lights 48
Listening to music
refer to Media 195, 197
Load 278
Local users 27
Lockable glove compartment 78
Locking and unlocking
By remote control 35
Using the lock cylinder 32
With the convenience key 35
Low beam headlights 48
LTE
refer to Exterior antenna 160
Luggage compartment 79
Cover (manual) 81
Cover (power) 81
Pass-through 84
Power sources 78
Tie-downs 84
Valet parking 44
also refer to Luggage compartment 79
Luggage compartment lid 41
Closing button 38
General information 36
Mechanically unlocking 40
Opening and closing 37
Opening and closing with foot motion 39
Opening from the inside in an emergency . . 41
Power opening and closing 38
Luggage compartment net 84
Lumbar support 60

M

Maintenance 272
Maintenance intervals 226
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 213
Manual shifting 96
Map
Changing the scale 179
Display 181
Operating 180
Setting the destination 179
MAP
refer to Message Access Profile 166
Map preview 179
Map update 184
Online 184
USB connection 184
Massage function
Front 61
Mechanical key 34
Media 195, 197
Supported formats 201
Media center 198
Memory function 67
Menu language
refer to Setting the language 206
Message Access Profile 166
Messages 166
Mirror compass 57
Mirrors
Adjusting exterior mirrors 52
Dimming 53
Vanity mirror 54
MMI Navigation plus
refer to Multi Media Interface 18
MMI radio
refer to Multi Media Interface 18
MMI Radio plus
refer to Multi Media Interface 18
Mobile device
refer to Telephone 158
Mobile device reminder signal 161
Mobile phone
refer to Telephone 158
Mobile phone compartment
refer to Audi phone box 160
Mountain passes 104
Mountain roads 104
Multifunction steering wheel
Buttons 12, 26
Operating 12
Programming buttons 26
Voice recognition system 24
Multi Media Interface 18
Menus and symbols 19
Operating 16, 19
Switching on or off 18

Muting 26
myAudi 27, 170
myAudi navigation 176, 179
myAudi users 27

N

Natural leather care and cleaning 250
Navigation 176
Better route 185
Calling 179
Changing the scale 179
also refer to Map 180
Navigation database
Version information 208
Navigation (instrument cluster) 182
Net 78
NHTSA 274
Notification center 20

O

Octane rating (gasoline) 210
Odometer 14
Resetting 14
Office address
refer to Business address 183
Offroad
refer to Offroad driving 104
Offroad driving 104
OFF (button) 88
Oil
refer to Engine oil 216
On-board computer 15
On Board Diagnostic System (OBD) . . . 213, 269
Online map
refer to Satellite map 183
Online radio 191
also refer to Online radio 191, 192
Online roadside assistance 175
Online services
refer to connect 169
Online system update 207
Online traffic information 185
Opening 30
Automatic luggage compartment lid 38
Convenience opening 42
Fuel filler door 211
Hood 215
Luggage compartment lid 37
Luggage compartment lid with foot motion . 39
Panoramic glass roof 44
Sliding/tilting sunroof 43
Sunshade (roof) 44
Windows 42
Opening and closing
refer to Unlocking and locking 30, 35
Operating
Head-up display 23
Instrument cluster 12
Multifunction steering wheel 12
Multi Media Interface 16, 19
Text input 21
Touch display 16
Voice recognition system 24
Optional equipment number 277
Options
Media 201
Radio 193
Overview (cockpit) 6

P

Paint code 277
Paint damage 249
PANIC button 34
Panic function 34
Panoramic glass roof 44
Convenience opening and closing 42
Emergency closing 44
Quick opening 44
Park assist 155
Parking aid 147
Adjusting the volume 148
Automatic activation 147
Cleaning sensors/camera 248
Park assist 155
Parking aid plus 147
Parking space search 153
Peripheral cameras 149
Rearview camera 149
Parking and maneuvering 147
Parking brake
refer to Electromechanical parking brake . 102
Parking lights 48

Parking lock
Manually releasing 97
also refer to Gears 94
Partition net 83
Pass-through 84
Passing prevention 129
Paths 17
Pause (media files) 197
Pedals 96
Perchlorate 272
Peripheral cameras 149
Phone
Connecting a second mobile device 159
Disconnecting a mobile device 159
Settings 165
Phonebook
refer to Directory 163
PIN
4-digit myAudi PIN 27
Protection 28
Playback (media) 197
Podcast
refer to Online radio 191, 192
Polishing 249
Pollen filter
refer to Pollutant filter 87
Pollutant filter 87
Power sources 78, 196
Power windows 42
Malfunction 42
Power windows malfunction 42
Predictive control 126
Predictive messages 125
pre sense
refer to Audi pre sense 139
Presentation mode 187
Presets
Radio 190
Presets list
refer to Presets 190
Pressure
Tire pressure monitoring system 245
Tires 237
Protecting 249
Pyrotechnic elements 272

Q

quattro 108
Selective wheel torque control 109

R

Radio 188
Radio text 191
Station list 188
Radio communications equipment 274
Radio equipment 274
Radio Standards Specification (RSS) 275
Rain/light sensor
Automatic headlights 48
Intermittent mode (windshield wipers) 55
Range (fuel level) 15
Reading lights 51
Rear center armrest
refer to Cup holders 78
Rear cross-traffic assist 152
Rear fog lights 48
Rear lid
refer to Luggage compartment lid 37
Rearview camera 149
Rear window defogger 90
Rear wiper blades
Changing 57
Cleaning 57
Recirculation mode 89
Recuperation 15
Refueling 211
Remote control
Garage door opener 45
Remote control key 34
Convenience opening and closing 42
Key replacement 34
LED 36
Replacing the battery 36
Unlocking and locking 35
also refer to Vehicle key 34
Removing the caps (wheel bolts) 256
Repairs 272
Repeat 197, 199
Replacement key 34
Replacement parts 274
Replacing bulbs 268

Reporting Safety Defects 274
Reverse gear
refer to Gears 94
Reversible cargo floor 85
Rewinding (media files) 197
Rims 242
Cleaning 248
Roof
refer to Panoramic glass roof 44
Roof load 86, 278
Roof rack 86
also refer to Roof rack 86
Route guidance
Stopping 180
also refer to Navigation 176
Running direction (tires) 258

S

Safety belts 64
Cleaning 249
Locking 75
Securing child safety seats 75
Satellite map 183
Saving fuel
Energy consumers 15
Recuperation 15
Screen
refer to Touch display 16
Screwdriver 253
Search function
refer to Free text search 200
Seat heating 89
Seats
Adjusting 60
Cleaning 250
Head restraints 63
Memory function 67
Resetting the position 62
Storing a seat profile 67
Seat ventilation 89
Selecting a source (media) 197
Selector lever 94
Selector lever position
refer to Gears 94
Sensors
Coverage areas 115
Locations 116
Service interval display 226
SET REAR (button) 89
Setting measurement units 206
Settings 206
Bluetooth 206
Date and time 206
Language 206
Measurement units 206
Media 201
Navigation 186
Radio 193
Sound 206
System 206
Time zone 206
Wi-Fi hotspot 172
Setting the language 206
Setting the time 206
Shift paddles 96
Shop 171
Shuffle 197, 199
also refer to Shuffle 199
Side assist 143
Cleaning the sensors 248
SIM card 170
Sliding/tilting sunroof 43
Emergency closing 43
Sunshade 43
also refer to Panoramic glass roof 44
Smartphone
refer to Telephone 158
Smart presets 191
Snow chains 243
Socket
refer to Power sources 78
Software information
Legal information 208
Software version (MMI)
Version information 208
Sound
refer to Adjusting the sound 206
Space-saving spare tire (compact spare tire) . 258
Spare tire 258

Speed limit information
refer to Traffic sign recognition 118
Speed limits
refer to Traffic sign recognition 118
Speedometer 11
Speed warning system 118
Sport differential 108
Start/Stop system 99
Switching off and on 100
Starting to drive 93
Starting (engine) 100
Steering 107
Audi drive select 106
also refer to Steering 107
Steering lock 92
Steering wheel
Adjusting 62
Adjusting manually 62
Shift paddles 96
Steering wheel heating 90
also refer to Multifunction steering wheel . . 12
Steps for determining correct load limit . . . 241
Stopover (navigation) 180
Stopping (engine) 100
Storage areas 78
Stored stations
refer to Presets 190
Sunshade
Rear doors 54
Roof 44
Sun visors 54
Suspension 106
Audi drive select 106
Swapping calls 164
Swerve assist 142
Symbols
Navigation 180
Traffic 185
also refer to Indicator lights 7
SYNC (button) 89
System settings 206

T

Tachometer 11, 13
Tail lights
Cleaning 248
Technical data 277
Technical modifications 272
Telephone 158
Accepting/ending a call 164
Audi phone box 160
Charging the battery (USB) 160
Charging the battery (wireless) 160
Connecting a mobile phone 158
Dialing a number 164
Exterior antenna 160
Mobile device reminder signal 161
Options during a phone call 164
Playing music 195
Temperature display (outside temperature) . . 14
Temperature gauge
Coolant 11
Text input 21
Text messages
Settings 166
Text messaging settings 166
also refer to Text messages 166
Tie-downs 84
Tightening specification
Wheel bolts 258
Tightening specification (wheel bolts) 258
Time 15
tiptronic
refer to Manual shifting 96
Tire Mobility System (tire repair set) 253
Tires 227
Changing 255
Low-profile tires 243
Repair set 253
Service life 236
Tire pressure 237
Tire pressure monitoring system 244, 245
Tire pressure table 239
Tire pressure (trailer mode) 112
Treadwear indicators 236
Unidirectional 229, 258
Uniform tire quality grading 243
Tires and wheels
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . 230
Tires and vehicle load limits 240
Tools 253
Top tether anchor (securing the child safety seat) 76

Touch display
Adjusting the brightness 18
Operating 16
Towing 261
Towing loop 262
Towing protection monitoring 33
TPMS
Tire pressure monitoring system 245
Traffic information 186
Online traffic information 185
also refer to Online traffic information . . . 185
Traffic jam assist 134
Traffic light information 120
Traffic sign recognition 118
Traffic signs 121
Trailer towing 112
Tongue weight 112
Trailer load 112
Turn assist 142
Turn signals 49

U

Uniform tire quality grading 243
Unlocking and locking 30
By remote control 35
Using the lock cylinder 32
With the central locking switch 32
With the convenience key 35
Update (software) 207
USB
Adapter 160
USB charging port 78
USB drive
Supported types/formats 201
USB stick
refer to Audi music interface 196
Users
Local users 27
myAudi users 27
Using residual heat 90

V

Valet parking 44
Vanity mirror 54
Vehicle
Care/cleaning 247
Dimensions 277
Identification data 277
Out of service 252
Raising 256
Starting 92
Vehicle care 247
Vehicle control services 171
Vehicle data label 277
Vehicle identification number 277
Vehicle jack 253
Lifting points 256
Vehicle key 30, 34
Vehicle starting system 100
Vehicle tool kit 253
Ventilation 87
VIEW button 12
Voicemail 164
Voice recognition system 24
External 25
Operating 24

W

Warning lights
refer to Indicator lights 7
Washing matte finish paint 247
Wave band
refer to Frequency band 188
Weights 278
Wheel bolts 242
Changing a tire 255
Wheels 227
Cleaning 248
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . 230
Replacing 255
Tire pressure monitoring system 245
Tires and vehicle load limits 240
Wheel wrench 253
Wi-Fi
Hotspot settings 172
Using a hotspot 170
Windows
Child safety lock 41
Cleaning and removing ice 249
Convenience opening and closing 42

Defrosting 89
Opening and closing 42
Power windows 42
Windshield
Cleaning 55
Defrosting 89
also refer to Windshield 55
Windshield washer system 55, 225
Windshield wipers 55
Winter operation
Battery 223
Car washes 247
Cooling system 220
Defrosting the windows 89
Rear window defogger 90
Removing ice from windows 249
Seat heating 89
Snow chains 243
Steering wheel heating 90
Tires 242
Windshield washer system 225
Winter tires 242
Wireless CarPlay
refer to Audi smartphone interface 204
Wireless charging 160

8W1012721BB

It has always been Audi's policy to continuously improve its products. AUDI AG reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements in its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured. This owner's manual is based on the current data available when it was printed. Text, illustrations, and specifications in this owner's manual are based on the most current information available at the time of printing, and shall not constitute a basis for liability claims.

These instructions may not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without written consent of AUDI AG. All rights reserved by AUDI AG.

For the sake of the environment

Printed on eco-friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).

Owner's Manual
Englisch Nordamerika 10.2019
8W1012721BB

8W1012721BB

www.audi.com